

Microsoft®

5.0

# MACRO ASSEMBLER

FOR THE MS-DOS® OPERATING SYSTEM

## PROGRAMMER'S GUIDE

Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Microsoft Corporation. The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement or nondisclosure agreement. The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of the agreement. The purchaser may make one copy of the software for backup purposes. No part of this manual may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of Microsoft Corporation.

© Copyright Microsoft Corporation, 1987. All rights reserved.  
Simultaneously published in the U.S. and Canada.

Microsoft®, MS®, MS-DOS®, XENIX®, and CodeView® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

IBM® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Intel® is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation.

ProKey® is a registered trademark of RoseSoft Incorporated.

SuperKey® is a registered trademark of Borland International, Inc.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## Introduction

New Features.....	xix
System Requirements.....	xx
About This Manual and Other Assembler Documentation .....	xx
IBM® Compilers and Assemblers.....	xxiii
Books on Assembly Language .....	xxiii
Notational Conventions .....	xxiv
Getting Assistance or Reporting Problems.....	xxviii

## Part 1 ◊ Using Assembler Programs

1	Getting Started.....	5
1.1	Setting Up Your System .....	7
1.1.1	Making Backup Copies .....	7
1.1.2	Choosing a Configuration Strategy.....	7
1.1.3	Copying Files .....	9
1.1.4	Setting Environment Variables .....	10
1.2	Choosing a Program Type.....	10
1.3	The Program-Development Cycle .....	11
1.4	Developing Programs .....	14
1.4.1	Writing and Editing Assembly-Language Source Code.....	14
1.4.2	Assembling Source Files .....	17
1.4.3	Converting Cross-Reference Files .....	17
1.4.4	Creating Library Files .....	18

1.4.5	Linking Object Files .....	18
1.4.6	Converting to .COM Format.....	19
1.4.7	Debugging.....	20
<b>2</b>	<b>Using MASM.....</b>	<b>21</b>
2.1	Running the Assembler.....	23
2.1.1	Assembly Using a Command Line.....	23
2.1.2	Assembly Using Prompts .....	25
2.2	Using Environment Variables.....	26
2.2.1	The INCLUDE Environment Variable.....	26
2.2.2	The MASM Environment Variable .....	27
2.3	Controlling Message Output .....	28
2.4	Using MASM Options .....	29
2.4.1	Specifying the Segment-Order Method.....	30
2.4.2	Setting the File-Buffer Size .....	31
2.4.3	Creating a Pass 1 Listing .....	32
2.4.4	Defining Assembler Symbols .....	32
2.4.5	Creating Code for a Floating-Point Emulator...33	
2.4.6	Getting Command-Line Help .....	34
2.4.7	Setting a Search Path for Include Files .....	35
2.4.8	Specifying Listing and Cross-Reference Files ....35	
2.4.9	Specifying Case Sensitivity .....	36
2.4.10	Suppressing Tables in the Listing File.....	37
2.4.11	Checking for Impure Code.....	37
2.4.12	Controlling Display of Assembly Statistics .....	38
2.4.13	Setting the Warning Level .....	39
2.4.14	Listing False Conditionals .....	40
2.4.15	Displaying Error Lines on the Screen .....	41
2.4.16	Writing Symbolic Information to the Object File .....	41
2.5	Reading Assembly Listings.....	42
2.5.1	Reading Code in a Listing .....	42
2.5.2	Reading a Macro Table .....	45
2.5.3	Reading a Structure and Record Table .....	45
2.5.4	Reading a Segment and Group Table .....	46
2.5.5	Reading a Symbol Table .....	47
2.5.6	Reading Assembly Statistics .....	49
2.5.7	Reading a Pass 1 Listing.....	49

3	Using CREF .....	51
3.1	Using CREF .....	53
3.1.1	Using a Command Line to Create a Cross-Reference Listing .....	53
3.1.2	Using Prompts to Create a Cross-Reference Listing .....	54
3.2	Reading Cross-Reference Listings .....	55

## Part 2 $\diamond$ Using Directives

4	Writing Source Code .....	63
4.1	Writing Assembly-Language Statements.....	65
4.1.1	Using Mnemonics and Operands.....	66
4.1.2	Writing Comments.....	67
4.2	Assigning Names to Symbols.....	67
4.3	Constants.....	69
4.3.1	Integer Constants .....	70
4.3.1.1	Specifying Integers with Radix Specifiers ...	70
4.3.1.2	Setting the Default Radix.....	71
4.3.2	Packed Binary Coded Decimal Constants.....	72
4.3.3	Real-Number Constants .....	73
4.3.4	String Constants.....	74
4.4	Defining Default Assembly Behavior .....	75
4.5	Ending a Source File.....	78
5	Defining Segment Structure .....	81
5.1	Simplified Segment Definitions.....	83
5.1.1	Understanding Memory Models .....	84
5.1.2	Specifying DOS Segment Order.....	85
5.1.3	Defining the Memory Model.....	87
5.1.4	Defining Simplified Segments .....	88
5.1.5	Using Predefined Equates .....	90
5.1.6	Simplified Segment Defaults .....	92
5.1.7	Default Segment Names .....	93

5.2	Full Segment Definitions.....	95
5.2.1	Setting the Segment-Order Method .....	96
5.2.2	Defining Full Segments.....	97
5.2.2.1	Controlling Alignment with Align Type ...	98
5.2.2.2	Setting Segment Word Size with Use Type .....	98
5.2.2.3	Defining Segment Combinations with Combine Type.....	100
5.2.2.4	Controlling Segment Structure with Class Type .....	104
5.3	Defining Segment Groups.....	106
5.4	Associating Segments with Registers.....	109
5.5	Initializing Segment Registers .....	111
5.5.1	Initializing the CS and IP Registers .....	111
5.5.2	Initializing the DS Register .....	112
5.5.3	Initializing the SS and SP Registers.....	114
5.5.4	Initializing the ES Register .....	115
5.6	Nesting Segments.....	115
6	Defining Labels and Variables.....	117
6.1	Using Type Specifiers .....	119
6.2	Defining Code Labels.....	120
6.2.1	Near Code Labels.....	120
6.2.2	Procedure Labels.....	121
6.2.3	Code Labels Defined with the LABEL Directive.....	122
6.3	Defining and Initializing Data .....	123
6.3.1	Variables.....	123
6.3.1.1	Integer Variables .....	124
6.3.1.2	Binary Coded Decimal Variables .....	127
6.3.1.3	String Variables .....	127
6.3.1.4	Pointer Variables.....	128
6.3.1.5	Real-Number Variables.....	130
6.3.2	Arrays and Buffers .....	135
6.3.3	Labeling Variables .....	136
6.4	Setting the Location Counter.....	137
6.5	Aligning Data.....	138

7	Using Structures and Records.....	141
7.1	Structures .....	143
7.1.1	Declaring Structure Types .....	143
7.1.2	Defining Structure Variables .....	145
7.1.3	Using Structure Operands.....	146
7.2	Records .....	147
7.2.1	Declaring Record Types.....	148
7.2.2	Defining Record Variables.....	150
7.2.3	Using Record Operands and Record Variables .....	151
7.2.4	Record Operators.....	153
7.2.4.1	The MASK Operator .....	153
7.2.4.2	The WIDTH Operator .....	153
7.2.5	Using Record-Field Operands.....	154
8	Creating Programs from Multiple Modules.....	157
8.1	Declaring Symbols Public.....	160
8.2	Declaring Symbols External .....	161
8.3	Using Multiple Modules.....	164
8.4	Declaring Symbols Communal.....	165
8.5	Specifying Library Files .....	169
9	Using Operands and Expressions..	171
9.1	Using Operands with Directives .....	173
9.2	Using Operators .....	174
9.2.1	Calculation Operators .....	174
9.2.1.1	Arithmetic Operators .....	175
9.2.1.2	Structure-Field-Name Operator .....	176
9.2.1.3	Index Operator.....	177
9.2.1.4	Shift Operators .....	178
9.2.1.5	Bitwise Logical Operators.....	179
9.2.2	Relational Operators .....	180
9.2.3	Segment-Override Operator .....	181

9.2.4	Type Operators .....	182
9.2.4.1	PTR Operator.....	182
9.2.4.2	SHORT Operator .....	183
9.2.4.3	THIS Operator.....	183
9.2.4.4	HIGH and LOW Operators .....	184
9.2.4.5	SEG Operator .....	184
9.2.4.6	OFFSET Operator .....	185
9.2.4.7	.TYPE Operator.....	186
9.2.4.8	TYPE Operator.....	187
9.2.4.9	LENGTH Operator .....	188
9.2.4.10	SIZE Operator .....	188
9.2.5	Operator Precedence .....	189
9.3	Using the Location Counter .....	190
9.4	Using Forward References.....	191
9.4.1	Forward References to Labels.....	192
9.4.2	Forward References to Variables .....	194
9.5	Strong Typing for Memory Operands.....	194
10	Assembling Conditionally .....	197
10.1	Using Conditional-Assembly Directives.....	199
10.1.1	Testing Expressions with IF and IFE Directives.....	200
10.1.2	Testing the Pass with IF1 and IF2 Directives .....	201
10.1.3	Testing Symbol Definition with IFDEF and IFNDEF Directives .....	201
10.1.4	Verifying Macro Parameters with IFB and IFNB Directives .....	202
10.1.5	Comparing Macro Arguments with IFIDN and IFDIF Directives .....	203
10.2	Using Conditional-Error Directives .....	204
10.2.1	Generating Unconditional Errors with .ERR, .ERR1, and .ERR2.....	205
10.2.2	Testing Expressions with .ERRE or .ERRNZ Directives.....	206
10.2.3	Verifying Symbol Definition with .ERRDEF and .ERRNDEF Directives .....	207

10.2.4	Testing for Macro Parameters with .ERRB and .ERRNB Directives .....	207
10.2.5	Comparing Macro Arguments with .ERRIDN and .ERRDIF Directives .....	208
11	Using Equates, Macros, and Repeat Blocks .....	211
11.1	Using Equates .....	213
11.1.1	Redefinable Numeric Equates .....	213
11.1.2	Nonredefinable Numeric Equates .....	214
11.1.3	String Equates .....	216
11.2	Using Macros .....	217
11.2.1	Defining Macros .....	218
11.2.2	Calling Macros .....	219
11.2.3	Using Local Symbols .....	220
11.2.4	Exiting from a Macro .....	222
11.3	Defining Repeat Blocks .....	223
11.3.1	The REPT Directive .....	223
11.3.2	The IRP Directive .....	224
11.3.3	The IRPC Directive .....	225
11.4	Using Macro Operators .....	226
11.4.1	Substitute Operator .....	226
11.4.2	Literal-Text Operator .....	228
11.4.3	Literal-Character Operator .....	229
11.4.4	Expression Operator .....	230
11.4.5	Macro Comments .....	231
11.5	Using Recursive, Nested, and Redefined Macros .....	231
11.5.1	Using Recursion .....	231
11.5.2	Nesting Macro Definitions .....	232
11.5.3	Nesting Macro Calls .....	233
11.5.4	Redefining Macros .....	234
11.5.5	Avoiding Inadvertent Substitutions .....	234
11.6	Managing Macros and Equates .....	235
11.6.1	Using Include Files .....	235
11.6.2	Purging Macros from Memory .....	237

12	Controlling Assembly Output.....	239
12.1	Sending Messages to the Standard Output Device.....	241
12.2	Controlling Page Format in Listings .....	242
12.2.1	Setting the Listing Title .....	242
12.2.2	Setting the Listing Subtitle.....	243
12.2.3	Controlling Page Breaks .....	243
12.3	Controlling the Contents of Listings .....	245
12.3.1	Suppressing and Restoring Listing Output .....	245
12.3.2	Controlling Listing of Conditional Blocks.....	246
12.3.3	Controlling Listing of Macros.....	247
12.4	Controlling Cross-Reference Output .....	249

## Part 3 Using Instructions

13	Understanding 8086-Family Processors .....	255
13.1	Using the 8086-Family Processors .....	257
13.1.1	Processor Differences .....	257
13.1.2	Real and Protected Modes .....	259
13.2	Segmented Addresses .....	260
13.3	Using 8086-Family Registers .....	261
13.3.1	Segment Registers.....	263
13.3.2	General-Purpose Registers .....	264
13.3.3	Other Registers.....	266
13.3.4	The Flags Register .....	266
13.3.5	8087-Family Registers .....	268
13.4	Using the 80386 Processor Under DOS.....	269
14	Using Addressing Modes .....	271
14.1	Using Immediate Operands .....	273
14.2	Using Register Operands.....	274

14.3	Using Memory Operands.....	276
14.3.1	Direct Memory Operands.....	276
14.3.2	Indirect Memory Operands .....	278
14.3.3	80386 Indirect Memory Operands .....	282
15	Loading, Storing, and Moving Data.....	287
15.1	Transferring Data .....	289
15.1.1	Copying Data .....	289
15.1.2	Exchanging Data .....	290
15.1.3	Looking Up Data .....	290
15.1.4	Transferring Flags.....	291
15.2	Converting between Data Sizes .....	292
15.2.1	Extending Signed Values .....	292
15.2.2	Extending Unsigned Values.....	294
15.2.3	Moving and Extending Values.....	294
15.3	Loading Pointers.....	295
15.3.1	Loading Near Pointers.....	295
15.3.2	Loading Far Pointers.....	296
15.4	Transferring Data to and from the Stack .....	298
15.4.1	Pushing and Popping .....	298
15.4.2	Using the Stack .....	301
15.4.3	Saving Flags on the Stack.....	301
15.4.4	Saving All Registers on the Stack .....	302
15.5	Transferring Data to and from Ports .....	303
16	Doing Arithmetic and Bit Manipulations.....	305
16.1	Adding.....	307
16.1.1	Adding Values Directly.....	307
16.1.2	Adding Values in Multiple Registers .....	309
16.2	Subtracting .....	309
16.2.1	Subtracting Values Directly .....	310
16.2.2	Subtracting with Values in Multiple Registers .....	311

16.3	Multiplying .....	312
16.4	Dividing .....	314
16.5	Calculating with Binary Coded Decimals .....	316
16.5.1	Unpacked BCD Numbers .....	317
16.5.2	Packed BCD Numbers .....	319
16.6	Doing Logical Bit Manipulations .....	320
16.6.1	AND Operations .....	321
16.6.2	OR Operations .....	322
16.6.3	XOR Operations .....	322
16.6.4	NOT Operations .....	323
16.7	Scanning for Set Bits.....	324
16.8	Shifting and Rotating Bits .....	325
16.8.1	Multiplying and Dividing by Constants.....	327
16.8.2	Moving Bits to the Least-Significant Position.....	329
16.8.3	Adjusting Masks .....	329
16.8.4	Shifting Multiword Values .....	329
16.8.5	Shifting Multiple Bits.....	330
17	Controlling Program Flow.....	331
17.1	Jumping .....	333
17.1.1	Jumping Unconditionally.....	333
17.1.2	Jumping Conditionally .....	335
17.1.2.1	Comparing and Jumping .....	335
17.1.2.2	Jumping Based on Flag Status.....	338
17.1.2.3	Testing Bits and Jumping.....	340
17.1.2.4	Testing and Setting Bits .....	341
17.2	Looping.....	343
17.3	Setting Bytes Conditionally .....	345
17.4	Using Procedures.....	346
17.4.1	Calling Procedures .....	347
17.4.2	Defining Procedures .....	347
17.4.3	Passing Arguments on the Stack .....	349
17.4.4	Using Local Variables .....	351
17.4.5	Setting Up Stack Frames .....	354

17.5	Using Interrupts.....	355
17.5.1	Calling Interrupts .....	356
17.5.2	Defining and Redefining Interrupt Routines ...	358
17.6	Checking Memory Ranges.....	361
18	Processing Strings.....	363
18.1	Setting Up String Operations.....	365
18.2	Moving Strings.....	368
18.3	Searching Strings .....	370
18.4	Comparing Strings .....	371
18.5	Filling Strings .....	373
18.6	Loading Values from Strings.....	374
18.7	Transferring Strings to and from Ports.....	375
19	Calculating with a Math Coprocessor.....	377
19.1	Coprocessor Architecture.....	379
19.1.1	Coprocessor Data Registers .....	380
19.1.2	Coprocessor Control Registers .....	381
19.2	Emulation .....	382
19.3	Using Coprocessor Instructions .....	382
19.3.1	Using Implied Operands in the Classical-Stack Form .....	383
19.3.2	Using Memory Operands.....	384
19.3.3	Specifying Operands in the Register Form .....	385
19.3.4	Specifying Operands in the Register-Pop Form.....	386
19.4	Coordinating Memory Access.....	387

19.5	Transferring Data .....	388
19.5.1	Transferring Data to and from Registers .....	388
19.5.2	Loading Constants .....	391
19.5.3	Transferring Control Data .....	392
19.6	Doing Arithmetic Calculations .....	393
19.7	Controlling Program Flow.....	399
19.7.1	Comparing Operands to Control Program Flow.....	401
19.7.2	Testing Control Flags after Other Instructions.....	404
19.8	Using Transcendental Instructions.....	404
19.9	Controlling the Coprocessor.....	406
20	Controlling the Processor.....	409
20.1	Controlling Timing and Alignment .....	411
20.2	Controlling the Processor .....	411
20.3	Controlling Protected-Mode Processes .....	412
20.4	Controlling the 80386.....	413

## Appendixes

A	New Features .....	417
A.1	MASM Enhancements .....	419
A.1.1	80386 Support .....	419
A.1.2	Segment Simplification .....	420
A.1.3	Performance Improvements.....	420
A.1.4	Enhanced Error Handling .....	421
A.1.5	New Options .....	421
A.1.6	Environment Variables .....	422
A.1.7	String Equates .....	422
A.1.8	RETF and RETN Instructions .....	422
A.1.9	Communal Variables .....	422
A.1.10	Including Library Files .....	422
A.1.11	Flexible Structure Definitions.....	423

# CONTENTS

A.2	Link Enhancements.....	423
A.3	The CodeView Debugger.....	423
A.4	SETENV.....	424
A.5	Compatibility with Assemblers and Compilers.....	424
<b>B</b>	<b>Error Messages and Exit Codes ....</b>	<b>427</b>
B.1	MASM Messages and Exit Codes.....	429
B.1.1	Assembler Status Messages .....	429
B.1.2	Numbered Assembler Messages.....	430
B.1.3	Unnumbered Error Messages .....	446
B.1.4	MASM Exit Codes.....	448
B.2	CREF Error Messages and Exit Codes .....	449
	<b>Index.....</b>	<b>451</b>

# Figures

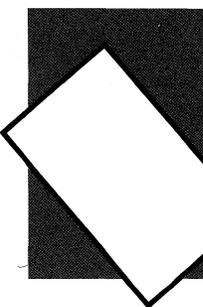
Figure 1.1	The Program-Development Cycle .....	12
Figure 5.1	Segment Structure with Combine and Align Types.....	103
Figure 5.2	Segment Structure with Groups.....	108
Figure 6.1	Encoding for Real Numbers in IEEE Format.....	132
Figure 6.2	Encoding for Real Numbers in Microsoft Binary Format.....	133
Figure 6.3	Encoding for Real Numbers in Temporary-Real Format .....	134
Figure 13.1	Register for 8088–80286 Processors .....	262
Figure 13.2	Extended Registers of 80386 Processor.....	263
Figure 13.3	Flags for 8088–80386 Processors .....	267
Figure 15.1	Stack Status after Pushes and Pops.....	299
Figure 16.1	Shifts and Rotates.....	326
Figure 17.1	Procedure Arguments on the Stack.....	351
Figure 17.2	Local Variables on the Stack.....	353
Figure 17.3	Operation of Interrupts.....	357
Figure 19.1	Coprocessor Data Registers.....	380
Figure 19.2	Coprocessor Control Registers.....	381
Figure 19.3	Coprocessor and Processor Control Flags.....	400

## Tables

Table 2.1	Warning Levels .....	39
Table 2.2	Symbols and Abbreviations in Listings .....	43
Table 4.1	Reserved Names.....	69
Table 4.2	Digits Used with Each Radix.....	70
Table 5.1	Default Segments and Types for Standard Memory Models.....	93
Table 9.1	Arithmetic Operators.....	175
Table 9.2	Logical Operators.....	179
Table 9.3	Relational Operators.....	180
Table 9.4	.TYPE Operator and Variable Attributes ...	186
Table 9.5	Operator Precedence.....	190
Table 10.1	Conditional-Error Directives .....	204
Table 14.1	Register Operands.....	275
Table 14.2	Indirect Addressing Modes .....	279
Table 16.1	Values Returned by Logical Operations .....	320
Table 17.1	Conditional-Jump Instructions Used after Compare .....	337
Table 18.1	Requirements for String Instructions .....	367
Table 19.1	Coprocessor Operand Forms .....	383
Table 19.2	Control-Flag Settings after Compare or Test.....	401
Table A.1	80386 and 80387 Instructions.....	420



# INTRODUCTION



Welcome to the Microsoft® Macro Assembler (**MASM**). This package provides all the tools you need to create assembly-language programs.

The Macro Assembler provides a logical programming syntax suited to the segmented architecture of the 8086, 8088, 80186, 80188, 80286, and 80386 microprocessors (8086-family), and the 8087, 80287, and 80387 math coprocessors (8087-family).

The assembler produces relocatable object modules from assembly-language source files. These object modules can be linked using **LINK**, the Microsoft Overlay Linker, to create executable programs for the MS-DOS® operating system. Object modules created with **MASM** are compatible with many high-level-language object modules, including those created with the Microsoft BASIC, C, FORTRAN, and Pascal compilers.

**MASM** has a variety of standard features that make program development easier:

- It has a full set of macro directives.
- It allows conditional assembly of portions of a source file.
- It supports a wide range of operators for creating complex assembly-time expressions.
- It carries out strict syntax checking of all instruction statements, including strong typing for memory operands.

## New Features

This version of the assembler has the following major new features:

- All instructions and addressing modes of the 80386 processor and 80387 coprocessor are now supported.
- The new CodeView® window-oriented debugger allows source-level debugging on assembly-language files and has many other powerful features.
- New segment directives allow simplified segment definitions. These optional directives implement the segment conventions used in Microsoft high-level languages.

- Error messages have been clarified and enhanced.
- The default format for initializing real-number variables has been changed from Microsoft Binary to the more common IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.) format.

---

*Note*

In addition to these new features, there are numerous minor enhancements. If you are updating from a previous version of the Microsoft Macro Assembler, you may want to start by reading Appendix A, "New Features." This appendix summarizes new features added for Version 5.0 and discusses compatibility issues.

---

## System Requirements

In addition to a computer with one of the 8086-family processors, you must have Version 2.0 or later of the MS-DOS or IBM® PC-DOS operating system. (Since these two operating systems are essentially the same, this manual uses the term DOS to include both.) To run the assembler itself, your computer system must have approximately 192K (kilobytes) of memory. The CodeView debugger requires approximately 320K. Actual memory requirements vary depending on the DOS version used, the memory used by any resident programs, and the size of the files being assembled or debugged.

## About This Manual and Other Assembler Documentation

This manual is intended as a reference manual for writing applications programs in assembly language. It is not intended as a tutorial for beginners, nor does it discuss systems programming or advanced techniques.

This manual is divided into three major parts. Part 1 is called "Using Assembler Programs," and it comprises chapters 1–3. Chapters 4–12 make up Part 2, "Using Directives." The third part, called "Using Instructions," comprises chapters 13–20. Two appendixes follow Part 3.

Important topics for the programmer and their references are listed below:

<u>Information</u>	<u>Location</u>
How to set up the assembler software	Chapter 1, "Getting Started," tells how to set up the assembler and utility software.
An overview of the program-development process	Chapter 1, "Getting Started," describes the program-development process and gives brief examples of each step.
How to use the assembler and the other programs provided with the Microsoft Macro Assembler package	Part 1, "Using Assembler Programs," describes the command lines, options, and output of <b>MASM</b> and <b>CREF</b> . The Microsoft CodeView and Utilities manual describes the command lines, options, commands, and output of the CodeView debugger, <b>LINK</b> , <b>LIB</b> , <b>MAKE</b> , and other utilities. Error messages are described in Appendix B of the respective manuals. The command-line syntax for all assembler programs is summarized in the <i>Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference</i> .
An overview of the format for assembly-language source code	Chapter 1, "Getting Started," shows examples of assembly-language source files, and Chapter 4, "Writing Source Code," (in Part 2) discusses basic concepts in a reference format.
How to program in the version of assembly language recognized by <b>MASM</b>	Part 2, "Using Directives," explains the directives, operands, operators, expressions, and other language features understood by <b>MASM</b> . However, the manual is not designed to teach novice users how to program in assembly language. If you are new to assembly language, you will still need additional books or courses. Some tutorial books that may be helpful are listed later in this introduction.
An overview of the architecture of 8086-family processors	Chapter 13, "Understanding 8086-Family Processors," (in Part 3) discusses segments, memory use, registers, and other basic features of 8086-family processors.

How to use the instruction sets for the 8086, 80186, 80286, or 80386 microprocessor

Part 3, "Using Instructions," describes each of the instructions. The material is intended as a reference, not a tutorial. Beginners may need to study other books on assembly language.

Reference data on instructions

Another manual in the Macro Assembler package, the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference*, lists each instruction alphabetically and gives data on encoding and timing for each. This data is particularly useful for programmers who wish to optimize assembly code.

How to use the instruction sets of the 8087, 80287, or 80387 math coprocessor

Chapter 19, "Calculating with a Math Coprocessor," describes the coprocessor instructions and tells how you can use the most important ones.

Information on DOS structure and function calls

Although this information may be useful to many programmers, it is beyond the scope of the documentation provided with the Microsoft Macro Assembler package. You can find information on DOS in the *Microsoft MS-DOS Programmer's Reference* and in many other books about DOS. Some of the books listed later in this introduction cover these topics.

How to write assembly-language routines for high-level languages

The *Microsoft Mixed-Language Programming Guide* describes the calling and naming conventions of Microsoft high-level languages and tells how to write assembly modules that can be linked with modules created with high-level languages.

Hardware features of your computer

For some assembly-language tasks, you may need to know about the basic input and output systems (BIOS) or other hardware features of the computers that run your programs. Consult the technical manuals for your computer or one of the many books that describe hardware features. Some of the books listed later in this introduction discuss hardware features of IBM and IBM-compatible computers.

## IBM® Compilers and Assemblers

Many IBM languages are produced for IBM by Microsoft. IBM languages similar to corresponding Microsoft languages include the following:

- IBM Personal Computer Macro Assembler, Versions 1.0 and 2.0
- IBM Personal Computer FORTRAN, Version 3.x
- IBM Personal Computer C, Version 1.0
- IBM Personal Computer Pascal, Versions 1.0 to 3.x
- IBM Personal Computer BASIC Compiler, Versions 1.0 and 2.0

These languages are compatible with the Microsoft Macro Assembler Version 5.0, except as noted in Appendix A, "New Features."

## Books on Assembly Language

The following books may be useful in learning to program in assembly language:

Duncan, Ray. *Advanced MS-DOS*. Redmond, Wash.: Microsoft Corporation, 1986.

An intermediate book on writing C and assembly-language programs that interact with MS-DOS (includes DOS and BIOS function descriptions)

Intel Corporation. *iAPX 386 Programmer's Reference Manual*. Santa Clara, Calif. 1986.

Reference manual for 80386 processor and instruction set (manuals for previous processors are also available)

Jourdain, Robert. *Programmer's Problem Solver for the IBM PC, XT and AT*. New York: Brady Communications Company, Inc., 1986.

Reference of routines and techniques for interacting with hardware devices through DOS, BIOS, and ports (high-level routines in BASIC and low- or medium-level routines in assembler)

Lafore, Robert. *Assembly Language Primer for the IBM PC & XT*. New York: Plume/Waite, 1984.

An introduction to assembly language, including some information on DOS function calls and IBM-type BIOS

Metcalf, Christopher D., and Sugiyama, Marc B. *COMPUTE!'s Beginner's Guide to Machine Language on the IBM PC & PCjr*. Greensboro, N.C.: COMPUTE! Publications, Inc., 1985.

Beginning discussion of assembly language, including information on the instruction set and MS-DOS function calls

Microsoft. *Microsoft MS-DOS Programmer's Reference*. Redmond, Wash. 1986, 1987.

Reference manual for MS-DOS

Morgan, Christopher, and the Waite Group. *Bluebook of Assembly Routines for the IBM PC*. New York: New American Library, 1984.

Sample assembly routines that can be integrated into assembly or high-level-language programs

Norton, Peter. *The Peter Norton Programmer's Guide to the IBM PC*. Redmond, Wash.: Microsoft Press, 1985.

Information on using IBM-type BIOS and MS-DOS function calls

Scanlon, Leo J. *IBM PC Assembly Language: A Guide for Programmers*. Bowie, Md.: Robert J. Brady Co., 1983.

An introduction to assembly language, including information on DOS function calls

Schneider, Al. *Fundamentals of IBM PC Assembly Language*. Blue Ridge Summit, Pa.: Tab Books Inc., 1984.

An introduction to assembly language, including information on DOS function calls

These books are listed for your convenience only. Microsoft Corporation does not endorse these books (with the exception of those published by Microsoft) or recommend them over others on the same subjects.

## Notational Conventions

This manual uses the notation described in the following list.

<b>Example of Convention</b>	<b>Description of Convention</b>
Examples	The typeface shown in the left column is used to simulate the appearance of information that would be printed on your screen or by your printer. For example, the following

source line is printed in this special typeface:

```
mov ax,WORD PTR string[3]
```

When discussing this source line in text, items appearing on the line, such as `string[3]`, also appear in the special typeface.

Program

.

.

.

Fragment

A column of dots in syntax lines and program examples shows that a portion of the program has been omitted.

For example, in the following program fragment, only the opening lines and the closing lines of a macro are shown. The internal lines are omitted since they are not relevant to the concept being illustrated.

```
work MACRO realarg,testarg
  .ERRB <realarg> ;; Too few
  .ERRNB <testarg> ;; Too many
  .                ;; Just right
  .
  .
  .
  ENDM
```

## KEY TERMS

Bold letters indicate command line options, assembly-language keywords or symbols, and the names of files that come with the Microsoft Macro Assembler package.

For instance, the directive **ORG**, the instruction **MOV**, the register **AX**, the option **/ZI**, and the file name **MASM** are always shown in bold when they appear in text or in syntax displays (but not in examples).

In syntax displays, bold type indicates any words, punctuation, or symbols (such as commas, parentheses, semicolons, hyphens, equal signs, or operators) that you must type exactly as shown.

For example, the syntax of the **IFDIF** directive is shown as follows:

```
IFDIF <argument1>,<argument2>
```

The word **IFDIF**, the angle brackets, and the comma are all shown in bold. Therefore they must be typed exactly as shown.

*placeholders*

Words in italics are placeholders for variable information that you must supply. For example, the syntax of the **OFFSET** operator is shown below:

**OFFSET** *expression*

This indicates that any *expression* may be supplied following the **OFFSET** operator. When writing source code to match this syntax, you might type

**OFFSET** here+6

in which here+6 is the expression. The placeholder is shown in italics both in syntax displays and in descriptions explaining syntax displays.

*[optional items]*

Double brackets surround optional syntax elements. For example, the syntax of the index operator is shown as follows:

*[expression1][expression2]*

This indicates that *expression1* is optional, since it is contained in double brackets, but *expression2* is required and must be enclosed in brackets.

When writing code to match this syntax, you might type [bx], leaving off the optional *expression1*, or you might type test [5], using test as *expression1*.

*{choice1 | choice2}*

Braces and vertical bars indicate that you have a choice between two or more items. Braces enclose the choices, and vertical bars separate the choices. You must choose one of the items.

For example, the /W (warning-level) option has the following syntax:

**/W**{0 | 1 | 2}

You can type /W0, /W1, or /W2 to indicate the desired level of warning. However, typing /W3 is illegal since 3 is not one of the choices enclosed in braces.

Repeating elements...

Three dots following an item indicate that more items having the same form may be entered.

For example, the syntax of the **PUBLIC** directive is shown below:

**PUBLIC** *name* [,*name*]...

The dots following the second name indicate that you can enter as many *names* as you like as long as each is preceded by a comma. However, since the first *name* is not in brackets, you must enter at least one *name*.

Defined terms and  
“Prompts”

Quotation marks set off terms defined in the text. For example, the term “indeterminate” appears in quotation marks the first time it is defined.

Quotation marks also set off command-line prompts in text. For example, one **LINK** prompt would be described in text as the “object modules” prompt.

KEY NAMES

Small capital letters are used for the names of keys and key sequences that you must press. Examples include ENTER and CONTROL+C.

## ■ Example

The following example shows how this manual’s notational conventions are used to indicate the syntax of the **MASM** command line:

```
MASM [options] sourcefile [, [objectfile] [, [listingfile] [, [crossreferencefile]]]] [;]
```

This syntax shows that you must first type the program name, **MASM**. You can then enter any number of *options*. You must enter a *sourcefile*. You can enter an *objectfile* preceded by a comma. You can enter a *listingfile*, but if you do, you must precede it with the commas associated with the *sourcefile* and *objectfile*. Similarly, you can enter a *crossreferencefile*, but if you do, you must precede it with the commas associated with the other files. You can also enter a semicolon at any point after the *sourcefile*.

For example, any of the following command lines would be legal:

```
MASM test.asm;
MASM /ZI test.asm;
MASM test.asm, , test.lst;
MASM test.asm, , , test.crf
MASM test.asm, test.obj, test.lst, test.crf
MASM test.asm, , , ;
```

## Getting Assistance or Reporting Problems

If you need help or you feel you have discovered a problem in the software, please provide the following information to help us locate the problem:

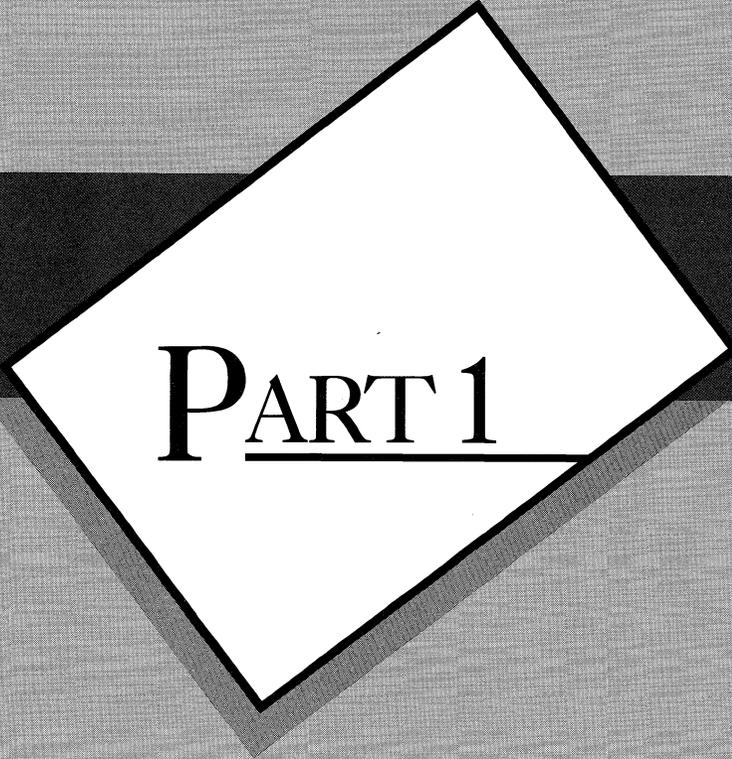
- The assembler version number (from the logo that is printed when you invoke the assembler with **MASM**)
- The version of DOS you are running (use the DOS **VER** command)
- Your system configuration (the type of machine you are using, its total memory, and its total free memory at assembler execution time, as well as any other information you think might be useful)
- The assembly command line used (or the link command line if the problem occurred during linking)
- Any object files or libraries you linked with if the problem occurred at link time.

If your program is very large, please try to reduce its size to the smallest possible program that still produces the problem.

Use the Product Assistance Request form at the back of this manual to send this information to Microsoft.

If you have comments or suggestions regarding any of the manuals accompanying this product, please indicate them on the Document Feedback card at the back of this manual.

You should also fill out and return the Registration Card if you wish to be informed of updates and other information about the assembler.



PART 1

• USING  
ASSEMBLER  
• PROGRAMS

# CHAPTERS

1 Getting Started . . . . . 5

2 Using MASM . . . . . 21

3 Using CREF . . . . . 51

# PART 1 USING ASSEMBLER PROGRAMS

Part 1 of the Programmer's Guide (comprising chapters 1–3) summarizes the process of creating programs from assembly-language source files.

Chapter 1 tells you how to set up an efficient system for producing programs. It also gives you examples of simple assembly-language source files and a quick summary of each of the utility programs used in program development.

Chapters 2 and 3 describe the two assembler programs, **MASM** and **CREF**, in detail. Other utility programs, such as **LINK**, **LIB**, **MAKE**, and the CodeView debugger, are described in the Microsoft CodeView and Utilities manual.



# CHAPTER

# 1

## GETTING STARTED

1.1	Setting Up Your System.....	7
1.1.1	Making Backup Copies .....	7
1.1.2	Choosing a Configuration Strategy .....	7
1.1.3	Copying Files.....	9
1.1.4	Setting Environment Variables .....	10
1.2	Choosing a Program Type .....	10
1.3	The Program-Development Cycle .....	11
1.4	Developing Programs.....	14
1.4.1	Writing and Editing Assembly-Language Source Code .....	14
1.4.2	Assembling Source Files .....	17
1.4.3	Converting Cross-Reference Files .....	17
1.4.4	Creating Library Files.....	18
1.4.5	Linking Object Files .....	18
1.4.6	Converting to .COM Format .....	19
1.4.7	Debugging .....	20



This chapter tells you how to set up Microsoft Macro Assembler files and to start writing assembly-language programs. It gives an overview of the development process and shows examples using simple programs. It also refers you to the chapters where you can learn more about each subject.

## 1.1 Setting Up Your System

After opening the Microsoft Macro Assembler package, you should take these four setup steps before you begin developing assembler programs:

1. Make backup copies of the disks in the assembler package.
2. Choose a configuration strategy.
3. Copy the assembler files to the appropriate disks and directories.
4. Set environment variables.

### 1.1.1 Making Backup Copies

You should make backup copies of the assembler disks before attempting to use any of the programs in the package. Put the copies in a safe place and use them only to restore the originals if they are damaged or destroyed.

All the files on the disks are listed in the file **PACKING.LST** on Disk 1.

The files on the disk are not copy protected. You may make one backup copy for your own use. You may not distribute any executable, object, or library files on the disk. The sample programs are in the public domain.

No license is required to distribute executable files that are created with the assembler.

### 1.1.2 Choosing a Configuration Strategy

There are several kinds of files on the distribution disk. You can arrange these files in a variety of ways. The two most important considerations are whether or not you have a hard disk and whether you want to use environment variables.

Program development can be affected by the environment variables described below:

<b>Variable</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>PATH</b>	<p>Specifies the directories where DOS looks for executable files.</p> <p>A common setup with language products is to place executable files in the directory <b>\BIN</b> and include this directory in the <b>PATH</b> environment string.</p>
<b>LIB</b>	<p>Specifies the directory where <b>LINK</b> looks for library and object files.</p> <p>A common setup with language products is to put library and object files in the directory <b>\LIB</b> and include this directory in the <b>LIB</b> environment string.</p>
<b>INCLUDE</b>	<p>Specifies the directory where <b>MASM</b> looks for include files.</p> <p>A common setup with language products is to put macro files and other include files in the directory <b>\INCLUDE</b> and to put this directory in the <b>INCLUDE</b> environment string.</p>
<b>MASM</b>	<p>Specifies default options that <b>MASM</b> uses on start-up.</p>
<b>LINK</b>	<p>Specifies default options that <b>LINK</b> uses on start-up.</p>
<b>TMP</b>	<p>Specifies the directory where <b>LINK</b> places temporary files if it needs to create them.</p>
<b>INIT</b>	<p>Specifies the directory where <b>MAKE</b> looks for the file <b>TOOLS.INI</b>, which may contain inference rules.</p> <p>See the documentation of <b>MAKE</b> in the Microsoft CodeView and Utilities manual for information on inference rules.</p>

If you have a hard disk, you will probably want to use environment variables to specify locations for library, macro, and executable files. If you do not have a hard disk, you may prefer to leave all files in the root directory.

If you already have other language products on a hard disk, you should consider how your assembler setup interacts with your other languages.

Some users may prefer to have separate directories for library and include files for each language. Others may prefer to have all library and include files in the same directories. If you want all language files in the same directories, make sure you do not have any files with the same names as the ones provided with the Microsoft Macro Assembler.

If you have 5 1/4-inch disks, you will not be able to get all the tools you need for assembly-language development on one disk. A typical setup is shown below:

<u>Disk</u>	<u>Files</u>
1	Source, object, library, and macro files on Disk 1 with (a) source and working object files in the root directory, (b) library and standard object files in directory \LIB, and (c) macro files in directory \INCLUDE.
2	Executable files for developing programs on Disk 2. This could include <b>MASM</b> , <b>LINK</b> , a text editor, and possibly <b>MAKE</b> , <b>LIB</b> , or <b>CREG</b> . These files may not all fit on a standard 360K disk, so you will have to decide which are most important for you.
3	The CodeView debugger and any additional utilities on Disk 3.

With this setup, you could keep Disk 1 in Drive A. Then swap Disks 2 and 3 depending on whether you are developing programs or debugging.

### 1.1.3 Copying Files

A setup batch file called **SETUP.BAT** is provided on Disk 1. You can run it to copy automatically the assembler files to your work disk. The setup program will ask for information about your system and how you want to set it up. Before copying anything to your system, the setup program tells you what it is about to do and prompts for your confirmation.

If you prefer, you can ignore the setup program and copy the files yourself. See the **PACKING.LST** file for a list of files.

---

#### *Warning*

If you have previous versions of the assembler or other programs such as **LINK**, **LIB**, or **MAKE**, you may want to make backup copies or rename the old files so that you do not overwrite them with the new versions.

---

## 1.1.4 Setting Environment Variables

If you wish to use environment variables to establish default file locations and options, you will probably want to set the environment variables in your **AUTOEXEC.BAT** or other batch files. The setup program does not attempt to set any environment variables, so you must modify any batch files yourself.

The following lines could be added for a typical hard-disk setup:

```
PATH C:\BIN
SET LIB=C:\LIB
SET INCLUDE=C:\INCLUDE
SET MASM=/ZI
SET LINK=/CO
```

The following lines might be used for the floppy-disk setup described in Section 1.1.2:

```
PATH B:\;A:\
SET LIB=A:\LIB
SET INCLUDE=A:\INCLUDE
SET MASM=/ZI
SET LINK=/CO
```

## 1.2 Choosing a Program Type

**MASM** can be used to create different kinds of program files. The source-code format is different for each kind of program. The primary formats are described below:

<u>Type</u>	<u>Description</u>
<b>.EXE</b>	The <b>.EXE</b> format is the most common format for programs that will execute under DOS.  In future versions of DOS, a similar <b>.EXE</b> format will be the only format available for stand-alone programs that take advantage of multitasking. Programs in the <b>.EXE</b> format can have multiple segments and can be of any size. Modules can be created and linked using either the assembler or most high-level-language compilers, including all the Microsoft compilers. Modules created in different languages can be

combined into a single program. This is the format recommended by Microsoft for programs of significant size and purpose. The source format for creating this kind of program is described and illustrated throughout the rest of the manual.

**.COM** The **.COM** format is sometimes convenient for small programs.

Programs in this format are limited to one segment. They can be no larger than 64K (unless they use overlays). They have no file header and are thus smaller than comparable **.EXE** files. This makes programs in the **.COM** format a good choice for small stand-alone assembler programs of several thousand bytes or less. One disadvantage of the **.COM** format is that executable files cannot contain symbolic and source line information for the CodeView debugger. You can only debug **COM** in assembly mode. The source format for **.COM** programs is illustrated briefly in this chapter and described fully in the *Microsoft MS-DOS Programmer's Reference Guide*.

**Binary files** Binary files are used for procedures that will be called by the Microsoft and IBM BASIC interpreters.

They are also used by some non-Microsoft compilers. See the manual for the language you are using for details on preparing source files.

**Device drivers** Device drivers that set up and control I/O for hardware devices can be developed with the assembler.

The source format for device drives is described in the *Microsoft MS-DOS Programmer's Reference*.

**Code for ROMs** The assembler can be used to prepare code that is downloaded to programmable ROM chips. The format is usually a binary format. Methods of translating binary files into a format that can be used in ROM chips vary.

## 1.3 The Program-Development Cycle

The program-development cycle for assembly language is illustrated in Figure 1.1.

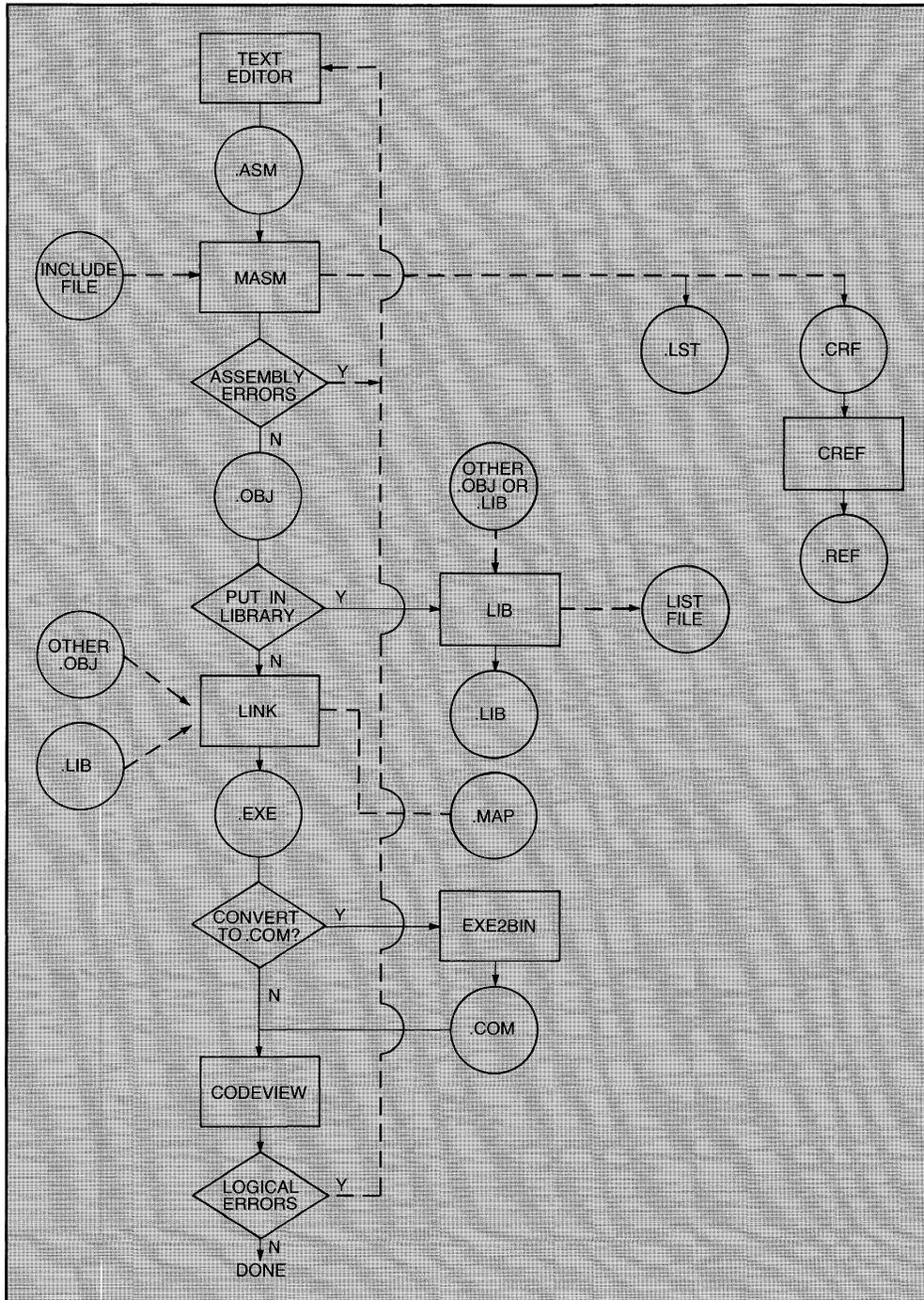


Figure 1.1 The Program-Development Cycle

The specific steps for developing a stand-alone assembler program are listed below:

1. Use a text editor to create or modify assembly-language source modules. By convention, source modules are given the extension **.ASM**. Source modules can be organized in a variety of ways. For instance, you can put all the procedures for a program into one large module, or you can split the procedures between modules. If your program will be linked with high-level-language modules, the source code for these modules is also prepared at this point.
2. Use **MASM** to assemble each of the modules for the program. **MASM** may optionally read in code from include files during assembly. If assembly errors are encountered in a module, you must go back to Step 1 and correct the errors before continuing. For each source (**.ASM**) file, **MASM** creates an object file with the default extension **.OBJ**. Optional listing (**.LST**) and cross-reference (**.CRF**) files can also be created during assembly. If your program will be linked with high-level-language modules, the source modules are compiled to object files at this point.
3. Optionally use **LIB** to gather multiple object files (**.OBJ**) into a single library file having the default extension **.LIB**. It is generally used for object files that will be linked with several different programs. An optional library list file can also be created with **LIB**.
4. Use **LINK** to combine all the object files and library modules that make up a program into a single executable file (with the default extension **.EXE**). An optional **.MAP** file can also be created.
5. Use **EXE2BIN** to convert executable files to a binary format if necessary. It is necessary for programs in the **.COM** format and for binary files that will be read into an interpreter or compiler. Skip this step for programs in the **.EXE** format.
6. Debug your program to discover logical errors. Debugging may involve several techniques, including the following:
  - Running the program and studying its input and output
  - Studying source and listing files
  - Using **CREF** to create a cross-reference-listing (**.REF**) file
  - Using CodeView (**CV**) to debug during executionIf logical errors are discovered, you must return to Step 1 to correct the source code.

All or part of the program-development cycle can be automated by using **MAKE** with make description files. **MAKE** is most useful for developing complex programs involving numerous source modules. Ordinary DOS batch files may be more efficient for developing single-module programs.

## 1.4 Developing Programs

The text below takes you through the steps involved in developing programs. Examples are shown for each step. The chapters and manuals that describe each topic in detail are cross-referenced.

### 1.4.1 Writing and Editing Assembly-Language Source Code

Assembly-language programs are created from one or more source files. Source files are text files that contain statements defining the program's data and instructions.

To create assembly-language source files, you need a text editor capable of producing ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) files. Lines must be separated by a carriage-return-line-feed combination. If your text editor has a programming or nondocument mode for producing ASCII files, use that mode.

The following examples illustrate source code that produces stand-alone executable programs. Example 1 creates a program in the **.EXE** format, and Example 2 creates the same program in the **.COM** format.

If you are a beginner to assembly language, you can start experimenting by copying these programs. Use the segment shell of the programs, but insert your own data and code.

#### ■ Example 1

```

TITLE    hello
DOSSEG   ; Use Microsoft segment conventions
.MODEL   SMALL① ; conventions and small model

.STACK   100h② ; Allocate 256-byte stack

.DATA③
message  DB "Hello, world.",13,10 ; Message to be written
lmessage EQU $ - message ; Length of message

start:   ④.CODE
        mov ax,@DATA⑤ ; Load segment location
        mov ds,ax ; into DS register

        mov bx,1 ; Load 1 - file handle for
                ; standard output
⑥mov cx,lmessage ; Load length of message
mov dx,OFFSET message ; Load address of message
mov ah,40h ; Load number for DOS Write function
int 21h ; Call DOS

mov ax,4C00h ; Load DOS Exit function (4Ch)
⑦int 21h ; in AH and 0 errorlevel in AL
        ; Call DOS

END      start④

```

Note the following points about the source file:

1. The **.MODEL** and **DOSSEG** directives tell **MASM** that you intend to use the Microsoft order and name conventions for segments. These statements automatically define the segments in the correct order and specify **ASSUME** and **GROUP** statements. You can then place segments in your source file in whatever order you find convenient using the **.STACK**, **.DATA**, **.CODE**, and other segment directives. These simplified segment directives are a new feature of Version 5.0. They are optional; you can still define the segments completely by using the directives required by earlier versions of **MASM**. The simplified segment directives and the Microsoft naming conventions are explained in Section 5.1.
2. A stack of 256 (100 hexadecimal) bytes is defined by using the **.STACK** directive. This is an adequate size for most small programs. Programs with many nested procedures may require a larger stack. See Sections 5.1.4, "Defining Simplified Segments," and 5.2.2, "Defining Full Segments," for more information on defining a stack.
3. The **.DATA** directive marks the start of the data segment. A string variable and its length are defined in this segment.
4. The instruction label `start` in the code segment follows the **.CODE** directive and marks the start of the program instructions. The same label is used after the **END** statement to define the point where program execution will start. See Sections 4.5, "Ending a Source File," and 5.5.1, "Initializing the CS and IP Registers," for more information on using the **END** statement and defining the execution starting point.
5. The first two code instructions load the address of the data segment into the **DS** register. The symbol `@DATA` is an equate representing the name of the segment created with the **.DATA** directive. Predefined segment equates are explained in Section 5.1.5. The **DS** register must always be initialized for source files in the **.EXE** format. Section 5.5 tells how each segment is initialized.
6. The string variable defined earlier is displayed using DOS function 40h (where "h" stands for hexadecimal). File handle 1 (the predefined handle for standard output) is specified to display to the screen. Strings can also be displayed using function 09h. See the *Microsoft MS-DOS Programmer's Reference* or other DOS reference books for more information on DOS calls.
7. DOS function 4Ch is used to terminate the program. While there are other techniques for returning to DOS, this is the one recommended by Microsoft.

The following example shows source code that can be used to create the same program shown earlier, but in the **.COM** format:

## ■ Example 2

```

        TITLE    hello

_TEXT   SEGMENT①                ; Define code segment
        ASSUME   cs:_TEXT,ds:_TEXT,ss:_TEXT②
        ORG     100h③           ; Set location counter to 256

start:   jmp     begin④         ; Jump over data

message DB    "Hello, world.",13,10 ; Message to be written
lmessage EQU   $ - message       ; Length of message

begin:   mov     bx,1           ; Load 1 - file handle for
        ;         standard output
        mov     cx,lmessage     ; Load length of message
        mov     dx,OFFSET message ; Load address of message
        mov     ah,40h         ; Load number for DOS Write function
        int     21h           ; Call DOS

        mov     ax,4C00h       ; Load DOS Exit function (4Ch)
        ;         in AH and 0 errorlevel in AL
        int     21h           ; Call DOS
        ;         Data could be placed here

_TEXT   ENDS①
        END     start

```

Note the following points in which **.COM** programs differ from **.EXE** programs:

1. The **.MODEL** directive cannot be used to define default segments for **.COM** files. However, segment definition is easy, since only one segment can be used. The align, combine, and class types need not be given, since they make no difference for **.COM** files.
2. All segment registers are initialized to the same segment by using the **ASSUME** directive. This tells the assembler which segment to associate with each segment register. See Section 5.4, "Associating Segments with Registers," for more information on the **ASSUME** directive.
3. The **ORG** directive must be used to start assembly at byte 256 (100h). This leaves room for the DOS Program Segment Prefix, which is automatically loaded into memory at run time. See Section 6.4, "Setting the Location Counter," for information on how the **ORG** directive changes the location counter.
4. Although any program data must be included in the single segment, it must not be executed. You can use the **JMP** instruction to skip over data (as shown in the example) or you can put the data at the end after the program returns to DOS.

## 1.4.2 Assembling Source Files

Source modules are assembled with **MASM**. The **MASM** command-line syntax is shown below:

```
MASM [options] sourcefile [,objectfile] [,listingfile] [,crossreferencefile]]]] [;]
```

Assume you had an assembly source file called `hello.asm`. For the fastest possible assembly, you could start **MASM** with the following command line:

```
MASM hello;
```

The output would be an object file called `hello.obj`. To assemble the same source file with the maximum amount of debugging information, use the following command line:

```
MASM /V /Z /ZI hello,.,.,;
```

The `/V` and `/Z` options instruct **MASM** to send additional statistics and error information to the screen during assembly. The `/ZI` option instructs **MASM** to include the information required by the CodeView debugger in the object file. The output of this command is three files: the object file `hello.obj`, the listing file `hello.lst`, and the cross-reference file `hello.crf`.

Chapter 2, “Using **MASM**,” describes the **MASM** command line, options, and listing format in more detail.

## 1.4.3 Converting Cross-Reference Files

Cross-reference files produced by **MASM** are in a binary format and must be converted using **CREF**. The command-line syntax is shown below:

```
CREF crossreferencefile [,crossreferencelisting] [;]
```

To convert the cross-reference file `hello.crf` into an ASCII file that cross-references symbols that are used in `hello.asm`, use the following command line:

```
CREF hello;
```

The output file is called `hello.ref`.

The **CREF** command line and listing format are described in Chapter 3, “Using **CREF**.”

## 1.4.4 Creating Library Files

Object files created with **MASM** or with Microsoft high-level-language compilers can be converted to library files by using **LIB**. The command-line syntax is shown below:

```
LIB oldlibrary [/PAGESIZE:number] [commands] [, [listfile] [, [newlibrary]]] [;]
```

For example, assume you had used **MASM** to assemble two source files containing graphics procedures and you want to be able to call the procedures from several different programs. The object files containing the procedures are called `dots.obj` and `lines.obj`.

You could combine these files into a file called `graphics.lib` using the following command line:

```
LIB graphics +dots +lines;
```

If you later wanted to add another object file called `circles.obj` and at the same time get a listing of the procedures in the library, you could use the following command line:

```
LIB graphics +circles,graphics.lst
```

The **LIB** command line, commands, and listing format are explained in the Microsoft CodeView and Utilities manual.

## 1.4.5 Linking Object Files

Object files are linked into executable files using **LINK**. The **LINK** command-line syntax is shown below:

```
LINK [options] objectfiles [, [executablefile] [, [mapfile] [, [libraryfiles]]]] [;]
```

Assume you want to create an executable file from the single module `hello.obj`. The source file was written for the **.EXE** format (see Section 1.4.1, "Writing and Editing Assembly-Language Source Code") and was assembled using the **/ZI** option. You plan to debug the program with the CodeView debugger. Use the following command line:

```
LINK /CO hello;
```

The output file is `hello.exe`. It contains symbolic and line-number information for the debugger. The file can now be run from the DOS command line or from within the CodeView debugger.

After you have debugged the program, you will probably want to create a final version with no symbolic information. To do so, use the following command line:

```
LINK hello;
```

This command line could also be used if the source file had been prepared in the **.COM** Format. However, in that case the output file `hello.exe` could not be run. Another step is required, as described in Section 1.4.6, “Converting to **.COM** Format.”

Now assume that you want to create a large program called `picture.exe` that has two object files (`picture` and `picture2`) and calls external procedures from the library file described in Section 1.4.4, “Creating Library Files.” Use the following command line:

```
LINK /CO picture picture2,..graphics;
```

The library file `graphics.lib` would need to be in the current directory or in the directory described by the **LIB** environment variable. The procedure calls would have to be declared external in the source file, as described in Section 8.2, “Declaring Symbols External.”

The **LINK** options, command line, and listing format are described in the Microsoft CodeView and Utilities manual.

## 1.4.6 Converting to **.COM** Format

Source files prepared in the **.COM** format require an additional conversion step after linking. The program that does the conversion is called **EXE2BIN**. It is not included in the Macro Assembler package, but it does come with the MS-DOS and PC-DOS operating systems. The syntax is shown below:

```
EXE2BIN exefile [binaryfile]
```

To convert a file called `hello.exe` to an executable file called `hello.com`, use the following command line:

```
EXE2BIN hello hello.com
```

Note that you must specify the extension **.COM**, since **BIN** is the default extension. The **.EXE** file must have been prepared from source and object files in the valid **.COM** format.

**EXE2BIN** can also be used to prepare binary files for use with the Microsoft or IBM BASIC interpreters. See the BASIC interpreter manual for more information.

## 1.4.7 Debugging

The CodeView debugger is usually the most efficient tool for debugging assembler programs. The command-line syntax is shown below:

```
CV [options] executablefile [arguments]
```

To debug a program called `hello.exe` on an IBM Personal Computer, use the following command line:

```
CV hello
```

Note that in order for the debugger to display symbolic information, the program should have been assembled with the `/ZI` option and linked with the `/CO` option. Additional CodeView options may be required for other situations. For instance, graphics programs always require the `/S` option. To debug a graphics program called `circles.com` on an IBM-compatible computer, use the following command line:

```
CV /W/I/S circles.com
```

The `/W` and `/I` options tell the debugger to use IBM-compatible features. Note that the `.COM` extension must be specified, since the debugger assumes files without extensions are `.EXE` files.

For information about CodeView command lines, options, and commands, see the Microsoft CodeView and Utilities manual.

# CHAPTER

# 2

## USING MASM

2.1	Running the Assembler.....	23
2.1.1	Assembly Using a Command Line .....	23
2.1.2	Assembly Using Prompts.....	25
2.2	Using Environment Variables .....	26
2.2.1	The INCLUDE Environment Variable .....	26
2.2.2	The MASM Environment Variable .....	27
2.3	Controlling Message Output.....	28
2.4	Using MASM Options.....	29
2.4.1	Specifying the Segment-Order Method .....	30
2.4.2	Setting the File-Buffer Size.....	31
2.4.3	Creating a Pass 1 Listing.....	32
2.4.4	Defining Assembler Symbols .....	32
2.4.5	Creating Code for a Floating-Point Emulator .....	33
2.4.6	Getting Command-Line Help .....	34
2.4.7	Setting a Search Path for Include Files.....	35
2.4.8	Specifying Listing and Cross-Reference Files.....	35
2.4.9	Specifying Case Sensitivity.....	36
2.4.10	Suppressing Tables in the Listing File .....	37
2.4.11	Checking for Impure Code.....	37
2.4.12	Controlling Display of Assembly Statistics ....	38
2.4.13	Setting the Warning Level.....	39
2.4.14	Listing False Conditionals .....	40
2.4.15	Displaying Error Lines on the Screen .....	41
2.4.16	Writing Symbolic Information to the Object File .....	41

2.5	Reading Assembly Listings .....	42
2.5.1	Reading Code in a Listing .....	42
2.5.2	Reading a Macro Table .....	45
2.5.3	Reading a Structure and Record Table .....	45
2.5.4	Reading a Segment and Group Table .....	46
2.5.5	Reading a Symbol Table .....	47
2.5.6	Reading Assembly Statistics .....	49
2.5.7	Reading a Pass 1 Listing .....	49

The Microsoft Macro Assembler (**MASM**) assembles 8086, 80186, 80286, and 80386 assembly-language source files and creates relocatable object files. Object files can then be linked to form an executable file.

This chapter tells you how to run **MASM**, explains the options and environment variables that control its behavior, and describes the format of the assembly listings it generates.

## 2.1 Running the Assembler

You can assemble source files with **MASM** by using two different methods: by giving a command line at the DOS prompt or by responding to a series of prompts.

Once you have started **MASM**, it attempts to process the source file you specified. If errors are encountered, they are output to the screen and **MASM** terminates. If no errors are encountered, **MASM** outputs an object file. It can also output listing and cross-reference files if they are specified. You can terminate **MASM** at any time by pressing CONTROL-C or CONTROL-BREAK.

### 2.1.1 Assembly Using a Command Line

You can assemble a program source file by typing the **MASM** command name and the names of the files you wish to process. The command line has the following form:

```
MASM [options] sourcefile [, [objectfile] [, [listingfile] [, [crossreferencefile]]]] [;]
```

The *options* can be any combination of the assembler options described in Section 2.4. The option letter or letters must be preceded by a forward slash (/) or a dash (-). Examples in this manual use a forward slash. The forward slash and dash characters cannot be mixed in the same command line. Although shown at the beginning of the syntax line above, options may actually be placed anywhere on the command line. An option affects all relevant files in the command line even if the option appears at the end of the line.

The *sourcefile* must be the name of the source file to be assembled. If you do not supply a file-name extension, **MASM** supplies the extension **.ASM**.

The optional *objectfile* is the name of the file to receive the relocatable object code. If you do not supply a name, **MASM** uses the source-file name, but replaces the extension with **.OBJ**.

The optional *listingfile* is the name of the file to receive the assembly listing. The assembly listing shows the assembled code for each source statement and for the names and types of symbols defined in the program. If you do not supply a file-name extension, the Macro Assembler supplies the extension **.LST**.

The optional *crossreferencefile* is the name of the file to receive the cross-reference output. The resulting cross-reference file can be processed with **CREF**, the Microsoft Cross-Reference Utility, to create a cross-reference listing of the symbols in the program. The cross-reference listing can be used for program debugging. If you do not supply a file-name extension, **MASM** supplies **.CRF** by default.

You can use a semicolon (;) anywhere after the *sourcefile* to select defaults for the remaining file names. A semicolon after the source-file name selects a default object-file name and suppresses creation of the assembly-listing and cross-reference files. A semicolon after the object-file name suppresses just the listing and cross-reference files. A semicolon after the listing-file name suppresses only the cross-reference file.

All files created during the assembly are written to the current drive and directory unless you specify a different drive for each file. You must separately specify the alternate drive and path for each file that you do not want to go on the current directory.

You can also specify a device name instead of a file name—for example, **NUL** for no file or **PRN** for the printer.

---

*Note*

If you want the file name for a given file to be the default (the file name of the source file), place the commas that would otherwise separate the file name from the other names side by side (,,). Unless a semicolon (;) is used, all the commas in the command line are required.

Spaces in a command line are optional. If you make an error entering any of the file names, **MASM** displays an error message and prompts for new file names, using the method described in Section 2.1.2, “Assembly Using Prompts.”

---

## ■ Examples

```
MASM file.asm, file.obj, file.lst, file.crf
```

The example above is equivalent to the command line below:

```
MASM file,,,;
```

The source file `file.asm` is assembled. The generated relocatable code is copied to the object file `file.obj`. **MASM** also creates an assembly listing and a cross-reference file. These are written to `file.lst` and `file.crf`, respectively.

```
MASM startup,,stest;
```

The example above directs **MASM** to assemble the source file `startup.asm`. The assembler then writes the relocatable object code to the default object file, `startup.obj`. **MASM** creates a listing file named `stest.lst`, but the semicolon keeps the assembler from creating a cross-reference file.

```
MASM startup,,stest,;
```

The example above is the same as the previous example except that the semicolon follows a comma that marks the place of the cross-reference file. The assembler creates a cross-reference file `startup.crf`.

```
MASM B:\src\build;
```

The example above directs **MASM** to find and assemble the source file `build.asm` in the directory `\src` on Drive B. The semicolon causes the assembler to create an object file named `build.obj` in the current directory, but prevents **MASM** from creating an assembly-listing or cross-reference file. Note that the object file is placed on the current drive, not the drive specified for the source file.

## 2.1.2 Assembly Using Prompts

You can direct **MASM** to prompt you for the files it needs by starting **MASM** with just the command name. **MASM** prompts you for the input it needs by displaying the following lines, one at a time:

```
Source filename [.ASM]:  
Object filename [source.OBJ]:  
Source listing [NUL.LST]:  
Cross-reference [NUL.CRF]:
```

The prompts correspond to the fields of **MASM** command lines. **MASM** waits for you to respond to each prompt before printing the next one. You must type a source-file name (though the extension is optional) at the first prompt. For other prompts, you can either type a file name, or press the ENTER key to accept the default displayed in brackets after the prompt.

File names typed at prompts must follow the command-line rules described in Section 2.1.1, "Assembly Using a Command Line." You can type options after any of the prompts as long as you separate them from file names with spaces. At any prompt, you can type the rest of the file names in the command-line format. For example, you can choose the default responses for all remaining prompts by typing a semicolon (;) after any prompt (as long as you have supplied a source-file name), or you can type commas (,) to indicate several files.

After you have answered the last prompt and pressed the ENTER key, **MASM** assembles the source file.

## 2.2 Using Environment Variables

The Macro Assembler recognizes two environment variables: **INCLUDE** and **MASM**. The subsections below describe these environment variables and their use with the assembler.

Environment variables are described in general in the DOS user's guide.

### 2.2.1 The **INCLUDE** Environment Variable

The **INCLUDE** environment variable can specify the directory where include files are stored. This makes maintenance of include files easier, particularly on a hard disk. All include files can be kept in the same directory. If you keep source files in different directories, you do not have to keep copies of include files in each directory.

The **INCLUDE** environment variable is used by **MASM** only if you give a file name as an argument to the **INCLUDE** directive (see Section 11.6.1, "Using Include Files") If you give a complete file specification, including directory or drive, **MASM** only looks for the file in the specified directory.

When a file name is specified, **MASM** looks for the include file first in any directory specified with the **/I** option (see Section 2.4.6, "Getting Command-Line Help") If the **/I** option is not used or if the file is not found, **MASM** next looks in the current directory. If the file is still not

found, **MASM** looks in the directories specified with the **INCLUDE** environment variable in the order specified.

### ■ Examples

```
SET INCLUDE=C:\INCLUDE
```

This line defines the **INCLUDE** environment string to be `C:\INCLUDE`. Include files placed in this directory can be found automatically by **MASM**. You can put this line in your **AUTOEXEC.BAT** file to set the environment string each time you turn on your computer.

## 2.2.2 The MASM Environment Variable

The **MASM** environment variable can be used to specify default assembler options. If you define the options you use most in the environment variable, you do not need to type them on the command line every time you start the Macro Assembler.

When you start **MASM**, it reads the options in the environment variable first. Then it reads the options in the command line. If conflicting options are encountered, the last one read takes effect. This means that you can override default options in the environment variable by giving conflicting options in the command line.

Some options define the default action. If given by themselves, they have no effect since the default action is taken anyway. However, they are useful for overriding a nondefault action specified by an option in the environment variable.

Some assembler directives have the same effect as options. They always override related options.

---

### *Note*

The equal sign (=) is not allowed in environment variables. Therefore the **/D** option when used with the equal sign cannot be put in an environment variable. For example, the following DOS command line is illegal and will cause a syntax error:

```
SET MASM=/Dtest=5
```

---

## ■ Examples

```
SET MASM=/A/ZI/Z
```

The command line above sets the **MASM** environment variable so that the **/A**, **/ZI**, and **/Z** options are in effect. The line can be put in an **AUTOEXEC.BAT** file to automatically set these options each time you start your computer.

Assume you have set the **MASM** environment string using the line shown above, and you then start **MASM** with the following command line:

```
MASM /S test;
```

The **/S** option, which specifies sequential segment ordering, conflicts with the **/A** option, which specifies alphabetical segment ordering. The command-line option overrides the environment option, and the source file has sequential ordering. (See Section 5.2.1, "Setting the Segment-Order Method," for information on the significance of segment order.)

However, if the source file contains the **.ALPHA** directive, it overrides all options and specifies alphabetical segment order.

## 2.3 Controlling Message Output

During and immediately after assembly, **MASM** sends messages to the standard output device. By default, this device is the screen. However, the display can be redirected so that instead it goes to a file or to a device such as a printer.

The messages can include a status message for successful assembly and error messages for unsuccessful assembly. The message format and the error and warning messages are described in Appendix B, "Error Messages and Exit Codes."

Some text-editing programs can use error information to locate errors in the source file. Typically, **MASM** is run as a shell from the editor and the assembler output is redirected into a file. The editor then opens the file and uses the data in it to locate errors in the source code. The errors may be located by line number, or by a search for the text of the error line.

If your text editor does not support this capability directly, you may still be able to use keystroke macros to set up similar functions. This requires either an editor that supports keystroke macros or a keyboard enhancer such as ProKey® or SuperKey®.

## ■ Example

MASM file: > errors

This command line sends to the file `errors` all messages that would normally be sent to the screen.

## 2.4 Using MASM Options

The **MASM** options control the operation of the assembler and the format of the output files it generates. Options can be entered with any combination of uppercase and lowercase letters.

MASM has the following options:

Option	Action
<code>/A</code>	Writes segments in alphabetical order
<code>/Bnumber</code>	Sets buffer size
<code>/C</code>	Specifies a cross-reference file
<code>/D</code>	Creates Pass 1 listing
<code>/Dsymbol[= value]</code>	Defines assembler symbol
<code>/E</code>	Creates code for emulated floating-point instructions
<code>/H</code>	Lists command-line syntax and all assembler options
<code>/Ipath</code>	Sets include-file search path
<code>/L</code>	Specifies an assembly-listing file
<code>/ML</code>	Makes names case sensitive
<code>/MU</code>	Converts names to uppercase letters
<code>/MX</code>	Makes public and external names case sensitive
<code>/N</code>	Suppresses tables in listing file
<code>/P</code>	Checks for impure code
<code>/S</code>	Writes segments in source-code order
<code>/T</code>	Suppresses messages for successful assembly
<code>/V</code>	Displays extra statistics to screen
<code>/W{0   1   2}</code>	Sets error-display level

<code>/X</code>	Includes false conditionals in listings
<code>/Z</code>	Displays error lines on screen
<code>/ZD</code>	Puts line-number information in the object file
<code>/ZI</code>	Puts symbolic and line-number information in the object file

---

*Note*

Previous versions of the assembler provided a `/R` option to enable 8087 instructions and real numbers in the IEEE format. Since the current version of the assembler enables 8087 instructions and IEEE format by default, the `/R` option is no longer needed. The option is still recognized so that old make and batch files will work, but it has no effect. The previous default format, Microsoft Binary, can be specified with the `.MSFLOAT` directive, as described in Section 4.4.1, "Defining Default Assembly Behavior."

---

## 2.4.1 Specifying the Segment-Order Method

### ■ Syntax

`/S`                    Default  
`/A`

The `/A` option directs **MASM** to place the assembled segments in alphabetical order before copying them to the object file. The `/S` option directs the assembler to write segments in the order in which they appear in the source code.

Source-code order is the default. If no option is given, **MASM** copies the segments in the order encountered in the source file. The `/S` option is provided for compatibility with the XENIX<sup>®</sup> operating system and for overriding a default option in the **MASM** environment variable.

---

*Note*

Some previous versions of the IBM Macro Assembler ordered segments alphabetically by default. Listings in some books and magazines have been written with these early versions in mind. If you have trouble assembling and linking a listing taken from a book or magazine, try using the `/A` option.

---

The order in which segments are written to the object file is only one factor in determining the order in which they will appear in the executable file. The significance of segment order and ways to control it are discussed in Sections 5.2.1, “Setting the Segment-Order Method” and 5.2.2.3, “Defining Segment Combinations with Combine Type.”

### ■ Example

MASM /A file;

The example above creates an object file, FILE.OBJ, whose segments are arranged in alphabetical order. If the /S option were used instead, or if no option were specified, the segments would be arranged in sequential order.

## 2.4.2 Setting the File-Buffer Size

### ■ Syntax

*/Bnumber*

The /B option directs the assembler to change the size of the file buffer used for the source file. The *number* is the number of 1024-byte (1K) memory blocks allocated for the buffer. You can set the buffer to any size from 1K to 63K (but not 64K). The default size of the buffer is 32K.

A buffer larger than your source file allows you to do the entire assembly in memory, greatly increasing assembly speed. However, you may not be able to use a large buffer if your computer does not have enough memory or if you have too many resident programs using up memory. If you get an error message indicating insufficient memory, you can decrease the buffer size and try again.

### ■ Examples

MASM /B16 file;

The example above decreases the buffer size to 16K.

MASM /B63 file;

The example above increases the buffer size to 63K.

### 2.4.3 Creating a Pass 1 Listing

#### ■ Syntax

`/D`

The `/D` option tells **MASM** to add a Pass 1 listing to the assembly-listing file, making the assembly listing show the results of both assembler passes. A Pass 1 listing is typically used to locate phase errors. Phase errors occur when the assembler makes assumptions about the program in Pass 1 that are not valid in Pass 2.

The `/D` option does not create a Pass 1 listing unless you also direct **MASM** to create an assembly listing. It does direct the assembler to display error messages for both Pass 1 and Pass 2 of the assembly, even if no assembly listing is created. See Section 2.5.7 for more information about Pass 1 listings.

#### ■ Example

```
MASM /D file, , ;
```

This example directs the assembler to create a Pass 1 listing for the source file `file.asm`. The file `file.lst` will contain both the first and second pass listings.

### 2.4.4 Defining Assembler Symbols

#### ■ Syntax

`/Dsymbol[= value]`

The `/D` option when given with a *symbol* argument directs **MASM** to define a symbol that can be used during the assembly as if it were defined as a text equate in the source file. Multiple symbols can be defined in a single command line.

The *value* can be any text string that does not include a space, comma, or semicolon. If no *value* is given, the symbol is assigned a null string.

As noted in Section 2.2.2, “The **MASM** Environment Variable,” the version of the option using the equal sign cannot be stored in the **MASM** environment variable.

## ■ Example

```
MASM /Dwide /Dmode=3 file, ,;
```

This example defines the symbol `wide` and gives it a null value. The symbol could then be used in the following conditional-assembly block:

```
IFDEF wide
PAGE 50,132
ENDIF
```

When the symbol is defined in the command line, the listing file is formatted for a 132-column printer. When the symbol is not defined in the command line, the listing file is given the default width of 80 (see the description of the **PAGE** directive in Section 12.2, “Controlling Page Format in Listings”).

The example also defines the symbol `mode` and gives it the value 3. The symbol could then be used in a variety of contexts, as shown below:

```
scrmode    IF      mode LT 256      ; Use in expression
           DB      mode            ; Initialize byte variable
           ELSE
scrmode    DW      mode            ; Initialize word variable
           ENDIF
```

## 2.4.5 Creating Code for a Floating-Point Emulator

### ■ Syntax

```
/E
```

The `/E` option directs the assembler to generate data and code in the format expected by coprocessor emulator libraries. An emulator library uses 8088/8086 instructions to emulate the instructions of the 8087, 80287, or 80387 coprocessors. An emulator library can be used if you want your code to take advantage of a math coprocessor, or an emulator library can be used if the machine does not have a coprocessor.

Emulator libraries are only available with high-level-language compilers, including the Microsoft C, BASIC, FORTRAN, and Pascal compilers. The option cannot be used in stand-alone assembler programs unless you write your own emulator library. You cannot simply link with the emulator library from a high-level language, since these libraries require that the compiler start-up code be executed.

The Microsoft high-level-language compilers allow you to use options to specify whether you want to use emulator code. If you link a high-level-language module prepared with emulator options with an assembler module that uses coprocessor instructions, you should use the `/E` option when assembling.

To the applications programmer, writing code for the emulator is like writing code for a coprocessor. The instruction sets are the same (except as noted in Chapter 19, "Calculating with a Math Coprocessor"). However, at run time the coprocessor instructions are used only if there is a coprocessor available on the machine. If there is no coprocessor, the slower code from the emulator library is used instead.

### ■ Example

```
MASM /E /MX math.asm;  
CL /FPi calc.c math
```

In the first command line, the source file `math.asm` is assembled with **MASM** by using the `/E` option. Then the **CL** program of the C compiler is used to compile the C source file `calc.c` with the `/FPi` option and finally to link the resulting object file (`calc.obj`) with `math.obj`. The compiler generates emulator code for floating-point instructions. There are similar options for the FORTRAN, BASIC, and Pascal compilers.

## 2.4.6 Getting Command-Line Help

### ■ Syntax

`/H`

The `/H` displays the command-line syntax and all the **MASM** options on the screen. You should not give any file names or other options with the `/H` option.

### ■ Example

```
MASM /H
```

## 2.4.7 Setting a Search Path for Include Files

### ■ Syntax

*/Ipath*

The */I* option is used to set search paths for include files. You can set as many as 10 search paths by using the option for each path. The order of searching is the order in which the paths are listed in the command line. The **INCLUDE** directive and include files are discussed in Section 11.6.1, “Using Include Files.”

### ■ Example

```
MASM /Ib:\io /I\macro file;
```

This command line might be used if the source file contains the following statement:

```
INCLUDE dos.inc
```

In this case, **MASM** would search for the file `dos.inc` first in directory `\io` on Drive B, and then in directory `\macro` on the current drive. If the file was not found in either of these directories, **MASM** would look next in the current directory and finally in any directories specified with the **INCLUDE** environment variable.

You should not specify a path name with the **INCLUDE** directive if you plan to specify search paths from the command line. For example, **MASM** would only search path `a:\macro` and would ignore any search paths specified in the command line if the source file contained any of the following statements:

```
INCLUDE a:\macro\dos.inc
INCLUDE ..\dos.inc
INCLUDE .\dos.inc
```

## 2.4.8 Specifying Listing and Cross-Reference Files

### ■ Syntax

*/L*  
*/C*

The */L* option directs **MASM** to create a listing file even if one was not specified in the command line or in response to prompts. The */C* option

has the same effect for cross-reference files. Files specified with these options always have the base name of the source file plus the extension `.LST` for listing files or `.CRF` for cross-reference files. You cannot specify any other file name. Both options are provided for compatibility with the XENIX operating system.

### ■ Example

```
MASM /L /C file;
```

This line creates `file.lst` and `file.crf`. It is equivalent to the following command line:

```
MASM file...;
```

## 2.4.9 Specifying Case Sensitivity

### ■ Syntax

```
/MU           Default  
/ML  
/MX
```

The `/ML` option directs the assembler to make all names case sensitive. The `/MX` option directs the assembler to make public and external names case sensitive. The `/MU` option directs the assembler to convert all names into uppercase letters.

By default, **MASM** converts all names into uppercase letters. The `/MU` option is provided for compatibility with XENIX (which uses `/ML` by default) and to override options given in the environment variable.

If case sensitivity is turned on, all names that have the same spelling, but use letters of different cases, are considered different. For example, with the `/ML` option, `DATA` and `data` are different. They would also be different with the `/MX` option if they were declared external or public. Public and external names include any label, variable, or symbol names defined by using the **EXTRN**, **PUBLIC**, or **COMM** directives (see Chapter 8, “Creating Programs from Multiple Modules”).

If you use the `/ZI` or `/ZD` option (see Section 2.4.14, “Listing False Conditionals”), the `/MX`, `/ML`, and `/MU` options affect the case of the symbolic data that will be available to a symbolic debugger.

The `/ML` and `/MX` options are typically used when object modules created with `MASM` are to be linked with object modules created by a case-sensitive compiler such as the Microsoft C compiler. If case sensitivity is important, you should also use the linker `/NOI` option.

### ■ Example

```
MASM /MX module;  
LINK /NOI module;
```

This example shows how to use the `/MX` option with `MASM` to assemble a file with case-sensitive public symbols.

## 2.4.10 Suppressing Tables in the Listing File

### ■ Syntax

```
/N
```

The `/N` option tells the assembler to omit all tables from the end of the listing file. If this option is not chosen, `MASM` includes tables of macros, structures, records, segments and groups, and symbols. The code portion of the listing file is not changed by the `/N` option.

### ■ Example

```
MASM /N file.;;
```

## 2.4.11 Checking for Impure Code

### ■ Syntax

```
/P
```

The `/P` option directs `MASM` to check for impure code in the 80286 or 80386 privileged mode.

Code that moves data into memory with a `CS:` override is acceptable in real mode. However, such code may cause problems in protected mode. When the `/P` option is in effect, the assembler checks for these situations and generates an error if it encounters them.

Real and privileged modes are explained in Chapter 13, "Understanding 8086-Family Processors." Versions of DOS available at release time do not support privileged mode.

This option is provided for XENIX compatibility and to warn about programming practices that will be illegal under OS/2, the planned multi-tasking operating system.

### ■ Example

```

        .CODE
        .
        .
        .
addr    jmp     past      ; Don't execute data
past:   DW     ?         ; Allocate code space for data
        .
        .               ; Calculate value of "addr" here
        .
        mov    cs:addr,si ; Load register address

```

The example shows a CS override. If assembled with the /P option, an error is generated.

## 2.4.12 Controlling Display of Assembly Statistics

### ■ Syntax

```

/V
/T

```

The /V and /T options specify the level of information displayed to the screen at the end of assembly. (V is a mnemonic for verbose; T is a mnemonic for terse.)

If neither option is given, MASM outputs a line telling the amount of symbol space free and the number of warnings and errors.

If the /V option is given, MASM also reports the number of lines and symbols processed.

If the /T option is given, MASM does not output anything to the screen unless errors are encountered. This option may be useful in batch or make files if you do not want the output cluttered with unnecessary messages.

If errors are encountered, they will be displayed whether these options are given or not. Appendix B, “Error Messages and Exit Codes,” describes the messages displayed after assembly.

### 2.4.13 Setting the Warning Level

#### ■ Syntax

```
/W{0 | 1 | 2}
```

The **/W** option sets the assembler warning level. **MASM** gives warning messages for assembly statements that are ambiguous or questionable but not necessarily illegal. Some programmers purposely use practices that generate warnings. By setting the appropriate warning level, they can turn off warnings if they are aware of the problem and do not wish to take action to remedy it.

**MASM** has three levels of errors, as shown in Table 2.1.

**Table 2.1**  
**Warning Levels**

Level	Type	Description
0	Severe errors	Illegal statements
1	Serious warnings	Ambiguous statements or questionable programming practices
2	Advisory warnings	Statements that may produce inefficient code

The default warning level is 1. A higher warning level includes a lower level. Level 2 includes severe errors, serious warnings, and advisory warnings. If severe errors are encountered, no object file is produced.

The advisory warnings are listed below:

Number	Message
104	Operand size does not match word size

105	Address size does not match word size
106	Jump within short distance

The serious warnings are listed below:

Number	Message
1	Extra characters on line
16	Symbol is reserved word
31	Operand types must match
57	Illegal size for item
85	End of file, no END directive
101	Missing data; zero assumed
102	Segment near (or at) 64k limit

All other errors are severe.

## 2.4.14 Listing False Conditionals

### ■ Syntax

`/X`

The `/X` option directs **MASM** to copy to the assembly listing all statements forming the body of conditional-assembly blocks whose condition is false. If you do not give the `/X` option in the command line, **MASM** suppresses all such statements. The `/X` option lets you display conditionals that do not generate code. Conditional-assembly directives are explained in Chapter 12, "Controlling Assembly Output."

The `.LFCOND`, `.SFCOND`, and `.TFCOND` directives can override the effect of the `/X` option, as described in Section 12.3.2, "Controlling Listing of Conditional Blocks." The `/X` option does not affect the assembly listing unless you direct the assembler to create an assembly-listing file.

### ■ Example

```
MASM /X file,,:;
```

Listing of false conditionals is turned on when `file.asm` is assembled. Directives in the source file can override the `/X` option to change the status of false-conditional listing.

## 2.4.15 Displaying Error Lines on the Screen

### ■ Syntax

`/Z`

The `/Z` option directs **MASM** to display lines containing errors on the screen. Normally when the assembler encounters an error, it displays only an error message describing the problem. When you use the `/Z` option in the command line, the assembler displays the source line that produced the error in addition to the error message. **MASM** assembles faster without the `/Z` option, but you may find the convenience of seeing the incorrect source lines worth the slight cost in processing speed.

### ■ Example

`MASM /Z file;`

## 2.4.16 Writing Symbolic Information to the Object File

### ■ Syntax

`/ZI`  
`/ZD`

The `/ZI` option directs **MASM** to write symbolic information to the object file. There are two types of symbolic information available: line-number data and symbolic data.

Line-number data relates each instruction to the source line that created it. The CodeView debugger and **SYMDEB** (the debugger provided with some earlier versions of **MASM**) need this information for source-level debugging.

Symbolic data specifies a size for each variable or label used in the program. This includes both public and nonpublic labels and variable names. Public symbols are discussed in Chapter 8, “Creating Programs from Multiple Modules.” The CodeView debugger (but not **SYMDEB**) uses this information to specify the correct size for data objects so that they can be used in expressions.

The **/ZI** option writes both line-number and symbolic data to the object file. If you plan to debug your programs with the CodeView debugger, use the **/ZI** option when assembling and the **/CO** option when linking. All the necessary debugging information is available in executable files prepared in the **.EXE** format. Debugging information is stripped out of programs prepared in **.COM** format.

The **/ZD** option writes line-number information only to the object file. It can be used if you plan to debug with **SYMDEB** or if you want to see line numbers in map files. The **/ZI** option can also be used for these purposes, but it produces larger object files. If you do not have enough memory to debug a program with the CodeView debugger, you can reduce the program size by using **/ZD** instead of **/ZI** for all or some modules.

The option names **/ZI** and **/ZD** are similar to corresponding option names for recent versions of Microsoft compilers.

## 2.5 Reading Assembly Listings

**MASM** creates an assembly listing of your source file whenever you give an assembly-listing file name on the **MASM** command line or in response to the **MASM** prompts. The assembly listing contains both the statements in the source file and the object code (if any) generated for each statement. The listing also shows the names and values of all labels, variables, and symbols in your source file.

The assembler creates tables for macros, structures, records, segments, groups, and other symbols. These tables are placed at the end of the assembly listing (unless you suppress them with the **/N** option). **MASM** lists only the types of symbols encountered in the program. For example, if your program has no macros, there will be no macro section in the symbol table. All symbol names will be shown in uppercase letters unless you use the **/ML** or **/MX** option to specify case sensitivity.

### 2.5.1 Reading Code in a Listing

The assembler lists the code generated from the statements of a source file. Each line has the syntax shown below:

```
[[linenumber]] offset [[code]] statement
```

The *linenumber* is the number of the line starting from the first statement in the assembly listing. Line numbers are produced only if you request a

cross-reference file. Line numbers in the listing do not always correspond to the same lines in the source file.

The *offset* is the offset from the beginning of the current segment to the code. If the statement generates code or data, *code* shows the numeric value in hexadecimal if the value is known at assembly time. If the value is calculated at run time, **MASM** indicates what action is necessary to compute the value. The *statement* is the source statement shown exactly as it appears in the source file, or as expanded by a macro.

If any errors occur during assembly, each error message and error number will appear directly below the statement where the error occurred. Refer to Appendix B, “Error Messages and Exit Codes,” for a list of **MASM** errors and a discussion of the format in which errors are displayed. An example of an error line and message is shown below:

```

    71 0012 E8 001C R                call    doit
test.ASM(46): error A2071: Forward needs override or FAR

```

Note that number 46 in the error message is the source line where the error occurred. Number 71 on the code line is the listing line where the error occurred. These lines will seldom be the same.

The assembler uses the symbols and abbreviations in Table 2.2 to indicate addresses that need to be resolved by the linker or values that were generated in a special way.

**Table 2.2**  
**Symbols and Abbreviations in Listings**

Character	Meaning
R	Relocatable address (linker must resolve)
E	External address (linker must resolve)
---	Segment/group address (linker must resolve)
=	<b>EQU</b> or equal-sign (=) directive
<i>nn</i> :	Segment override in statement
<i>nn</i> /	<b>REP</b> or <b>LOCK</b> prefix instruction
<i>nn</i> [ <i>xx</i> ]	<b>DUP</b> expression: <i>nn</i> copies of the value <i>xx</i>
<i>n</i>	Macro-expansion nesting level (+ if more than nine)
C	Line from <b>INCLUDE</b> file
	80386 size or address prefix

■ Example

The sample listing shown in this section is produced by using the /ZI option. A cross-reference file is specified so that line numbers will appear in the listing. The command line is as follows:

```
MASM /ZI listdemo,.,;
```

The code portion of the resulting listing is shown below. The tables normally seen at the end of the listing are explained later, in Sections 2.5.2–2.5.7 below.

```
Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.00                9/22/87 14:44:53
Listing features demo                                     Page      1-1

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11 = 0080
12
13
14
15
16 0100
17
18
19
20
21 0000 05
22 0001 07
23 0002 07C3
24 0004
25
26 0000
27 0000 1F
28 0001 09
29 0002 16
30 0003 07C3
31
32 0005 0064[
33      ????
34      ]
35
36
37
38 00CD 46 69 6E 69 73 68 65 1 ending StrAlloc ending,"Finished."
39 00D6 OD OA 1 DB "Finished."
40 DB 13d,10d
```

```

41 0000                                     .CODE
42
43 0000 B8 ---- R                          start: mov     ax,@DATA
44 0003 8E D8                               mov     ds,ax
45
46 0005 B8 0063                               mov     ax,'c'
47 0008 26: 8B OE 0080                       mov     cx,es:larg
48 000D BF 0052                               mov     di,82
49 0010 F2/ AE                               repne  scasb
50 0012 57                                   push   di
51
52                                           EXTRN  work:NEAR
53 0013 E8 0000 E                             call   work
54
55 0016 B8 170C                               mov     ax,4C00
listdemo.ASM(40): error A2107: Non-digit in number
56 0019 CD 21                                int    21h
57
58 001B                                     END    start

```

## 2.5.2 Reading a Macro Table

A macro table at a listing file's end gives in alphabetical order the names and sizes (in lines) of all macros called or defined in the source file.

### ■ Example

Macros:

Name	Lines
STRALLOC . . . . .	3

## 2.5.3 Reading a Structure and Record Table

All structures and records declared in the source file are given at the end of the listing file. The names are listed in alphabetical order. Each name is followed by the fields in the order in which they are declared.

### ■ Example

Structures and Records:

Name	Width Shift	# fields		Initial
		Width	Mask	
COLOR . . . . .	0008	0004		
B . . . . .	0007	0001	0080	0000
R . . . . .	0004	0003	0070	0010
I . . . . .	0003	0001	0008	0008
F . . . . .	0000	0003	0007	0007
DATE . . . . .	0004	0003		
MONTH . . . . .	0000			
DAY . . . . .	0001			
YEAR . . . . .	0002			

The first row of headings only applies to the record or structure itself. For a record, the “Width” column shows the width in bits while the “# fields” column tells the total number of fields.

The second row of headings applies only to fields of the record or structure. For records, the “Shift” column lists the offset (in bits) from the low-order bit of the record to the low-order bit in the field. The “Width” column lists the number of bits in the field. The “Mask” column lists the maximum value of the field, expressed in hexadecimal. The “Initial” column lists the initial value of the field, if any. For each field, the table shows the mask and initial values as if they were placed in the record and all other fields were set to 0.

For a structure, the “Width” column lists the size of the structure in bytes. The “# fields” column lists the number of fields in the structure. Both values are in hexadecimal.

For structure fields, the “Shift” column lists the offset in bytes from the beginning of the structure to the field. This value is in hexadecimal. The other columns are not used.

## 2.5.4 Reading a Segment and Group Table

Segments and groups used in the source file are listed at the end of the program with their size, align type, combine type, and class. If you used simplified segment directives in the source file, the actual segment names generated by **MASM** will be listed in the table.

### ■ Example

Segments and Groups:

Name	Size	Align	Combine	Class
DGROUP	GROUP			
_DATA	0008	WORD	PUBLIC	'DATA'
_STACK	0800	PARA	STACK	'STACK'
_TEXT	0018	BYTE	PUBLIC	'CODE'

The “Name” column lists the names of all segments and groups. Segment and group names are given in alphabetical order, except that the names of segments belonging to a group are placed under the group name in the order in which they were added to the group.

The “Size” column lists the byte size (in hexadecimal) of each segment. The size of groups is not shown.

The “Align” column lists the align type of the segment.

The “Combine” column lists the combine type of the segment. If no explicit combine type is defined for the segment, the listing shows NONE, representing the private combine type. If the “Align” column contains AT, the “Combine” column contains the hexadecimal address of the beginning of the segment.

The “Class” column lists the class name of the segment. For a complete explanation of the align, combine, and class types, see Section 5.2.2, “Defining Full Segments.”

## 2.5.5 Reading a Symbol Table

All symbols (except names for macros, structures, records, and segments) are listed in a symbol table at the end of the listing.

### ■ Example

Symbols:

Name	Type	Value	Attr	
BUFFER . . . . .	L WORD	0005	_DATA	Length = 0064
ENDING . . . . .	L BYTE	00CD	_DATA	
LARG . . . . .	NUMBER	0080		
LENDING . . . . .	NUMBER	000B		
START . . . . .	L NEAR	0000	_TEXT	
TEXT . . . . .	L BYTE	0000	_DATA	
TODAY . . . . .	L DWORD	0001	_DATA	
WORK . . . . .	L NEAR	0000	_TEXT	External
@CODE . . . . .	TEXT	_TEXT		
@CODESIZE . . . . .	TEXT	0		
@DATA . . . . .	TEXT	DGROUP		
@DATASIZE . . . . .	TEXT	0		
@FARDATA . . . . .	TEXT	FAR_DATA		
@FARDATA? . . . . .	TEXT	FAR_BSSk		
@FILENAME . . . . .	TEXT	listdemo		

The “Name” column lists the names in alphabetical order. The “Type” column lists each symbol’s type. A type is given as one of the following:

Type	Definition
<b>L NEAR</b>	A near label
<b>L FAR</b>	A far label
<b>N PROC</b>	A near procedure label
<b>F PROC</b>	A far procedure label
<b>NUMBER</b>	An absolute label
<b>ALIAS</b>	An alias for another symbol
<b>OPCODE</b>	An equate for an instruction opcode
<b>TEXT</b>	A text equate
<b>BYTE</b>	One byte
<b>WORD</b>	One word (two bytes)
<b>DWORD</b>	Doubleword (four bytes)
<b>QWORD</b>	Quadword (eight bytes)
<b>TBYTE</b>	Ten bytes
<i>number</i>	Length in bytes of a structure variable

The length of a multiple-element variable such as an array or string is the length of a single element, not the length of the entire variable. For example, string variables are always shown as **L BYTE**.

If the symbol represents an absolute value defined with an **EQU** or equal-sign (=) directive, the “Value” column shows the symbol’s value. The value may be another symbol, a string, or a constant numeric value (in hexadecimal), depending on whether the type is **ALIAS**, **TEXT**, or **NUMBER**. If the type is **OPCODE**, the “Value” column will be blank. If the symbol represents a variable, label, or procedure, the “Value” column shows the symbol’s hexadecimal offset from the beginning of the segment in which it is defined.

The “Attr” column shows the attributes of the symbol. The attributes include the name of the segment (if any) in which the symbol is defined, the scope of the symbol, and the code length. A symbol’s scope is given only if the symbol is defined using the **EXTRN** and **PUBLIC** directives. The scope can be **EXTERNAL**, **GLOBAL**, or **COMMUNAL**. The code length (in hexadecimal) is given only for procedures. The “Attr” column is blank if the symbol has no attribute.

The text equates shown at the end of the sample table are the ones defined automatically when you use simplified segment directives (see Section 5.1.1, “Understanding Memory Models”).

## 2.5.6 Reading Assembly Statistics

Data on the assembly, including the number of lines and symbols processed and the errors or warnings encountered, are shown at the end of the listing. See Appendix B, “Error Messages and Exit Codes,” for further information on this data.

### ■ Example

```

48 Source Lines
52 Total Lines
53 Symbols

45570 + 310654 Bytes symbol space free

0 Warning Errors
1 Severe Errors
```

## 2.5.7 Reading a Pass 1 Listing

When you specify the `/D` option in the `MASM` command line, the assembler puts a Pass 1 listing in the assembly-listing file. The listing file shows the results of both assembler passes. Pass 1 listings are useful in analyzing phase errors.

The following example illustrates a Pass 1 listing for a source file that assembled without error on the second pass.

```

0017 7E 00                jle     label1
PASS_CMP.ASM(20) : error 9 : Symbol not defined LABEL1
0019 BB 1000             mov     bx,4096
001C                    label1:
```

During Pass 1, the `JLE` instruction to a forward reference produces an error message, and the value 0 is encoded as the operand. `MASM` displays this error because it has not yet encountered the symbol `label1`.

Later in Pass 1, `label1` is defined. Therefore, the assembler knows about `label1` on Pass 2 and can fix the Pass 1 error. The Pass 2 listing is shown below:

```

0017 7E 03                jle     label1
0019 BB 1000             mov     bx,4096
001C                    label1:
```

The operand for the **JLE** instruction is now coded as 3 instead of 0 to indicate that the distance of the jump to `label1` is three bytes.

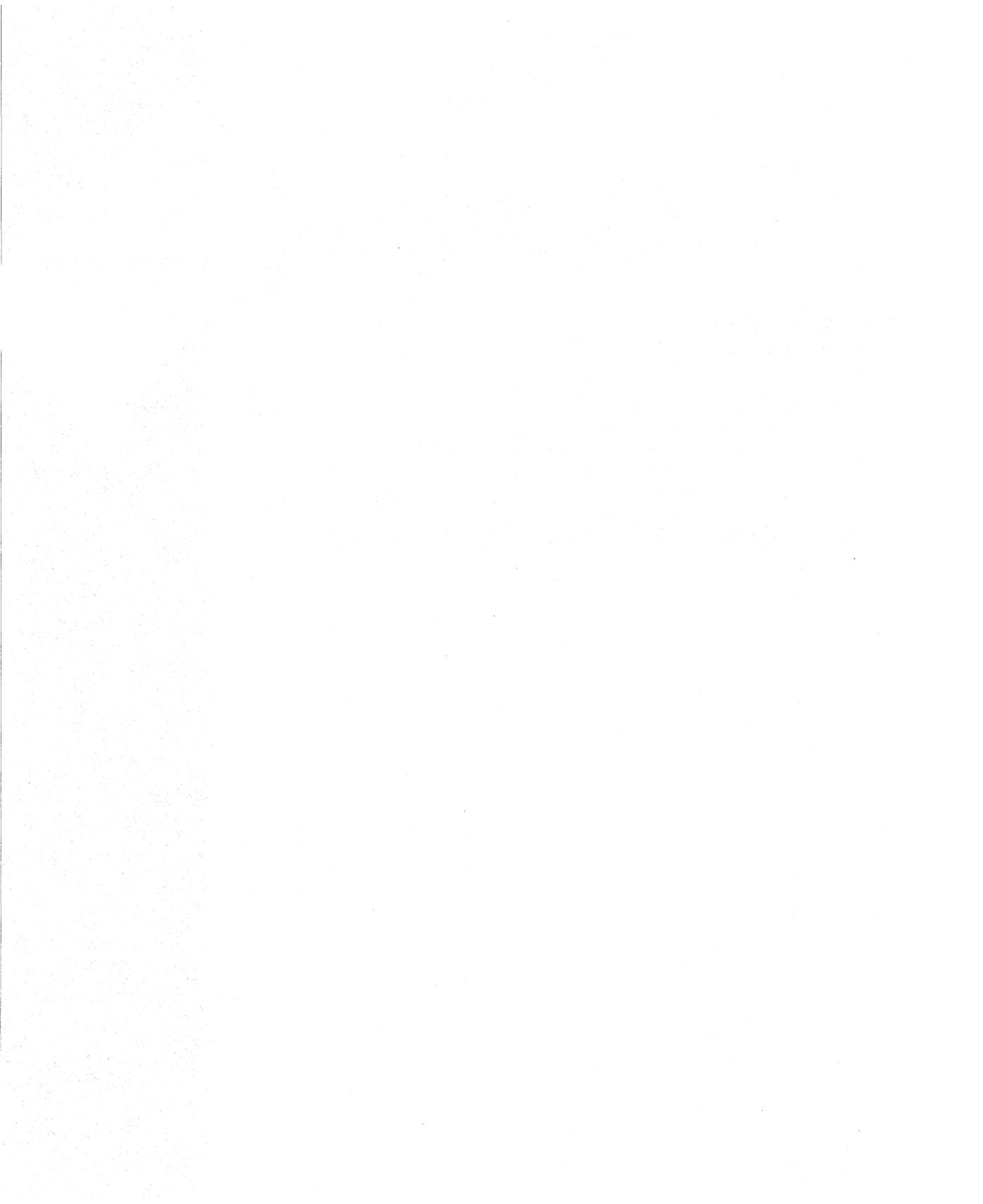
Since **MASM** generated the same number of bytes for both passes, there was no error. Phase errors occur if the assembler makes an assumption on Pass 1 that it cannot change on Pass 2. If you get a phase error, you can examine the Pass 1 listing to see what assumptions the assembler made.

# CHAPTER

# 3

## USING CREF

3.1	Using CREF.....	53
3.1.1	Using a Command Line to Create a Cross-Reference Listing .....	53
3.1.2	Using Prompts to Create a Cross-Reference Listing .....	54
3.2	Reading Cross-Reference Listings .....	55



The Microsoft Cross-Reference Utility (**CREF**) creates a cross-reference listing of all symbols in an assembly-language program. A cross-reference listing is an alphabetical list of symbols in which each symbol is followed by a series of line numbers. The line numbers indicate the lines in the source program that contain a reference to the symbol.

**CREF** is intended for use as a debugging aid to speed up the search for symbols encountered during a debugging session. The cross-reference listing, together with the symbol table created by the assembler, can make debugging and correcting a program easier.

## 3.1 Using CREF

**CREF** creates a cross-reference listing for a program by converting a binary cross-reference file, produced by the assembler, into a readable ASCII file. You create the cross-reference file by supplying a cross-reference-file name when you invoke the assembler. See Section 2.1.1, “Assembly Using a Command Line,” for more information on creating a binary cross-reference file. You create the cross-reference listing by invoking **CREF** and supplying the name of the cross-reference file.

### 3.1.1 Using a Command Line to Create a Cross-Reference Listing

To convert a binary cross-reference file created by **MASM** into an ASCII cross-reference listing, type **CREF** followed by the names of the files you want to process.

#### ■ Syntax

**CREF** *crossreferencefile* [,*crossreferencelisting*] [;]

The *crossreferencefile* is the name of the cross-reference file created by **MASM**, and the *crossreferencelisting* is the name of the readable ASCII file you wish to create.

If you do not supply file-name extensions when you name the files, **CREF** automatically provides **.CRF** for the cross-reference file and **.REF** for the cross-reference-listing file. If you do not want these extensions, you must supply your own.

You can select a default file name for the listing file by typing a semicolon (;) immediately after *crossreferencefile*.

You can specify a directory or disk drive for either of the files. You can also name output devices such as CON (display console) and PRN (printer).

When **CREF** finishes creating the cross-reference-listing file, it displays the number of symbols processed.

## Examples

```
CREF test.crf,test.ref
```

The example above converts the cross-reference file `test.crf` to the cross-reference-listing file `test.ref`. It is equivalent to

```
CREF test,test
```

or

```
CREF test;
```

The following example directs the cross-reference listing to the screen. No file is created.

```
CREF test,con
```

### 3.1.2 Using Prompts to Create a Cross-Reference Listing

You can direct **CREF** to prompt you for the files it needs by starting **CREF** with just the command name. **CREF** prompts you for the input it needs by displaying the following lines, one at a time:

```
Cross-Reference [.CRF]:  
Listing [filename.REF]:
```

The prompts correspond to the fields of **CREF** command lines. **CREF** waits for you to respond to each prompt before printing the next one. You must type a cross-reference file name (though the extension is optional) at the first prompt. For the second prompt, you can either type a file name or press the ENTER key to accept the default displayed in brackets after the prompt.

After you have answered the last prompt and pressed the ENTER key, **CREF** reads the cross-reference file and creates the new listing. It also displays the number of symbols in the cross-reference file.

## 3.2 Reading Cross-Reference Listings

The cross-reference listing contains the name of each symbol defined in your program. Each name is followed by a list of line numbers representing the line or lines in the listing file in which a symbol is defined or used. Line numbers in which a symbol is defined are marked with a number sign (#).

Each page in the listing begins with the title of the program. The title is the name or string defined by the **TITLE** directive in the source file (see Section 12.2.1, “Setting the Listing Title”).

### ■ Example

The next three code samples illustrate source, listings, and cross-reference files for a program. The source file `hello.asm` is shown below:

```

                TITLE    hello

                DOSSEG
                .MODEL   small

                .STACK  100h

                .DATA
PUBLIC  message, lmessage
message DB    "Hello, world."
lmessage EQU  $ - message

                .CODE

start:  mov     ax, DGROUP
        mov     ds, ax

        EXTRN  display:NEAR
        call   display

        mov     ax, 4C00h
        int    21h

        END    start

```

To assemble the program and create a cross-reference file, enter the following command line:

```
MASM hello,,,;
```

The listing file `hello.lst` produced by this assembly is shown below:

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.00  
hello

9/22/87 15:39:48  
Page 1-1

```

1                               TITLE    hello
2
3                               DOSSEG
4                               .MODEL   small
5
6 0100                          .STACK  100h
7
8 0000                          .DATA
9 PUBLIC message,lmessage
10 0000 48 65 6C 6C 6F 2C 20    message DB "Hello, world."
11      77 6F 72 6C 64 2E
12 = 000D                       lmessage EQU $ - message
13
14 0000                          .CODE
15
16 0000 B8 ---- R              start:  mov    ax,DGROUP
17 0003 8E D8                  mov    ds,ax
18
19                               EXTRN   display:NEAR
20 0005 E8 0000 E              call   display
21
22 0008 B8 4C00                mov    ax,4C00h
23 000B CD 21                  int    21h
24
25 000D                          END    start

```

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.00  
hello

9/22/87 15:39:48  
Symbols-1

Segments and Groups:

Name	Length	Align	Combine	Class
DGROUP	GROUP			
_DATA	000D	WORD	PUBLIC	'DATA'
_STACK	0100	PARA	STACK	'STACK'
_TEXT	000D	BYTE	PUBLIC	'CODE'

Symbols:

Name	Type	Value	Attr
DISPLAY	L NEAR	0000	_TEXT External
LMESSAGE	NUMBER	000D	Global
MESSAGE	L BYTE	0000	_DATA Global
START	L NEAR	0000	_TEXT
@CODE	TEXT	_text	
@CODESIZE	TEXT	0	
@DATA	TEXT	dgroup	
@DATASIZE	TEXT	0	
@FARDATA	TEXT	far_data	
@FARDATA?	TEXT	far_bss	
@FILENAME	TEXT	hellod	

24 Source Lines  
24 Total Lines  
39 Symbols

45994 + 314294 Bytes symbol space free

0 Warning Errors  
0 Severe Errors

To create a cross-reference listing of the file `hello.crf`, enter the following command line:

```
CREF hello;
```

The resulting cross-reference-listing file `hello.ref` is shown below:

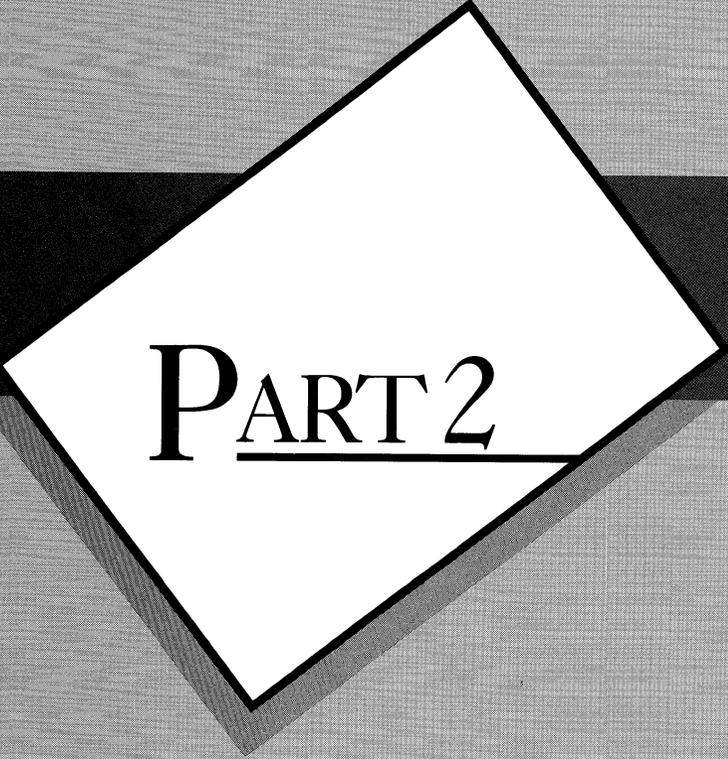
```
Microsoft Cross-Reference Version 5.00          9/22/87 15:39:48
hello
```

Symbol Cross-Reference	# is definition)			Cref-1
CODE . . . . .	14			
DATA . . . . .	8			
DGROUP . . . . .	16			
DISPLAY. . . . .	19#	20		
LMESSAGE . . . . .	9	12#		
MESSAGE. . . . .	9	10#	12	
STACK. . . . .	6#	6		
START. . . . .	16#	25		
_DATA. . . . .	8#			
_TEXT. . . . .	14#			

10 Symbols

Notice that line numbers in the listing and cross-reference-listing files may not identify corresponding lines in the source file.





PART 2

- USING  
DIRECTIVES

# CHAPTERS

- 4 Writing Source Code . . . . 63
- 5 Defining Segment Structure . . . . 81
- 6 Defining Labels and Variables . . . . 117
- 7 Using Structures and Records . . . . 141
- 8 Creating Programs from Multiple Modules . . . . 157
- 9 Using Operands and Expressions . . . . 171
- 10 Assembling Conditionally . . . . 197
- 11 Using Equates, Macros, and Repeat Blocks . . . . 211
- 12 Controlling Assembly Output . . . . 239

# PART 2 USING DIRECTIVES

Part 2 of the Programmer's Guide (comprising chapters 4–12) describes the directives and operators recognized by the Microsoft Macro Assembler. Directives tell you how to generate code and data at assembly time. Operators tell you how to combine operands to form assembly-language expressions.

Chapter 4 introduces basic concepts of the assembly language recognized by the Microsoft Macro Assembler. Topics covered include symbols, constants, statement syntax, and processor directives.

Chapters 5–8 explain the different directives and operators. The material is organized topically, with related directives discussed together. Operators and expressions are discussed specifically in Chapter 9.

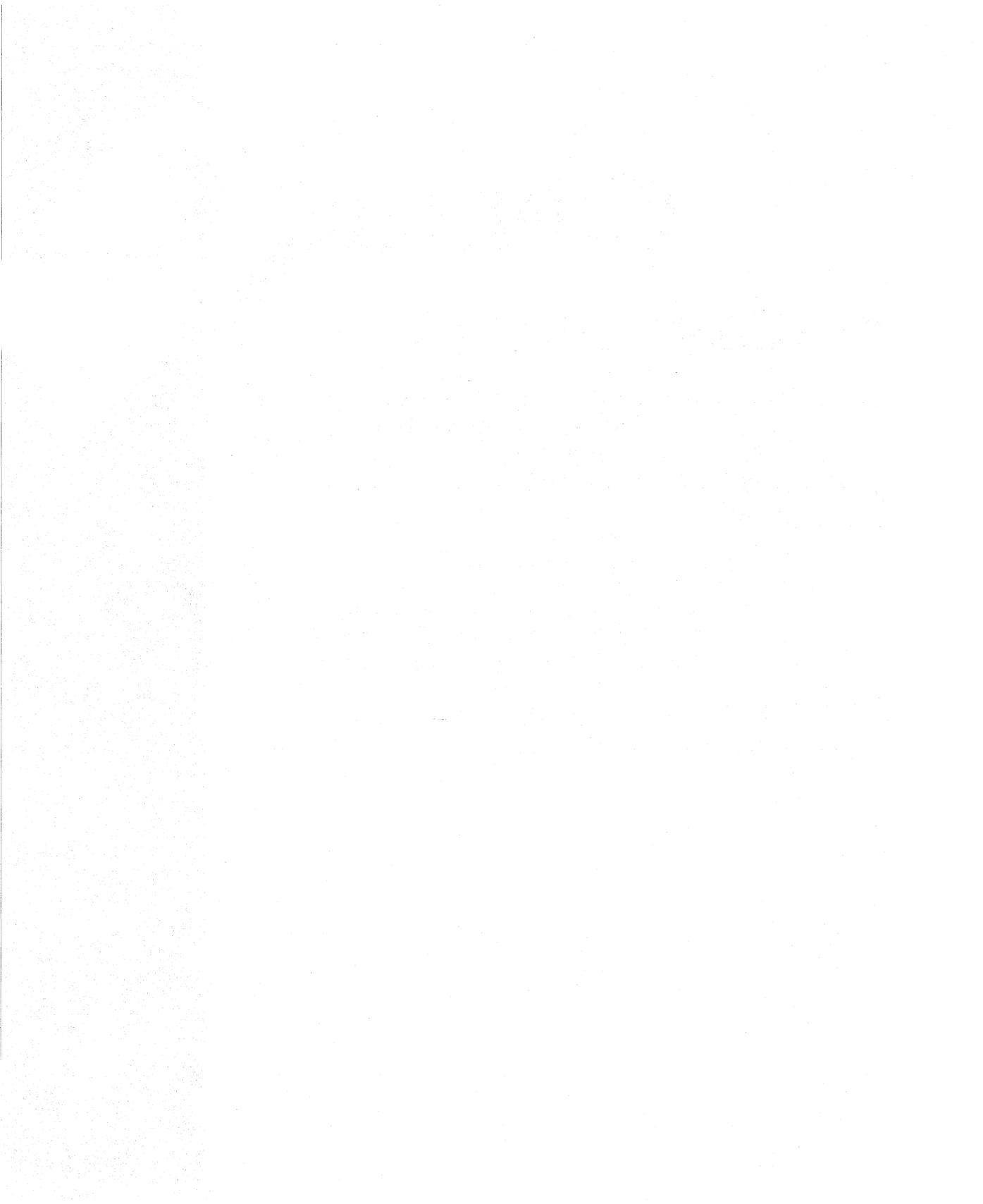


# CHAPTER

# 4

## WRITING SOURCE CODE

4.1	Writing Assembly-Language Statements .....	65
4.1.1	Using Mnemonics and Operands .....	66
4.1.2	Writing Comments .....	67
4.2	Assigning Names to Symbols .....	67
4.3	Constants .....	69
4.3.1	Integer Constants .....	70
	4.3.1.1 Specifying Integers with Radix Specifiers .....	70
	4.3.1.2 Setting the Default Radix .....	71
4.3.2	Packed Binary Coded Decimal Constants .....	72
4.3.3	Real-Number Constants .....	73
4.3.4	String Constants .....	74
4.4	Defining Default Assembly Behavior .....	75
4.5	Ending a Source File.....	78



Assembly-language programs are written as source files, which can then be assembled into object files by **MASM**. Object files can then be processed and combined with **LINK** to form executable files.

Source files are made up of assembly-language statements. Statements are in turn made up of mnemonics, operands, and comments. This chapter describes how to write assembly-language statements. Symbol names and constants are explained. It also tells you how to start and end assembly-language source files.

## 4.1 Writing Assembly-Language Statements

A statement is a combination of mnemonics, operands, and comments that defines the object code to be created at assembly time. Each line of source code consists of a single statement. Multiline statements are not allowed. Statements must not have more than 128 characters. Statements can have up to four fields, as shown below:

### ■ Syntax

`[[name] [operation] [operands] [;comment]]`

The fields are explained below, starting with the leftmost field:

Field	Purpose
<i>name</i>	Labels the statement so that the statement can be accessed by name in other statements
<i>operation</i>	Defines the action of the statement
<i>operands</i>	Defines the data to be operated on by the statement
<i>comment</i>	Describes the statement without having any effect on assembly

All fields are optional, although the operand or name fields may be required if certain directives or instructions are given in the operation field. A blank line is simply a statement in which all fields are blank. A comment line is a statement in which all fields except the comment are blank.

Statements can be entered in uppercase or lowercase letters. Sample code in this manual uses uppercase letters for directives, hexadecimal letter

digits, and segment definitions. Your code will be clearer if you choose a case convention and use it consistently.

Each field (except the comment field) must be separated from other fields by a space or tab character. That is the only limitation on structure imposed by **MASM**. For example, the following code is legal:

```
dosseg;use microsoft segment conventions
.model small;conventions and small model
.stack 100h;allocate 256-byte stack
.data
message db "Hello, world.",13,10;message to be written
lmessage equ $ - message;length of message
.code
start: mov ax,@data;load segment location
mov ds,ax;into ds register
mov bx,1;load 1 - file handle for
;standard output
mov cx,lmessage;load length of message
mov dx,offset message;load address of message
mov ah,40h;load number for dos write function
int 21h;call dos
mov ax,4c00h;load dos exit function (4ch)
;in ah and 0 errorlevel in al
int 21h;call dos
end start
```

However, the code is much easier to interpret if each field is assigned a specified tab position and a standard convention is used for capitalization. The example program in Chapter 1, "Getting Started," is the same as the example above except for the conventions used.

### 4.1.1 Using Mnemonics and Operands

Mnemonics are the names assigned to commands that tell either the assembler or the processor what to do. There are two types of mnemonics: directives and instructions.

Directives give directions to the assembler. They specify the manner in which the assembler is to generate object code at assembly time. Part 2, "Using Directives," describes the directives recognized by the assembler. Directives are also discussed in Part 3, "Using Instructions."

Instructions give directions to the processor. At assembly time, they are translated into object code. At run time, the object code controls the behavior of the processor. Instructions are described in Part 3, "Using Instructions."

Operands define the data that is used by directives and instructions. They can be made up of symbols, constants, expressions, and registers. Sections

4.2 and 4.3 below discuss symbol names and constants. Operands, expressions, and registers are discussed throughout the manual, but particularly in Chapter 9, “Using Operands and Expressions,” and Chapter 14, “Using Addressing Modes.”

## 4.1.2 Writing Comments

Comments are descriptions of the code. They are for documentation only and are ignored by the assembler.

Any text following a semicolon is considered a comment. Comments commonly start in the column assigned for the comment field, or in the first column of the source code. The comment must follow all other fields in the statement.

Multiline comments can either be specified with multiple comment statements or with the **COMMENT** directive.

### ■ Syntax

```
COMMENT delimiter [text]  
text  
delimiter [text]
```

All *text* between the first *delimiter* and the line containing a second *delimiter* is ignored by the assembler. The *delimiter* character is the first non-blank character after the **COMMENT** directive. The *text* includes the comments up to and including the line containing the next occurrence of the delimiter.

### ■ Example

```
COMMENT + The plus  
        sign is the delimiter. The  
        assembler ignores the statement  
        following the last delimiter  
+      mov     ax,1    (ignored)
```

## 4.2 Assigning Names to Symbols

A symbol is a name that represents a value. Symbols are one of the most important elements of assembly-language programs. Elements that must

be represented symbolically in assembly-language source code include variables, address labels, macros, segments, procedures, records, and structures. Constants, expressions, and strings can also be represented symbolically.

Symbol names are combinations of letters (both uppercase and lowercase), digits, and special characters. The Macro Assembler recognizes the following character set:

```
A-Z a-z 0-9
? @ _ $ : . [ ] ( ) < > { } + - / *
& % ! ' ~ | \ = # ^ ; , ` " "
```

Letters, digits, and some characters can be used in symbol names, but some restrictions on how certain characters can be used or combined are listed below:

- A name can have any combination of uppercase and lowercase letters. All lowercase letters are converted to uppercase ones by the assembler, unless the `/ML` assembly option is used, or unless the name is declared with a `PUBLIC` or `EXTRN` directive and the `/MX` option is used.
- Digits may be used within a name, but not as the first character.
- A name can be given any number of characters, but only the first 31 are used. All other characters are ignored.
- The following characters may be used at the beginning of a name or within a name: underscore (`_`), question mark (`?`), dollar sign (`$`), and at sign (`@`).
- The period (`.`) is an operator and cannot be used within a name, but it can be used as the first character of a name.
- A name may not be the same as any reserved name. Note that two special characters, the question mark (`?`) and the dollar sign (`$`), are reserved names and therefore can't stand alone as symbol names.

A reserved name is any name with a special, predefined meaning to the assembler. Reserved names include instruction and directive mnemonics, register names, and operator names. All uppercase and lowercase letter combinations of these names are treated as the same name.

Table 4.1 lists names that are always reserved by the assembler. Using any of these names for a symbol results in an error.

Table 4.1

## Reserved Names

\$	.DATA	.ERRNDEF	.LALL	REPT
*	.DATA?	.ERRNZ	LE	.SALL
+	DB	EVEN	LENGTH	SEG
-	DD	EXITM	.LFCOND	SEGMENT
.	DF	EXTRN	.LIST	.SEQ
/	DOSSEG	FAR	LOCAL	.SFCOND
=	DQ	.FARDATA	LOW	SHL
?	DS	.FARDATA?	LT	SHORT
[	DT	FWORD	MACRO	SHR
.186	DW	GE	MASK	SIZE
.286	DWORD	GROUP	MOD	.STACK
.286P	ELSE	GT	.MODEL	STRUC
.287	END	HIGH	NAME	SUBTTL
.386	ENDIF	IF	NE	TBYTE
.386P	ENDM	IF1	NEAR	.TFCOND
.387	ENDP	IF2	NOT	THIS
.8086	ENDS	IFB	OFFSET	TITLE
.8087	EQ	IFDEF	OR	TYPE
ALIGN	EQU	IFDIF	ORG	.TYPE
.ALPHA	.ERR	IFE	%OUT	WIDTH
AND	.ERR1	IFIDN	PAGE	WORD
ASSUME	.ERR2	IFNB	PROC	.XALL
BYTE	.ERRB	IFNDEF	PTR	.XCREF
.CODE	.ERRDEF	INCLUDE	PUBLIC	.XLIST
COMM	.ERRDIF	INCLUDELIB	PURGE	XOR
COMMENT	.ERRE	IRP	QWORD	
.CONST	.ERRIDN	IRPC	.RADIX	
.CREF	.ERRNB	LABEL	RECORD	

In addition to these names in the table above, instruction mnemonics and register names are considered reserved names. These vary depending on the processor directives given in the source file. For example, the register name **EAX** is a reserved word with the **.386** directive but not with the **.286** directive. Section 4.4.1, “Defining Default Assembly Behavior,” describes processor directives. Instruction mnemonics for each processor are listed in the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference*. Register names are listed in Section 14.2, “Using Register Operands.”

### 4.3 Constants

Constants can be used in source files to specify numbers or strings that are set or initialized at assembly time. **MASM** recognizes four types of constant values:

1. Integers
2. Packed binary coded decimals
3. Real numbers
4. Strings

### 4.3.1 Integer Constants

Integer constants represent integer values. They can be used in a variety of contexts in assembly-language source code. For example, they can be used in data declarations and equates, or as immediate operands.

Packed decimal integers are a special kind of integer constant that can only be used to initialize binary coded decimal (BCD) variables. They are described in Sections 4.3.2, "Packed Binary Coded Decimal Constants," and 6.2.1.2, "Binary Coded Decimal Variables."

Integer constants can be specified in binary, octal, decimal, or hexadecimal values. Table 4.2 shows the legal digits for each of these radices. For hexadecimal radix, the digits can be either uppercase or lowercase letters.

**Table 4.2**  
**Digits Used with Each Radix**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Base</b>	<b>Digits</b>
Binary	2	0 1
Octal	8	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
Decimal	10	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
Hexadecimal	16	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F

The radix for an integer can be defined for a specific integer by using radix specifiers; or a default radix can be defined globally with the `.RADIX` directive.

#### 4.3.1.1 Specifying Integers with Radix Specifiers

The radix for an integer constant can be given by putting one of the following radix specifiers after the last digit of the number:

Radix	Specifier
Binary	B
Octal	Q or O
Decimal	D
Hexadecimal	H

Radix specifiers can be given in either uppercase or lowercase letters; sample code in this manual uses lowercase letters.

Hexadecimal numbers must always start with a decimal digit (0 to 9). If necessary, put a leading 0 at the left of the number to distinguish between symbols and hexadecimal numbers that start with a letter. For example, OABCh is interpreted as a hexadecimal number, but ABCh is interpreted as a symbol. The hexadecimal digits A through F can be either uppercase or lowercase letters. Sample code in this manual uses uppercase letters.

If no radix is given, the assembler interprets the integer by using the current default radix. The initial default radix is decimal, but you can change the default with the **.RADIX** directive.

### ■ Examples

```
n360      EQU      01011010b + 132q + 5Ah + 90d ; 4 * 90
n60       EQU      00001111b + 17o + 0Fh + 15d ; 4 * 15
```

#### 4.3.1.2 Setting the Default Radix

The **.RADIX** directive sets the default radix for integer constants in the source file.

### ■ Syntax

**.RADIX** *expression*

The *expression* must evaluate to a number in the range 2–16. It defines whether the numbers are binary, octal, decimal, hexadecimal, or numbers of some other base.

Numbers given in *expression* are always considered decimal, regardless of the current default radix. The initial default radix is decimal.

*Note*

The **.RADIX** directive does not affect real numbers initialized as variables with the **DD**, **DQ**, or **DT** directive. Initial values for variables declared with these directives are always evaluated as decimal unless a radix specifier is appended.

Also, the **.RADIX** directive does not affect the optional radix specifiers, **B** and **D**, used with integer numbers. When the letters **B** or **D** appear at the end of any integer, they are always considered to be a radix specifier even if the current radix is 16.

For example, if the input radix is 16, the number `OABCD` will be interpreted as `OABC` decimal, an illegal number, instead of as `OABCD` hexadecimal, as intended. Type `OABCDh` to specify `OABCD` in hexadecimal. Similarly, the number `11B` will be treated as `11` binary, a legal number, but not as `11B` hexadecimal as intended. Type `11Bh` to specify `11B` in hexadecimal.

---

■ **Examples**

```
.RADIX 16           ; Set default radix to hexadecimal
.RADIX 2            ; Set default radix to binary
```

### 4.3.2 Packed Binary Coded Decimal Constants

When an integer constant is used with the **DT** directive, the number is interpreted by default as a packed binary coded decimal number. You can use the **D** radix specifier to override the default and initialize 10-byte integers as binary-format integers.

The syntax for specifying binary coded decimals is exactly the same as for other integers. However, **MASM** encodes binary coded decimals in a completely different way. See Section 6.2.1.2, “Defining Binary Coded Decimal Variables,” for complete information on storage of binary coded decimals.

■ **Examples**

```
positive  DT      1234567890 ; Encoded as 00000000001234567890h
negative  DT     -1234567890 ; Encoded as 80000000001234567890h
```

### 4.3.3 Real-Number Constants

A real number is a number consisting of an integer part, a fractional part, and an exponent. Real numbers are usually represented in decimal format.

#### ■ Syntax

`[[+ | -] integer.fraction[E[+ | -]exponent]]`

The *integer* and *fraction* parts combine to form the value of the number. This value is stored internally as a unit and is called the mantissa. It may be signed. The optional *exponent* follows the exponent indicator (**E**). It represents the magnitude of the value, and is stored internally as a unit. If no *exponent* is given, 1 is assumed. If an exponent is given, it may be signed.

During assembly, **MASM** converts real-number constants given in the decimal format to a binary format. The sign, exponent, and mantissa of the real number are encoded as bit fields within the number. See Section 6.3.1.5, “Real-Number Variables,” for an explanation of how real numbers are encoded.

You can specify the encoded format directly using hexadecimal digits (0–9 or A–F). The number must begin with a decimal digit (0–9) and cannot be signed. It must be followed by the real-number designator (**R**). This designator is used the same as a radix designator except it specifies that the given hexadecimal number should be interpreted as a real number.

Real numbers can only be used to initialize variables with the **DD**, **DQ**, and **DT** directives. They cannot be used in expressions. The maximum number of digits in the number and the maximum range of exponent values depend on the directive. The number of digits for encoded numbers used with **DD**, **DQ**, and **DT** must be 8, 16, and 20 digits, respectively. (If a leading 0 is supplied, the number must be 9, 17, or 21 digits.) See Section 6.3.1.5, “Real-Number Variables,” for an explanation of how real numbers are encoded.

---

#### Note

Real numbers will be encoded differently depending upon whether you use the **.MSFLOAT** directive. By default, real numbers are encoded in the IEEE format. This is a change from previous versions, which assembled real numbers by default in the Microsoft Binary format. The **.MSFLOAT** directive overrides the default and specifies Microsoft Binary format. See Section 6.3.1.5, “Real-Number Variables,” for a description of these formats.

---

## ■ Example

```

; Real numbers
shrt      DD      25.23
long      DQ      2.523E1
ten_byte  DT      2523.OE-2

; Assumes .MSFLOAT
mbshort   DD      81000000r      ; 1.0 as Microsoft Binary short
mblong    DQ      8100000000000000r ; 1.0 as Microsoft Binary long

; Assumes default IEEE format
ieeeshort DD      3F800000r      ; 1.0 as IEEE short
ieeelong  DQ      3FF0000000000000r ; 1.0 as IEEE long

; The same regardless of processor directives
temporary DT      3FFF8000000000000000r ; 1.0 as 10-byte temporary real

```

## 4.3.4 String Constants

A string constant consists of one or more ASCII characters enclosed in single or double quotation marks.

### ■ Syntax

```
'characters'
"characters"
```

String constants are case sensitive. A string constant consisting of a single character is sometimes called a character constant.

Single quotation marks must be encoded twice when used literally within string constants that are also enclosed by single quotation marks. Similarly, double quotation marks must be encoded twice when used in string constants that are also enclosed by double quotation marks.

### ■ Examples

```

char      DB      'a'
char2     DB      "a"
message   DB      "This is a message."
warn      DB      'Can't find file.'      ; Can't find file.
warn2     DB      "Can't find file."      ; Can't find file.
string    DB      "This ""value"" not found." ; This "value" not found.
string2   DB      'This "value" not found.' ; This "value" not found.

```

## 4.4 Defining Default Assembly Behavior

Since the assembler processes sequentially, any directives that define the behavior of the assembler for sections of code or for the entire source file must come before the sections affected by the directive.

There are three types of directives that may define behavior for the assembly:

1. The **.MODEL** directive defines the memory model.
2. Processor directives define the processor and coprocessor.
3. The **.MSFLOAT** directive and the coprocessor directives define how floating-point variables are encoded.

These directives are optional. If you do not use them, **MASM** makes default assumptions. However, if you do use them, you must put them before any statements that will be affected by them.

The **.MSFLOAT** and **.MODEL** directives affect the entire assembly and can only occur once in the source file. Normally they should be placed at the beginning of the source file.

The **.MODEL** directive is part of the new system of simplified segment directives implemented in Version 5.0. It is explained in Section 5.1.3, “Defining the Memory Model.”

The **.MSFLOAT** directive disables all coprocessor instructions and specifies that initialized real-number variables be encoded in the Microsoft Binary format. Without this directive, initialized real-number variables are encoded in the IEEE format. This is a change from previous versions of the assembler, which used Microsoft Binary format by default and required a coprocessor directive or the **/R** option to specify IEEE format.

**.MSFLOAT** must be used for programs that require real-number data in the Microsoft Binary format. Section 6.3.1.5, “Real-Number Variables,” describes real-number data formats and the factors to consider in choosing a format.

Processor and coprocessor directives define the instruction set that is recognized by **MASM**. They are listed and explained below:

Directive	Description
<b>.8086</b>	The <b>.8086</b> directive enables assembly of instructions for the 8086 and 8088 processors and the 8087 coprocessor. It disables assembly of the instructions unique to the 80186, 80286, and 80386 processors.

This is the default mode and is used if no instruction set directive is specified. Using the default instruction set ensures that your program can be used on all 8086-family processors. However, if you choose this directive, your program will not take advantage of the more powerful instructions available on more advanced processors.

**.186**

The **.186** directive enables assembly of the 8086 processor instructions, 8087 coprocessor instructions, and the additional instructions for the 80186 processor.

**.286**

The **.286** directive enables assembly of the 8086 instructions plus the additional nonprivileged instructions of the 80286 processor. It also enables 80287 coprocessor instructions. If privileged instructions were previously enabled, the **.286** directive disables them.

This directive should be used for programs that will be executed only by an 80186, 80286, or 80386 processor. For compatibility with previous versions of **MASM**, the **.286C** directive is also available. It is equivalent to the **.286** directive.

**.286P**

This directive is equivalent to the **.286** directive except that it also enables the privileged instructions of the 80286 processor. This does not mean that the directive is required if the program will run in protected mode; it only means that the directive is required if the program uses the instructions that initiate and manage privileged-mode processes. These instructions (see Section 20.3, "Controlling Protected Mode Processes") are normally used only by systems programmers.

**.386**

The **.386** directive enables assembly of the 8086 and the nonprivileged instructions of the 80286 and 80386 processors. It also enables 80387 coprocessor instructions. If privileged instructions were previously enabled, this directive disables them.

This directive should be used for programs that will be executed only by an 80386 processor.

**.386P**

This directive is equivalent to the **.386** directive except that it also enables the privileged instructions of the 80386 processor.

**.8087** The **.8087** directive enables assembly of instructions for the 8087 math coprocessor and disables assembly of instructions unique to the 80287 coprocessor. It also specifies the IEEE format for encoding floating-point variables.

This is the default mode and is used if no coprocessor directive is specified. This directive should be used for programs that must run with either the 8087, 80287, or 80387 coprocessors.

**.287** The **.287** directive enables assembly of instructions for the 8087 floating-point coprocessor and the additional instructions for the 80287. It also specifies the IEEE format for encoding floating-point variables.

Coprocessor instructions are optimized if you use this directive rather than the **.8087** directive. Therefore, you should use it if you know your program will never need to run under an 8087 processor. See Section 19.3, "Coordinating Memory Access," for an explanation.

**.387** The **.387** directive enables assembly of instructions for the 8087 and 80287 floating-point coprocessors and the additional instructions and addressing modes for the 80387. It also specifies the IEEE format for encoding floating-point variables.

If you do not specify any processor directives, **MASM** uses the following defaults:

- 8086/8088 processor instruction set
- 8087 coprocessor instruction set
- IEEE format for floating-point variables

Normally the processor and coprocessor directives can be used at the start of the source file to define the instruction sets for the entire assembly. However, it is possible to use different processor directives at different points in the source file to change assumptions for a section of code. For instance, you might have processor-specific code in different parts of the same source file. You can also turn privileged instructions on and off or allow unusual combinations of the processor and coprocessor.

There are two limitations on changing the processor or coprocessor:

1. The directives must be given outside segments. You must end the current segment, give the processor directive, and then open

another segment. See Section 5.1.5, "Using Predefined Equates," for an example of changing the processor directives with simplified segment directives.

2. You can specify a lower-level coprocessor with a higher-level coprocessor, but an error message will be generated if you try to specify a lower-level processor with a higher-level coprocessor.

The coprocessor directives have the opposite effect of the **.MSFLOAT** directive. **.MSFLOAT** turns off coprocessor instruction sets and enables the Microsoft Binary format for floating-point variables. Any coprocessor instruction turns on the specified coprocessor instruction set and enables IEEE format for floating-point variables.

### ■ Examples

```
; .MSFLOAT affects the whole source file
      .MSFLOAT
      .8087                ; Ignored

; Legal - use 80386 and 80287
      .386
      .287

; Illegal - can't use 8086 with 80287
      .8086
      .287

; Turn privileged mode on and off
      .286P
      .
      .
      .286
```

## 4.5 Ending a Source File

Source files are always terminated with the **END** directive. This directive has two purposes: it marks the end of the source file, and it can indicate the address where execution begins when the program is loaded.

## ■ Syntax

**END** [*startaddress*]

Any statements following the **END** directive are ignored by the assembler. For instance, you can put comments after the **END** directive without using comment specifiers (;) or the **COMMENT** directive.

The *startaddress* is a label or expression identifying the address where you want execution to begin when the program is loaded. Specifying a start address is discussed in detail in Section 5.5.1, “Initializing the CS and IP Registers.”



# CHAPTER

# 5

## DEFINING SEGMENT STRUCTURE

5.1	Simplified Segment Definitions .....	83
5.1.1	Understanding Memory Models.....	84
5.1.2	Specifying DOS Segment Order .....	85
5.1.3	Defining the Memory Model.....	87
5.1.4	Defining Simplified Segments.....	88
5.1.5	Using Predefined Equates .....	90
5.1.6	Simplified Segment Defaults .....	92
5.1.7	Default Segment Names .....	93
5.2	Full Segment Definitions.....	95
5.2.1	Setting the Segment-Order Method .....	96
5.2.2	Defining Full Segments .....	97
5.2.2.1	Controlling Alignment with Align Type.....	98
5.2.2.2	Setting Segment Word Size with Use Type .....	98
5.2.2.3	Defining Segment Combinations with Combine Type .....	100
5.2.2.4	Controlling Segment Structure with Class Type .....	104
5.3	Defining Segment Groups.....	106
5.4	Associating Segments with Registers.....	109
5.5	Initializing Segment Registers.....	111
5.5.1	Initializing the CS and IP Registers.....	111
5.5.2	Initializing the DS Register.....	112
5.5.3	Initializing the SS and SP Registers.....	114
5.5.4	Initializing the ES Register .....	115
5.6	Nesting Segments.....	115



Segments are a fundamental part of assembly-language programming for the 8086-family of processors. They are related to the segmented architecture used by Intel® for its 16-bit and 32-bit microprocessors. This architecture is explained in more detail in Chapter 13, “Understanding 8086-Family Processors.”

A segment is a collection of instructions or data whose addresses are all relative to the same segment register. Segments can be defined by using simplified segment directives or full segment definitions.

In most cases, simplified segment definitions are a better choice. They are easier to use and more consistent, yet you seldom sacrifice any functionality by using them. Simplified segment directives automatically define the segment structure required when combining assembler modules with modules prepared with Microsoft high-level languages.

Although more difficult to use, full segment definitions give more complete control over segments. A few complex programs may require full segment definitions in order to get unusual segment orders and types. In previous versions of **MASM**, full segment definitions are the only way to define segments, so you may need to use them to maintain existing source code.

This chapter describes both methods. If you choose to use simplified segment directives, you will probably not need to read about full segment definitions.

## 5.1 Simplified Segment Definitions

Version 5.0 of **MASM** implements a new simplified system for declaring segments. By default, the simplified segment directives use the segment names and conventions followed by Microsoft high-level languages. If you are willing to accept these conventions, the more difficult aspects of segment definition are handled automatically.

If you are writing stand-alone assembler programs in which segment names, order, and other definition factors are not crucial, the simplified segment directives make programming easier. The Microsoft conventions are flexible enough to work for most kinds of programs. If you are new to assembly-language programming, you should use the simplified segment directives for your first programs.

If you are writing assembler routines to be linked with Microsoft high-level languages, the simplified segment directives ensure against mistakes that would make your modules incompatible. The names are automatically defined consistently and correctly.

When you use simplified segment directives, **ASSUME** and **GROUP** statements that are consistent with Microsoft conventions are generated

automatically. You can learn more about the **ASSUME** and **GROUP** directives in Sections 5.3 and 5.4. However, for most programs you do not need to understand these directives. You simply use the simplified segment directives in the format shown in the examples.

---

*Note*

The simplified segment directives cannot be used for programs written in the **.COM** format. You must specifically define the single segment required for this format. See Section 1.4.1, "Writing and Editing Assembly-Language Source Code," for more information.

---

### 5.1.1 Understanding Memory Models

To use simplified segment directives, you must declare a memory model for your program. The memory model specifies the default size of data and code used in a program.

Microsoft high-level languages require that each program have a default size (or memory model). Any assembly-language routine called from a high-level-language program should have the same memory model as the calling program. See the documentation for your language to find out what memory models it can use.

The most commonly used memory models are described below:

<b>Model</b>	<b>Description</b>
Tiny	All data and code fits in a single segment. Tiny model programs must be written in the <b>.COM</b> format. Microsoft languages do not support this model. Some compilers from other companies support tiny model either as an option or as a requirement. You cannot use simplified segment directives for tiny-model programs.
Small	All data fits within a single 64K segment, and all code fits within a 64K segment. Therefore, all code and data can be accessed as near. This is the most common model for stand-alone assembler programs. C is the only Microsoft language that supports this model.
Medium	All data fits within a single 64K segment, but code may be greater than 64K. Therefore, data is near, but code is far. Most recent versions of Microsoft languages support this model.
Compact	All code fits within a single 64K segment, but the total amount of data may be greater than 64K (although no

	array can be larger than 64K). Therefore, code is near, but data is far. C is the only Microsoft language that supports this model.
Large	Both code and data may be greater than 64K (although no array can be larger than 64K). Therefore, both code and data are far. All Microsoft languages support this model.
Huge	Both code and data may be greater than 64K. In addition, data arrays may be larger than 64k. Both code and data are far, and pointers to elements within an array must also be far. Most recent versions of Microsoft languages support this model. Segments are the same for large and huge models.

Stand-alone assembler programs can have any model. Small model is adequate for most programs written entirely in assembly language. Since near data or code can be accessed more quickly, the smallest memory model that can accommodate your code and data is usually the most efficient.

Mixed-model programs use the default size for most code and data but override the default for particular data items. Stand-alone assembler programs can be written as mixed-model programs by making specific procedures or variables near or far. Some Microsoft high-level languages have **NEAR**, **FAR**, and **HUGE** keywords that enable you to override the default size of individual data or code items.

## 5.1.2 Specifying DOS Segment Order

The **DOSSEG** directive specifies that segments be ordered according to the DOS segment-order convention. This is the convention used by Microsoft high-level-language compilers.

### ■ Syntax

#### **DOSSEG**

Using the **DOSSEG** directive enables you to maintain a consistent, logical segment order without actually defining segments in that order in your source file. Without this directive, the final segment order of the executable file depends on a variety of factors, such as segment order, class name, and order of linking. These factors are described in Section 5.2, "Full Segment Definitions."

Since segment order is not crucial to the proper functioning of most stand-alone assembler programs, you can simply use the **DOSSEG** directive and ignore the whole issue of segment order.

*Note*

Using the **DOSSEG** directive (or the **/DOSSEG** linker option) has two side effects. The linker generates symbols called **\_end** and **\_edata**. You should not use these names in programs that contain the **DOSSEG** directive. Also, the linker increases the offset of the first byte of the code segment by 16 bytes in small and compact models. This is to give proper alignment to executable files created with Microsoft compilers.

---

If you want to use the DOS segment-order convention in stand-alone assembler programs, you should use the **DOSSEG** argument in the main module. Modules called from the main module need not use the **DOSSEG** directive.

You do not need to use the **DOSSEG** directive for modules called from Microsoft high-level languages, since the compiler already defines DOS segment order.

Under the DOS segment-order convention, segments have the following order:

1. All segment names having the class name **'CODE'**
2. Any segments that do not have class name **'CODE'** and are not part of the group **DGROUP**
3. Segments that are part of **DGROUP**, in the following order:
  - a. Any segments of class **BEGDATA** (this class name is reserved for Microsoft use)
  - b. Any segments not of class **BEGDATA**, **BSS**, or **STACK**
  - c. Segments of class **BSS**
  - d. Segments of class **STACK**

Using the **DOSSEG** directive has the same effect as using the **/DOSSEG** linker option.

The directive works by writing to the comment record of the object file. The Intel title for this record is **COMENT**. If the linker detects a certain sequence of bytes in this record, it automatically puts segments in the DOS order.

### 5.1.3 Defining the Memory Model

The **.MODEL** directive is used to initialize the memory model. This directive should be used early in the source code before any other segment directive.

#### ■ Syntax

**.MODEL** *memorymodel*

The *memorymodel* can be **SMALL**, **MEDIUM**, **COMPACT**, **LARGE**, or **HUGE**. Segments are defined the same for large and huge models, but the **@datasize** equate (explained in Section 5.1.5, “Using Predefined Equates”) is different.

If you are writing an assembler routine for a high-level language, the *memorymodel* should match the memory model used by the compiler or interpreter.

If you are writing a stand-alone assembler program, you can use any model. Section 5.1.1 describes each memory model. Small model is the best choice for most stand-alone assembler programs.

---

#### Note

You must use the **.MODEL** directive before defining any segment. If one of the other simplified segment directives (such as **.CODE** or **.DATA**) is given before the **.MODEL** directive, an error is generated.

---

#### ■ Example 1

```
DOSSEG  
.MODEL small
```

This statement defines default segments for small-model programs and creates the **ASSUME** and **GROUP** statements used by small-model programs. The segments are automatically ordered according to the Microsoft convention. The example statements might be used at the start of the main (or only) module of a stand-alone assembler program.

## ■ Example 2

```
.MODEL LARGE
```

This statement defines default segments for large-model programs and creates the **ASSUME** and **GROUP** statements used by large-model programs. It does not automatically order segments according to the Microsoft convention. The example statement might be used at the start of an assembly module that would be called from a large-model C, BASIC, FORTRAN, or Pascal program.

## ■ 80386 Only

If you use the **.386** directive before the **.MODEL** directive, the segment definitions defines 32-bit segments. If you want to enable the 80386 processor with 16-bit segments, you should give the **.386** directive after the **.MODEL** directive.

## 5.1.4 Defining Simplified Segments

The **.CODE**, **.DATA**, **.DATA?**, **.FARDATA**, **.FARDATA?**, **.CONST**, and **.STACK** directives indicate the start of a segment. They also end any open segment definition used earlier in the source code.

### ■ Syntax

<b>.STACK</b> [ <i>size</i> ]	Stack segment
<b>.CODE</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Code segment
<b>.DATA</b>	Initialized near-data segment
<b>.DATA?</b>	Uninitialized near-data segment
<b>.FARDATA</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Initialized far-data segment
<b>.FARDATA?</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Uninitialized far-data segment
<b>.CONST</b>	Constant-data segment

For segments that take an optional *name*, a default name is used if none is specified. See Section 5.1.7 for information on default segment names.

Each new segment directive ends the previous segment. The **END** directive closes the last open segment in the source file.

The *size* argument of the **.STACK** directive is the number of bytes to be declared in the stack. If no *size* is given, the segment is defined with a default size of one kilobyte.

Stand-alone assembler programs in the **.EXE** format should define a stack for the main (or only) module. Stacks are defined by the compiler or interpreter for modules linked with a main module from a high-level language.

Code should be placed in a segment initialized with the **.CODE** directive, regardless of the memory model. Normally, only one code segment is defined in a source module. If you put multiple code segments in one source file, you must specify *name* to distinguish the segments. The *name* can only be specified for models allowing multiple code segments (medium and large). *Name* will be ignored if given with small or compact models.

Uninitialized data is any variable declared by using the indeterminate symbol (?) and the **DUP** operator. When declaring data for modules that will be used with a Microsoft high-level language, you should follow the convention of using **.DATA** or **.FARDATA** for initialized data and **.DATA?** or **.FARDATA?** for uninitialized data. For stand-alone assembler programs, using the **.DATA?** and **.FARDATA?** directives is optional. You can put uninitialized data in any data segment.

Constant data is data that must be declared in a data segment but is not subject to change at run time. Use of this segment is optional for stand-alone assembler programs. If you are writing assembler routines to be called from a high-level language, you can use the **.CONST** directive to declare strings, real numbers, and other constant data that must be allocated as data.

Data in segments defined with the **.STACK**, **.CONST**, **.DATA** or **.DATA?** directives is placed in a group called **DGROUP**. Data in segments defined with the **.FARDATA** or **.FARDATA?** directives is not placed in any group. See Section 5.3 for more information on segment groups. When initializing the **DS** register to access data in a group-associated segment, the value of **DGROUP** should be loaded into **DS**. See Section 5.5.2 for information on initializing data segments.

### ■ Example 1

```

DOSSEG
.MODEL    SMALL
.STACK   100h
.DATA
ivariable DB    5
iarray   DW    50 DUP (5)
string   DB    "This is a string"
uarray   DW    50 DUP (?)
        EXTRN  xvariable:WORD
.CODE
start:   mov     ax,DGROUP
        mov     ds,ax
        EXTRN  xprocedure:NEAR
        call    xprocedure
        .
        .
        END     start

```

This code uses simplified segment directives for a small-model, stand-alone assembler program. Notice that initialized data, uninitialized data, and a string constant are all defined in the same data segment. See Section 5.1.7, "Default Segment Names," for an equivalent version that uses full segment definitions.

### ■ Example 2

```

                .MODEL   LARGE
                .FARDATA?
fuarray        DW      10 DUP (?)           ; Far uninitialized data
                .CONST
string         DB      "This is a string" ; String constant
                .DATA
niarray        DB      100 DUP (5)         ; Near initialized data
                .FARDATA
fiarray        EXTR   xvariable:FAR
                DW      100 DUP (10)       ; Far initialized data
                .CODE   ACTION
task          EXTR   xprocedure:PROC
                PROC
                .
                .
                .
                ret
task          ENDP
                END
    
```

This example uses simplified segment directives to create a module that might be called from a large-model, high-level-language program. Notice that different types of data are put in different segments to conform to Microsoft compiler conventions. See Section 5.1.7, "Default Segment Names," for an equivalent version using full segment definitions.

## 5.1.5 Using Predefined Equates

Several equates are predefined for you. You can use the equate names at any point in your code to represent the equate values. You should not assign equates having these names. The predefined equates are listed below:

Name	Value
@curseg	This name has the segment name of the current segment. This value may be convenient for <b>ASSUME</b> statements, segment overrides, or other cases in which you need to access the current segment. It can also be used to end a segment, as shown below:

```
@curseg ENDS      ; End current segment
          .286     ; Must be outside segment
          .CODE    ; Restart segment
```

@filename

This value represents the base name of the current source file. For example, if the current source file is `task.asm`, the value of `@filename` is `task`. This value can be used in any name you would like to change if the file name changes. For example, it can be used as a procedure name:

```
@filename PROC
          :
          :
          :
@filename ENDP
```

@codesize  
and  
@datasize

If the `.MODEL` directive has been used, the `@codesize` value is 0 for small and compact models or 1 for medium, large, and huge models. The `@datasize` value is 0 for small and medium models, 1 for compact and large models, and 2 for huge models. These values can be used in conditional-assembly statements:

```
IF      @datasize
les     bx,pointer      ; Load far pointer
mov     ax,es:WORD PTR [bx]
ELSE
mov     bx,WORD PTR pointer ; Load near pointer
mov     ax,WORD PTR [bx]
ENDIF
```

Segment  
equates

For each of the primary segment directives, there is a corresponding equate with the same name, except that the equate starts with an at sign (`@`) but the directive starts with a period. For example, the `@code` equate represents the segment name defined by the `.CODE` directive. Similarly, `@fardata` represents the `.FARDATA` segment name and `@fardata?` represents the `.FARDATA?` segment name. The `@data` equate represents the group name shared by all the near data segments. It can be used to access the segments created by the `.DATA`, `.DATA?`, `.CONST`, and `.STACK` segments.

These equates can be used in `ASSUME` statements and at any other time a segment must be referred to by name, for example:

```
ASSUME es:@fardata ; Assume ES to far data
          ;      (.MODEL handles DS)
mov     ax,@data   ; Initialize near to DS
mov     ds,ax
mov     ax,@fardata ; Initialize far to ES
mov     es,ax
```

*Note*

Although predefined equates are part of the simplified segment system, the `@curseg` and `@filename` equates are also available when using full segment definitions.

---

## 5.1.6 Simplified Segment Defaults

When you use the simplified segment directives, defaults are different in certain situations than they would be if you gave full segment definitions. Defaults that change are listed below:

- If you give full segment definitions, the default size for the **PROC** directive is always **NEAR**. If you use the **.MODEL** directive, the **PROC** directive is associated with the specified memory model: **NEAR** for small and compact models and **FAR** for medium, large, and huge models. See Section 6.1.2, "Procedure Labels," for further discussion of the **PROC** directive.
- If you give full segment definitions, the segment address used as the base when calculating an offset with the **OFFSET** operator is the data segment (the segment associated with the **DS** register). With the simplified segment directives, the base address is the **DGROUP** segment for segments that are associated with a group. This includes segments declared with the **.DATA**, **.DATA?**, and **.STACK** directives, but not segments declared with the **.CODE**, **.FARDATA**, and **.FARDATA?** directives.

For example, assume the variable `test1` was declared in a segment defined with the **.DATA** directive and `test2` was declared in a segment defined with the **.FARDATA** directive. The statement

```
mov    ax,OFFSET test1
```

loads the address of `test1` relative to **DGROUP**. The statement

```
mov    ax,OFFSET test2
```

loads the address of `test2` relative to the segment defined by the **.FARDATA** directive. See Section 5.3 for more information on groups.

## 5.1.7 Default Segment Names

If you use the simplified segment directives by themselves, you do not need to know the names assigned for each segment. However, it is possible to mix full segment definitions with simplified segment definitions. Therefore, some programmers may wish to know the actual names assigned to all segments.

Table 5.1 shows the default segment names created by each directive.

**Table 5.1**  
**Default Segments and Types for Standard Memory Models**

Model	Directive	Name	Align	Combine	Class	Group
Small	.CODE	_TEXT	WORD	PUBLIC	'CODE'	
	.DATA	_DATA	WORD	PUBLIC	'DATA'	DGROUP
	.CONST	CONST	WORD	PUBLIC	'CONST'	DGROUP
	.DATA?	_BSS	WORD	PUBLIC	'BSS'	DGROUP
	.STACK	STACK	PARA	STACK	'STACK'	DGROUP
Medium	.CODE	<i>name_TEXT</i>	WORD	PUBLIC	'CODE'	
	.DATA	_DATA	WORD	PUBLIC	'DATA'	DGROUP
	.CONST	CONST	WORD	PUBLIC	'CONST'	DGROUP
	.DATA?	_BSS	WORD	PUBLIC	'BSS'	DGROUP
	.STACK	STACK	PARA	STACK	'STACK'	DGROUP
Compact	.CODE	_TEXT	WORD	PUBLIC	'CODE'	
	.FARDATA	FAR_DATA	PARA	private	'FAR_DATA'	
	.FARDATA?	FAR_BSS	PARA	private	'FAR_BSS'	
	.DATA	_DATA	WORD	PUBLIC	'DATA'	DGROUP
	.CONST	CONST	WORD	PUBLIC	'CONST'	DGROUP
	.DATA?	_BSS	WORD	PUBLIC	'BSS'	DGROUP
	.STACK	STACK	PARA	STACK	'STACK'	DGROUP
Large or huge	.CODE	<i>name_TEXT</i>	WORD	PUBLIC	'CODE'	
	.FARDATA	FAR_DATA	PARA	private	'FAR_DATA'	
	.FARDATA?	FAR_BSS	PARA	private	'FAR_BSS'	
	.DATA	_DATA	WORD	PUBLIC	'DATA'	DGROUP
	.CONST	CONST	WORD	PUBLIC	'CONST'	DGROUP
	.DATA?	_BSS	WORD	PUBLIC	'BSS'	DGROUP
	.STACK	STACK	PARA	STACK	'STACK'	DGROUP

The *name* used as part of far-code segment names is the file name of the module. The default name associated with the **.CODE** directive can be overridden in medium and large models. The default names for the **.FARDATA** and **.FARDATA?** directives can always be overridden.

The segment and group table at the end of listings always shows the actual segment names. However, the group and assume statements generated by the **.MODEL** directive are not shown in listing files. For a program that uses all possible segments, group statements equivalent to the following would be generated:

```
DGROUP GROUP _DATA,CONST,_BSS,STACK
```

For small and compact models, the following would be generated:

```
ASSUME cs:_TEXT,ds:DGROUP,ss:DGROUP
```

For medium, large, and huge models the following statement is given:

```
ASSUME cs:name_TEXT,ds:DGROUP,ss:DGROUP
```

### 80386 Only

If the **.386** directive is used, the default align type for all segments is **DWORD**.

### ■ Example 1

```

                                EXTRN  xvariable:WORD
                                EXTRN  xprocedure:NEAR
DGROUP                          GROUP   _DATA,_BSS
                                ASSUME  cs:_TEXT,ds:DGROUP,ss:DGROUP
_TEXT                            SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'CODE'
start:                          mov     ax,DGROUP
                                mov     ds,ax
                                .
                                .
_TEXT                            ENDS
_DATA                          SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'DATA'
ivariable                       DB      5
iarray                          DW      50 DUP (5)
string                          DB      "This is a string"
uarray                          DW      50 DUP (?)
_DATA                          ENDS
STACK                          SEGMENT PARA STACK 'STACK'
                                DB      100h DUP (?)
STACK                          ENDS
                                END     start

```

This example is equivalent to Example 1 in Section 5.1.4, “Defining Simplified Segments.” Notice that the segment order must be different in this version to achieve the segment order specified by using the **DOSSEG** directive in the first example. The external variables are declared at the start of the source code in this example. With simplified segment directives, they can be declared in the segment in which they are used.

## ■ Example 2

```

DGROUP          GROUP    _DATA, CONST, STACK
                ASSUME   cs:TASK_TEXT, ds:FAR_DATA, ss:STACK
                EXTRN   xprocedure:FAR
                EXTR    xvariable:FAR
FAR_BSS         SEGMENT  PARA 'FAR_DATA'
fuarray        DW       10 DUP (?)           ; Far uninitialized data
FAR_BSS        ENDS
CONST          SEGMENT  WORD PUBLIC 'CONST'
string         DB       "This is a string" ; String constant
CONST         ENDS
_DATA         SEGMENT  WORD PUBLIC 'DATA'
niarray       DB       100 DUP (5)         ; Near initialized data
_DATA         ENDS
FAR_DATA      SEGMENT  WORD 'FAR_DATA'
fiarray       DW       100 DUP (10)
FAR_DATA      ENDS
TASK_TEXT     SEGMENT  WORD PUBLIC 'CODE'
task          PROC    FAR
                .
                .
                .
                ret
task          ENDP
TASK_TEXT     ENDS
END

```

This example is equivalent to Example 2 in Section 5.1.4, “Defining Simplified Segments.” Notice that the segment order is the same in both versions. The segment order shown here is written to the object file, but it is different in the executable file. The segment order specified by the compiler (the DOS segment order) overrides the segment order in the module object file.

## 5.2 Full Segment Definitions

If you need complete control over segments, you may want to give complete segment definitions. The section below explains all aspects of segment definitions, including how to order segments and how to define all the segment types.

## 5.2.1 Setting the Segment-Order Method

The order in which **MASM** writes segments to the object file can be either sequential or alphabetical. If the sequential method is specified, segments are written in the order in which they appear in the source code. If the alphabetical method is specified, segments are written in the alphabetical order of their segment names.

The default is sequential. If no segment-order directive or option is given, segments are ordered sequentially. The segment-order method is only one factor in determining the final order of segments in memory. The **DOSSEG** directive (see Section 5.1.2, "Specifying DOS Segment Order") and class type (see Section 5.2.2.4, "Controlling Segment Structure with Class Type") can also affect segment order.

The ordering method can be set by using the **.ALPHA** or **.SEQ** directive in the source code. The method can also be set using the **/S** (sequential) or **/A** (alphabetical) assembler options (see Section 2.4.1, "Specifying the Segment-Order Method"). The directives have precedence over the options. For example, if the source code contains the **.ALPHA** directive, but the **/S** option is given on the command line, the segments are ordered alphabetically.

Changing the segment order is an advanced technique. In most cases you can simply leave the default sequential order in effect. If you are linking with high-level-language modules, the compiler automatically sets the segment order. The **DOSSEG** directive also overrides any segment-order directives or options.

---

### Note

Some previous versions of the IBM Macro Assembler ordered segments alphabetically by default. If you have trouble assembling and linking source-code listings from books or magazines, try using the **/A** option. Listings written for previous IBM versions of the assembler may not work without this option.

---

### ■ Example 1

```
.SEQ
DATA      SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'DATA'
DATA      ENDS
CODE      SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'CODE'
CODE      ENDS
```

## ■ Example 2

```
.ALPHA
DATA      SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'DATA'
DATA      ENDS
CODE      SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'CODE'
CODE      ENDS
```

In Example 1, the `DATA` segment is written to the object file first because it appears first in the source code. In Example 2, the `CODE` segment is written to the object file first because its name comes first alphabetically.

## 5.2.2 Defining Full Segments

The beginning of a program segment is defined with the `SEGMENT` directive, and the end of the segment is defined with the `ENDS` directive.

### ■ Syntax

```
name SEGMENT [align] [combine] [use] ['class']  
statements  
name ENDS
```

The *name* defines the name of the segment. This name can be unique or it can be the same name given to other segments in the program. Segments with identical names are treated as the same segment. For example, if it is convenient to put different portions of a single segment in different source modules, the segment is given the same name in both modules.

The optional *align*, *combine*, *use*, and *'class'*

types give the linker and the assembler instructions on how to set up and combine segments. Types should be specified in order, but it is not necessary to enter all types, or any type, for a given segment.

Defining segment types is an advanced technique. Beginning assembly-language programmers might try using the simplified segment directives discussed in Section 5.1.

---

### Note

Don't confuse the `PAGE` align type and the `PUBLIC` combine type with the `PAGE` and `PUBLIC` directives. The distinction should be clear from context since the align and combine types are only used on the same line as the `SEGMENT` directive.

Segment types have no effect on programs prepared in the **.COM** format. Since there is only one segment, there is no need to specify how segments are combined or ordered.

---

### 5.2.2.1 Controlling Alignment with Align Type

The optional *align* type defines the range of memory addresses from which a starting address for the segment can be selected. The *align* type can be any one of the following:

<b>Align Type</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<b>BYTE</b>	Uses the next available byte address.
<b>WORD</b>	Uses the next available word address (2 bytes per word).
<b>DWORD</b>	Uses the next available doubleword address (4 bytes per doubleword); the <b>DWORD</b> align type is normally used in 32-bit segments with the 80386.
<b>PARA</b>	Uses the next available paragraph address (16 bytes per paragraph).
<b>PAGE</b>	Uses the next available page address (256 bytes per page).

If no *align* type is given, **PARA** is used by default (except with the 80386).

The linker uses the alignment information to determine the relative start address for each segment. DOS uses the information to calculate the actual start address when the program is loaded.

Align types are illustrated in Figure 5.1, in Section 5.2.2.3, "Defining Segment Combinations with Combine Type."

### 5.2.2.2 Setting Segment Word Size with Use Type

#### ■ 80386 Only

The *use* type specifies the segment word size on the 80386 processor. Segment word size is the default operand and address size of a segment.

The *use* type can be **USE16** or **USE32**. These types are only relevant if you have enabled 80386 instructions and addressing modes with the **.386** directive. The assembler generates an error if you specify *use type* when the 80386 processor is not enabled.

With the 80286 and other 16-bit processors, the segment word size is always 16 bits. A 16-bit segment can contain up to 65,536 (64K) bytes. However, the 80386 is capable of using either 16-bit or 32-bit segments. A 32-bit segment can contain up to 4,294,967,296 bytes (4 gigabytes). Although **MASM** permits you to define 4 gigabyte segments in 32-bit segments, current versions of DOS limit segment size to 64K.

If you do not specify a *use* type, the segment word size is 32 bits by default when the **.386** directive is used.

The effect of addressing modes is changed by the word size you specify for the code segment. See Section 14.3.3, "80386 Indirect Memory Operands," for more information on 80386 addressing modes. The meaning of the **WORD** and **DWORD** type specifiers is not changed by the *use* type. **WORD** always indicates 16 bits and **DWORD** always indicates 32 bits regardless of the current segment word size.

---

*Note*

Although the assembler allows you to use 16-bit and 32-bit segments in the same program, you should normally make all segments the same size. Mixing segment sizes is an advanced technique that can have unexpected side effects. For the most part, it is used only by systems programmers.

---

**■ Example 1**

```
; 16-bit segment
      .386
_DATA      SEGMENT DWORD USE16 PUBLIC 'DATA'
      .
      .
_DATA      ENDS
```

**■ Example 2**

```
; 32-bit segment
_TEXT      SEGMENT DWORD USE32 PUBLIC 'CODE'
      .
      .
_TEXT      ENDS
```

### 5.2.2.3 Defining Segment Combinations with Combine Type

The optional *combine* type defines how to combine segments having the same name. The combine type can be any one of the following:

<b>Combine Type</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<b>PUBLIC</b>	<p>Concatenates all segments having the same name to form a single, contiguous segment.</p> <p>All instruction and data addresses in the new segment are relative to a single segment register, and all offsets are adjusted to represent the distance from the beginning of the segment.</p>
<b>STACK</b>	<p>Concatenates all segments having the same name to form a single, contiguous segment. This combine type is the same as the <b>PUBLIC</b> combine type, except that all addresses in the new segment are relative to the <b>SS</b> segment register.</p> <p>The stack pointer (<b>SP</b>) register is initialized to the length of the segment. The stack segment of your program should normally use the <b>STACK</b> type, since this automatically initializes the <b>SS</b> register, as described in Section 5.5.3. If you create a stack segment and do not use the <b>STACK</b> type, you must give instructions to initialize the <b>SS</b> and <b>SP</b> registers.</p>
<b>COMMON</b>	<p>Creates overlapping segments by placing the start of all segments having the same name at the same address.</p> <p>The length of the resulting area is the length of the longest segment. All addresses in the segments are relative to the same base address. If variables are initialized in more than one segment having the same name and <b>COMMON</b> type, the most recently initialized data replace any previously initialized data.</p>
<b>MEMORY</b>	<p>Concatenates all segments having the same name to form a single, contiguous segment.</p> <p>The Microsoft Overlay Linker treats <b>MEMORY</b> segments exactly the same as <b>PUBLIC</b> segments. <b>MASM</b> allows you to use <b>MEMORY</b> type even though <b>LINK</b> does not recognize a separate <b>MEMORY</b> type. This feature is compatible with other linkers that</p>

may support a combine type conforming to the Intel definition of **MEMORY** type.

**AT** *address*

Causes all label and variable addresses defined in the segment to be relative to *address*.

The *address* can be any valid expression, but must not contain a forward reference—that is, a reference to a symbol defined later in the source file. An **AT** segment typically contains no code or initialized data. Instead, it represents an address template that can be placed over code or data already in memory, such as a screen buffer or other absolute memory locations defined by hardware. The linker will not generate any code or data for **AT** segments, but existing code or data can be accessed by name if it is given a label in an **AT** segment. Section 6.4, “Setting the Location Counter,” shows an example of a segment with **AT** combine type.

The **AT** combine type has no meaning in protected-mode programs, since the segment represents a movable selector rather than a physical address. Real-mode programs that use **AT** segments must be modified before they can be used in protected mode. The planned multi-tasking version of DOS, OS/2, will provide DOS calls for doing tasks that are often done by manipulating memory directly under current versions of DOS.

If no *combine* type is given, the segment has private type. Segments having the same name are not combined. Instead, each segment receives its own physical segment when loaded into memory.

---

*Notes*

Although a given segment name can be used more than once in a source file, each segment definition using that name must have either exactly the same attributes, or attributes that do not conflict. If types are given for an initial segment definition, then subsequent definitions for that segment need not specify any types.

Normally you should provide at least one stack segment (having **STACK** combine type) in a program. If no stack segment is declared, **LINK** displays a warning message. You can ignore this message if you

have a specific reason for not declaring a stack segment. For example, you would not have a separate stack segment in a program in the .COM format.

---

## ■ Example

The following source-code shell illustrates one way in which the *combine* and *align* types can be used. Figure 5.1 shows the way **LINK** would load the sample program into memory.

```
                NAME module_1
ASEG            SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'CODE'
start:         .
                .
                .
ASEG            ENDS
BSEG            SEGMENT WORD COMMON 'DATA'
                .
                .
                .
BSEG            ENDS
BSEG            SEGMENT PARA STACK 'STACK'
                .
                .
                .
CSEG            ENDS
DSEG            SEGMENT AT 0B800H
                .
                .
                .
DSEG            ENDS
                END start

                NAME module_2
ASEG            SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'CODE'
                .
                .
                .
ASEG            ENDS
BSEG            SEGMENT WORD COMMON 'DATA'
                .
                .
                .
BSEG            ENDS
```

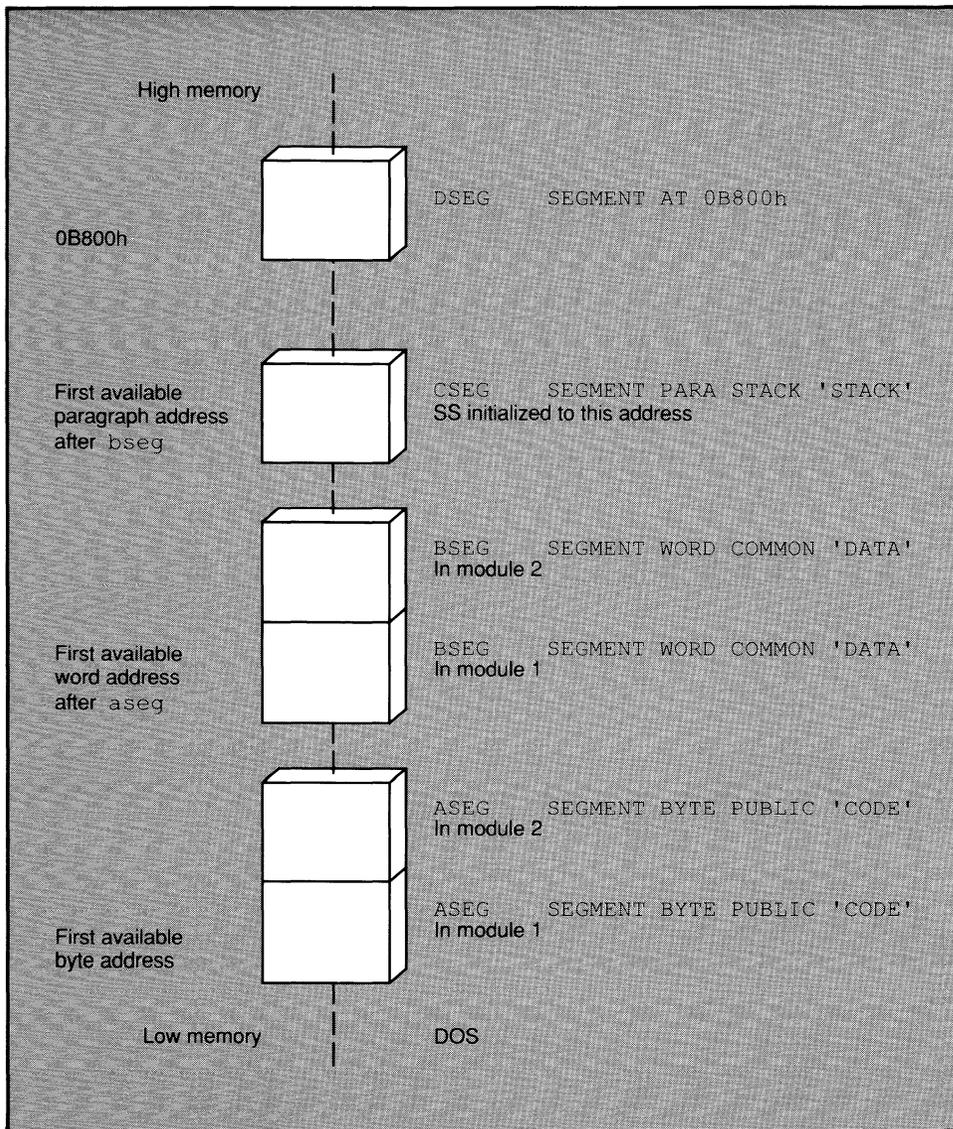


Figure 5.1 Segment Structure with Combine and Align Types

#### 5.2.2.4 Controlling Segment Structure with Class Type

Class type is a means of associating segments that have different names, but similar purposes. It can be used to control segment order and to identify the code segment.

The *class* name must be enclosed in single quotation marks ('). Class names are not case sensitive unless the */ML* or */MX* option is used during assembly.

All segments belong to a class. Segments for which no class name is explicitly stated have the null class name. **LINK** imposes no restriction on the number or size of segments in a class. The total size of all segments in a class can exceed 64K.

---

#### *Note*

The names assigned for class types of segments should not be used for other symbol definitions in the source file. For example, if you give a segment the class name 'CONSTANT', you should not give the name `constant` to variables or labels in the source file.

---

The linker expects segments having the class name **CODE** or a class name with the suffix **CODE** to contain program code. You should always assign this class name to segments containing code.

The CodeView debugger also expects code segments to have the class name **CODE**. If you fail to assign a class type to a code segment, or if you give it a class type other than **CODE**, then labels may not be properly aligned for symbolic debugging.

Class type is one of two factors that control the final order of segments in an executable file. The other factor is the order of the segments in the source file (with the */S* option or the **.SEQ** directive) or the alphabetical order of segments (with the */A* option or the **.ALPHA** directive).

These factors control different internal behavior, but both affect final order of segments in the executable file. The sequential or alphabetical order of segments in the source file determines the order in which the assembler writes segments to the object file. The class type can affect the order in which the linker writes segments from object files to the executable file.

Segments having the same class type are loaded into memory together, regardless of their sequential or alphabetical order in the source file.

---

*Note*

The **DOSSEG** directive (see Section 5.1.2, “Specifying DOS Segment Order”) overrides all other factors in determining segment order.

---

■ **Example**

```
A_SEG SEGMENT 'SEG_1'
A_SEG ENDS

B_SEG SEGMENT 'SEG_2'
B_SEG ENDS

C_SEG SEGMENT 'SEG_1'
C_SEG ENDS
```

When **MASM** assembles the preceding program fragment, it writes the segments to the object file in sequential or alphabetical order, depending on whether the **/A** option or the **.ALPHA** directive was used. In the example above, the sequential and alphabetical order are the same, so the order will be **A\_SEG**, **B\_SEG**, **C\_SEG** in either case.

When the linker writes the segments to the executable file, it first checks to see if any segments have the same class type. If they do, it writes them to the executable file together. Thus **A\_SEG** and **C\_SEG** are placed together because they both have class type **'SEG\_1'**. The final order in memory is **A\_SEG**, **C\_SEG**, **B\_SEG**.

Since **LINK** processes modules in the order it receives them on the command line, you may not always be able to easily specify the order you want segments to be loaded. For example, assume your program has four segments that you want loaded in the following order: **\_TEXT**, **\_DATA**, **CONST**, and **STACK**.

The **\_TEXT**, **CONST**, and **STACK** segments are defined in the first module of your program, but the **\_DATA** segment is defined in the second module. **LINK** will not put the segments in the proper order because it first loads the segments encountered in the first module.

You can avoid this problem by starting your program with dummy segment definitions in the order you wish to load your real segments. The dummy segments can either go at the start of the first module, or they can be placed in a separate include file that is called at the start of the first

module. You can then put the actual segment definitions in any order or any module you find convenient.

For example, you might call the following include file at the start of the first module of your program:

```
_TEXT      SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'CODE'
_TEXT     ENDS
_DATA     SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'DATA'
_DATA     ENDS
_CONST    SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'CONST'
_CONST    ENDS
_STACK   SEGMENT PARA STACK 'STACK'
_STACK    ENDS
```

The **DOSSEG** directive may be more convenient for defining segment order if you are willing to accept the **DOS** segment-order conventions.

Once a segment has been defined, you do not need to specify the align, combine, use, and class types on subsequent definitions. For example, if your code defined dummy segments as shown above, you could define an actual data segment with the following statements:

```
_DATA      SEGMENT
           .
           .
           .
_DATA      ENDS
```

## 5.3 Defining Segment Groups

A group is a collection of segments associated with the same starting address. You may wish to use a group if you want several types of data to be organized in separate segments in your source code, but want them all to be accessible from a single, common segment register at run time.

### ■ Syntax

*name* **GROUP** *segment* [,*segment*]...

The *name* is the symbol assigned to the starting address of the group. All labels and variables defined within the segments of the group are relative to the start of the group, rather than to the start of the segments in which they are defined.

The *segment* can be any previously defined segment or a **SEG** expression (see Section 9.2.4.5).



Figure 5.2 shows the order of the example segments in memory. They are loaded in the order in which they appear in the source code (or in alphabetical order if the `.ALPHA` directive or `/A` option is specified).

Since `ASEG` and `CSEG` are declared part of the same group, they have the same base despite their separation in memory. This means that the symbols `asym` and `csym` have offsets from the beginning of the group, which is also the beginning of `ASEG`. The offset of `bsym` is from the beginning of `BSEG`, since it is not part of the group. This sample illustrates the way `LINK` organizes segments in a group. It is not intended as a typical use of a group.

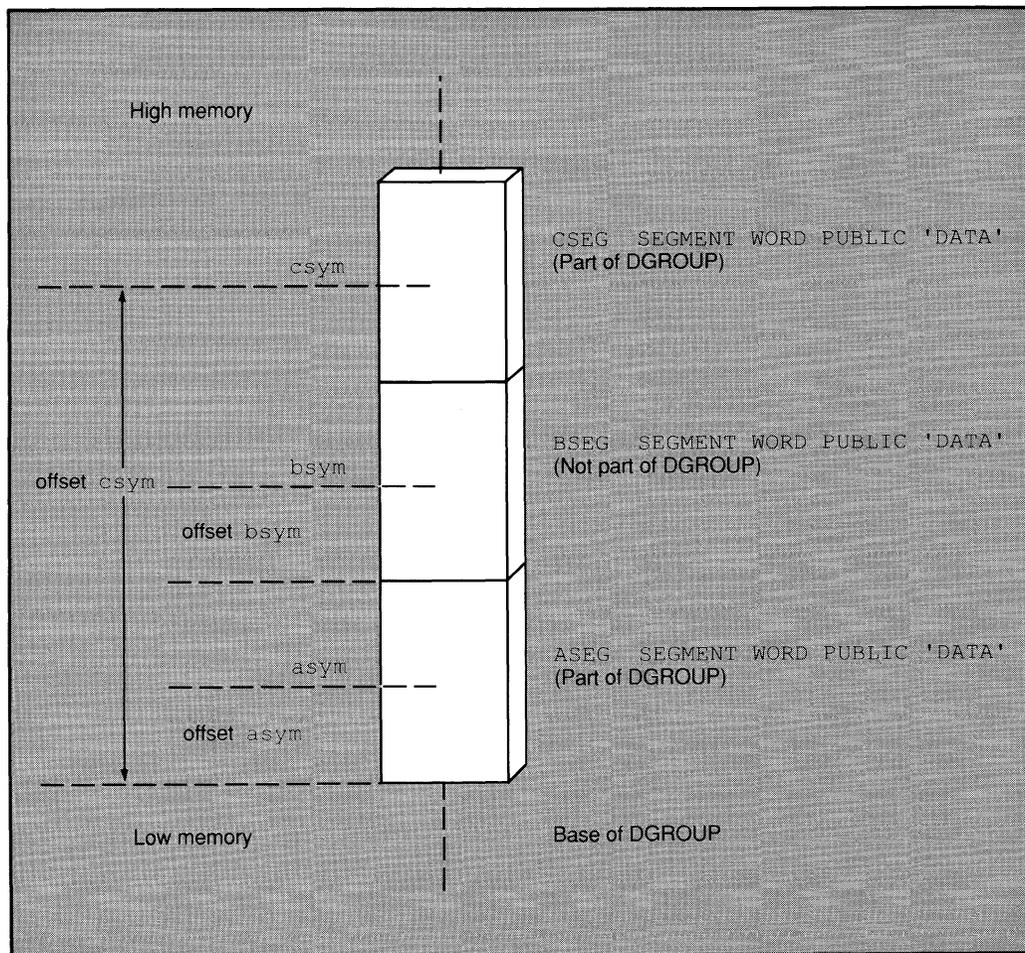


Figure 5.2 Segment Structure with Groups

## 5.4 Associating Segments with Registers

Many instructions assume a default segment. For example, **JMP** instructions assume the segment associated with the **CS** register; **PUSH** and **POP** instructions assume the segment associated with the **SS** register; **MOV** instructions assume the segment associated with the **DS** register.

When the assembler needs to reference an address, it must know what segment the address is in. It does this by using default segment or group addresses assigned with the **ASSUME** directive.

---

### Note

Using the **ASSUME** directive to tell the assembler which segment to associate with a segment register is not the same as telling the processor. The **ASSUME** directive only affects assembly-time assumptions. You may need to use instructions to change run-time assumptions. Initializing segment registers at run time is discussed in Section 5.5.

---

### ■ Syntax

```
ASSUME segmentregister:name [,segmentregister:name]...  
ASSUME segmentregister:NOTHING  
ASSUME NOTHING
```

The *name* must be the name of the segment or group that is to be associated with the *segmentregister*. Subsequent instructions that assume a default register for referencing labels or variables automatically assume that if the default segment is *segmentregister*, then the label or variable is in the *name* segment or group.

The **ASSUME** directive can define a segment for each of the segment registers. The *segmentregister* can be **CS**, **DS**, **ES**, or **SS** (**FS** and **GS** are also available on the 80386). The *name* must be one of the following:

- The name of a segment defined in the source file with the **SEGMENT** directive
- The name of a group defined in the source file with the **GROUP** directive
- The keyword **NOTHING**

- A **SEG** expression (see Section 9.2.4.5, “SEG Operator”)
- A string equate that evaluates to a segment or group name (but not a string equate that evaluates to a **SEG** expression)

The keyword **NOTHING** cancels the current segment selection. For example, the statement **ASSUME NOTHING** cancels all register selections made by previous **ASSUME** statements.

Usually a single **ASSUME** statement defines all four segment registers at the start of the source file. However, you can use the **ASSUME** directive at any point to change segment assumptions.

Using the **ASSUME** directive to change segment assumptions is often equivalent to changing assumptions with the segment-override operator (**:**) (see Section 9.2.3). The segment-override operator is more convenient for one-time overrides, whereas the **ASSUME** directive may be more convenient if previous assumptions must be overridden for a sequence of instructions.

## ■ Example

```

DOSSEG
.MODEL large           ; DS automatically assumed to @data
.STACK 100h
.DATA
d1 DW 7
.FARDATA
d2 DW 9

.CODE
start:  mov ax,@data    ; Initialize near data
        mov ds,ax
        mov ax,@fardata ; Initialize far data
        mov es,ax
        .
        .
; Method 1 for series of instructions that need override
; Use segment override for each statement
        mov ax,es:d2
        .
        .
        mov es:d2,bx

; Method 2 for series of instructions that need override
; Use ASSUME at beginning of series of instructions
        ASSUME es:@fardata
        mov cx,d2
        .
        .
        mov d2,dx
    
```

## 5.5 Initializing Segment Registers

Assembly-language programs must initialize segment values for each segment register before instructions that reference the segment register can be used in the source program.

Initializing segment registers is different from assigning default values for segment registers with the **ASSUME** statement. The **ASSUME** directive tells the assembler what segments to use at assembly time. Initializing segments gives them an initial value that will be used at run time.

Each of the segment registers is initialized in a different way.

### 5.5.1 Initializing the CS and IP Registers

The **CS** and **IP** registers are initialized by specifying a starting address with the **END** directive.

#### ■ Syntax

**END** [*startaddress*]

The *startaddress* is a label or expression identifying the address where you want execution to begin when the program is loaded. Normally a label for the *startaddress* should be placed at the address of the first instruction in the code segment.

The **CS** segment is initialized to the value of *startaddress*. The **IP** register is normally initialized to 0. You can change the initial value of the **IP** register by using the **ORG** directive (see Section 6.4, “Setting the Location Counter”) just before the *startaddress* label. For example, programs in the **.COM** format use **ORG 100h** to initialize the **IP** register to 256 (100 hexadecimal).

If a program consists of a single source module, then the *startaddress* is required for that module. If a program has several modules, all modules must terminate with an **END** directive, but only one of them can define a *startaddress*.

### Warning

One, and only one, module must define a *startaddress*. If you do not specify a *startaddress*, none is assumed. Neither **MASM** nor **LINK** will generate an error message, but your program will probably start execution at the wrong address.

---

### ■ Example

```
; Module 1
start:      .CODE                ; First executable instruction
            .
            EXTRN  task:NEAR
            call  task
            .
            .
            END    start        ; Starting address defined in main module

; Module 2
task       PUBLIC  task
            .CODE
            PROC
            .
            .
task       ENDP
            END                ; No starting address in secondary module
```

If Module 1 and Module 2 are linked into a single program, it is essential that only the calling module define a starting address.

## 5.5.2 Initializing the DS Register

The **DS** register must be initialized to the address of the segment that will be used for data.

The address of the segment or group for the initial data segment must be loaded into the **DS** register. This is done in two statements because a

memory value cannot be loaded directly into a segment register. The segment-setup lines typically appear at the start or very near the start of the code segment.

### ■ Example 1

```

_DATA      SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'DATA'
           .
           .
_DATA      ENDS
_TEXT      SEGMENT BYTE PUBLIC 'CODE'
           ASSUME cs:_TEXT,ds:_DATA
start:     mov     ax,_DATA           ; Load start of data segment
           mov     ds,ax           ; Transfer to DS register
           .
           .
_TEXT      ENDS
           END     start

```

If you are using the Microsoft naming convention and segment order, the address loaded into the **DS** register is not a segment address but the address of **DGROUP**, as shown in Example 2. With simplified segment directives, the address of **DGROUP** is represented by the predefined equate **@data**.

### ■ Example 2

```

           DOSSEG
           .MODEL SMALL
           .DATA
           .
           .
           .CODE
start:     mov     ax,@data          ; Load start of DGROUP (@data)
           mov     ds,ax          ; Transfer to DS register
           .
           .
           END     start

```

### 5.5.3 Initializing the SS and SP Registers

The **SS** register is automatically initialized to the value of the last segment in the source code having combine type **STACK**. The **SP** register is automatically initialized to the size of the stack segment. Thus **SS:SP** initially points to the end of the stack.

If you use a stack segment with combine type **STACK**, initialization of **SS** and **SP** is automatic. The stack is automatically set up in this way with the simplified segment directives.

However, you can initialize or reinitialize the stack segment directly by changing the values of **SS** and **SP**. Since hardware interrupts use the same stack as the program, you should turn off hardware interrupts while changing the stack. Most 8086-family processors do this automatically, but early versions of the 8088 do not.

#### ■ Example

```

.MODEL    small
.STACK   100h           ; Initialize "STACK"
.DATA
.
.
.CODE
start:   mov     ax,@data      ; Load segment location
         mov     ds,ax        ; into DS register
         cli     ; Turn off interrupts
         mov     ss,ax       ; Load same value as DS into SS
         mov     sp,OFFSET STACK ; Give SP new stack size
         sti     ; Turn interrupts back on
.
.

```

This example reinitializes **SS** so that it has the same value as **DS**, and adjusts **SP** to reflect the new stack offset. Microsoft high-level-language compilers do this so that stack variables in near procedures can be accessed relative to either **SS** or **DS**.

## 5.5.4 Initializing the ES Register

The **ES** register is not automatically initialized. If your program uses the **ES** register, you must initialize it by moving the appropriate segment value into the register.

### ■ Example

```

ASSUME es:@fardata      ; Tell the assembler
mov     ax,@fardata     ; Tell the processor
mov     es,ax

```

## 5.6 Nesting Segments

Segments can be nested. When **MASM** encounters a nested segment, it temporarily suspends assembly of the enclosing segment and begins assembly of the nested segment. When the nested segment has been assembled, **MASM** continues assembly of the enclosing segment.

Nesting of segments makes it possible to mix segment definitions in programs that use simplified segment directives for most segment definitions. When a full segment definition is given, the new segment is nested in the simplified segment in which it is defined.

### ■ Example 1

```

; Macro to print message on the screen
; Uses full segment definitions - segments nested

message      MACRO   text
              LOCAL  symbol
              SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'DATA'
symbol       DB      &text
              DB      13,10,"$"
              ENDS
              mov     ah,09h
              mov     dx,OFFSET symbol
              int     21h
              ENDM

              _TEXT  SEGMENT BYTE PUBLIC 'CODE'
              .
              .
              message "Please insert disk"

```

In the example above, a macro called from inside of the code segment (`_TEXT`) allocates a variable within a nested data segment (`_DATA`). This has the effect of allocating more data space on the end of the data segment each time the macro is called. The macro can be used for messages appearing only once in the source code.

## ■ Example 2

```
; Macro to print message on the screen
; Uses simplified segment directives - segments not nested
```

```
message      MACRO   text
              LOCAL  symbol
              .DATA
symbol       DB      &text
              DB      13,10,"$"
              .CODE
              mov     ah,09h
              mov     dx,OFFSET symbol
              int     21h
              ENDM

              .CODE
              .
              .
              message "Please insert disk"
```

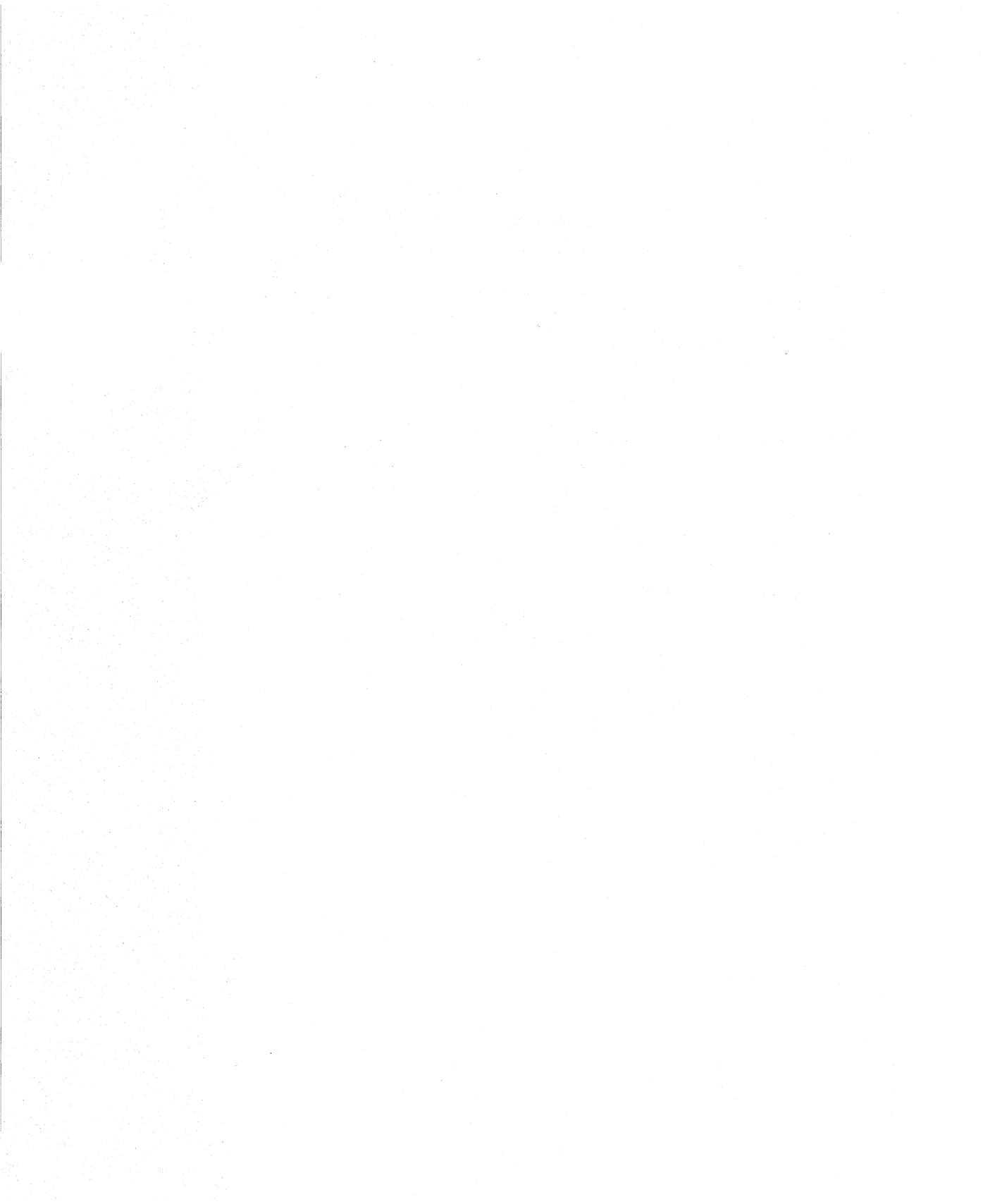
Although Example 2 has the same practical effect as Example 1, **MASM** handles the two macros differently. In Example 1, assembly of the outer (code) segment is suspended rather than terminated. In Example 2, assembly of the code segment terminates, assembly of the data segment starts and terminates, and then assembly of the code segment is restarted.

# CHAPTER

# 6

## DEFINING LABELS AND VARIABLES

6.1	Using Type Specifiers.....	119
6.2	Defining Code Labels .....	120
6.2.1	Near Code Labels .....	120
6.2.2	Procedure Labels .....	121
6.2.3	Code Labels Defined with the LABEL Directive.....	122
6.3	Defining and Initializing Data .....	123
6.3.1	Variables .....	123
6.3.1.1	Integer Variables.....	124
6.3.1.2	Binary Coded Decimal Variables.....	127
6.3.1.3	String Variables.....	127
6.3.1.4	Pointer Variables .....	128
6.3.1.5	Real-Number Variables.....	130
6.3.2	Arrays and Buffers .....	135
6.3.3	Labeling Variables .....	136
6.4	Setting the Location Counter.....	137
6.5	Aligning Data.....	138



This chapter explains how to define labels, variables, and other symbols that refer to instruction and data locations within segments.

The label- and variable-definition directives described in this chapter are closely related to the segment-definition directives described in Chapter 5, “Defining Segment Structure.” Segment directives assign the addresses for segments. The variable- and label-definition directives assign offset addresses within segments.

The assembler assigns offset addresses for each segment by keeping track of a value called the location counter. The location counter is incremented as each source statement is processed so that it always contains the offset of the location being assembled. When a label or a variable name is encountered, the current value of the location counter is assigned to the symbol.

This chapter tells you how to assign labels and most kinds of variables. (Multifield variables such as structures and records are discussed in Chapter 7, “Using Structures and Records.”) The chapter also discusses related directives, including those that control the location counter directly.

## 6.1 Using Type Specifiers

Some statements require type specifiers to give the size or type of an operand. There are two kinds of type specifiers: those that specify the size of a variable or other memory operand, and those that specify the distance of a label.

The type specifiers that give the size of a memory operand are listed below with the number of bytes specified by each:

<b>Specifier</b>	<b>Number of Bytes</b>
<b>BYTE</b>	1
<b>WORD</b>	2
<b>DWORD</b>	4
<b>FWORD</b>	6
<b>QWORD</b>	8
<b>TBYTE</b>	10

In some contexts, **ABS** can also be used as a type specifier that indicates an operand is a constant rather than a memory operand.

The type specifiers that give the distance of a label are listed below:

Specifier	Description
<b>FAR</b>	The label references both the segment and offset of the label.
<b>NEAR</b>	The label references only the offset of the label.
<b>PROC</b>	The label has the default type (near or far) of the current memory model. The default size is always near if you use full segment definitions. If you use simplified segment definitions (see Section 5.1) the default type is near for small and compact models or far for medium, large, and huge models.

Directives that use type specifiers include **LABEL**, **PROC**, **EXTRN**, and **COMM**. Operators that use type specifiers include **PTR** and **THIS**.

## 6.2 Defining Code Labels

Code labels give symbolic names to the addresses of instructions in the code segment. These labels can be used as the operands to jump, call, and loop instructions to transfer program control to a new instruction. There are three types of code labels: near labels, procedure labels, and labels created with the **LABEL** directive.

### 6.2.1 Near Code Labels

Near-label definitions create instruction labels that have **NEAR** type. These instruction labels can be used to access the address of the label from other statements.

#### ■ Syntax

*name:*

The *name* must not be previously defined in the module and it must be followed by a colon (:). Furthermore, the segment containing the definition must be the one that the assembler currently associates with the **CS** register. The **ASSUME** directive is used to associate a segment with a segment register (see Section 5.4, “Associating Segments with Registers”).

A near label can appear on a line by itself or on a line with an instruction. The same label name can be used in different modules as long as each label is only referenced by instructions in its own module. If a label must be referenced by instructions in another module, it must be given a unique name and declared with the **PUBLIC** and **EXTRN** directives, as described in Chapter 8, “Creating Programs from Multiple Modules.”

### ■ Examples

```

        cmp     ax,5           ; Compare with 5
        ja     bigger
        jb     smaller
        .
        .
        .
        jmp     done
bigger: .                     ; Instructions if AX > 5
        .
        .
        jmp     done
smaller: .                    ; Instructions if AX < 5
        .
        .
done:   .

```

## 6.2.2 Procedure Labels

The start of an assembly-language procedure can be defined with the **PROC** directive, and the end of the procedure can be defined with the **ENDP** directive.

### ■ Syntax

```

label PROC [NEAR|FAR]
statements
RET [constant]
label ENDP

```

The *label* assigns a symbol to the procedure. The distance can be **NEAR** or **FAR**. Any **RET** instructions within the procedure automatically have the same distance (**NEAR** or **FAR**) as the procedure. Procedures and the **RET** instruction are discussed in more detail in Section 17.4, “Using Procedures.”

The **ENDP** directive labels the address where the procedure ends. Every procedure label must have a matching **ENDP** label to mark the end of the procedure. **MASM** generates an error message if it does not find an **ENDP** directive to match each **PROC** directive.

When the **PROC** label definition is encountered, the assembler sets the label's value to the current value of the location counter and sets its type to **NEAR** or **FAR**. If the label has **FAR** type, the assembler also sets its segment value to that of the enclosing segment. If you have specified full segment definitions, the default distance is **NEAR**. If you are using simplified segment definitions, the default distance is the distance associated with the declared memory model—that is, **NEAR** for small and compact models or **FAR** for medium, large, and huge models.

The procedure label can be used in a **CALL** instruction to direct execution control to the first instruction of the procedure. Control can be transferred to a **NEAR** procedure label from any address in the same segment as the label. Control can be transferred to a **FAR** procedure label from an address in any segment.

Procedure labels must be declared with the **PUBLIC** and **EXTRN** directives if they are located in one module but called from another module, as described in Chapter 8, “Creating Programs from Multiple Modules.”

### ■ Examples

```

                call    task        ; Call procedure
                .
                .
task           PROC    NEAR        ; Start of procedure
                .
                .
                ret
task           ENDP                ; End of procedure

```

## 6.2.3 Code Labels Defined with the LABEL Directive

The **LABEL** directive provides an alternative method of defining code labels.

### ■ Syntax

*name LABEL distance*

The *name* is the symbol name assigned to the label. The *distance* can be a type specifier such as **NEAR**, **FAR**, or **PROC**. **PROC** means **NEAR** or **FAR**, depending on the default memory model, as described in Section 4.4, “Starting and Ending Source Files.” You can use the **LABEL** directive to define a second entry point into a procedure. **FAR** code labels can also be the destination of far jumps or of far calls that use the **RETF** instruction (see Section 17.4.2, “Defining Procedures”).

### ■ Example

```

task      PROC   FAR           ; Main entry point
          .
          .
task1     LABEL  FAR           ; Secondary entry point
          .
          .
          ret
task      ENDP                ; End of procedure

```

## 6.3 Defining and Initializing Data

The data-definition directives enable you to allocate memory for data. At the same time, you can specify the initial values for the allocated data. Data can be specified as numbers, strings, or expressions that evaluate to constants. The assembler translates these constant values into binary bytes, words, or other units of data. The encoded data are written to the object file at assembly time.

### 6.3.1 Variables

Variables consist of one or more named data objects of a specified size.

#### ■ Syntax

```
[[name] directive initializer [,initializer]...
```

The *name* is the symbol name assigned to the variable. If no *name* is assigned, the data is allocated; but the starting address of the variable has no symbolic name.

The size of the variable is determined by *directive*. The directives that can be used to define single-item data objects are listed below:

Directive	Meaning
DB	Defines byte
DW	Defines word (2 bytes)
DD	Defines doubleword (4 bytes)
DF	Defines farword (6 bytes); normally used only with 80386 processor

<b>DQ</b>	Defines quadword (8 bytes)
<b>DT</b>	Defines 10-byte variable

The optional *initializer* can be a constant, an expression that evaluates to a constant, or a question mark (?). The question mark is the symbol indicating that the value of the variable is undefined. You can define multiple values by using multiple initializers separated by commas, or by using the DUP operator, as explained in Section 6.3.2, "Arrays and Buffers."

Simple data types can allocate memory for integers, strings, addresses, or real numbers.

### 6.3.1.1 Integer Variables

When defining an integer variable, you can specify an initial value as an integer constant or as a constant expression. **MASM** generates an error if you specify an initial value too large for the specified variable.

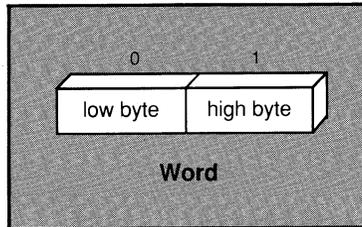
Integer values for all sizes except 10-byte variables are stored in the complement format of the binary two. They can be interpreted as either signed or unsigned numbers. For instance, the hexadecimal value 0FFCD can be interpreted either as the signed number -51 or the unsigned number 65,485.

The processor cannot tell the difference between signed and unsigned numbers. Some instructions are designed specifically for signed numbers. It is the programmer's responsibility to decide whether a value is to be interpreted as signed or unsigned, and then to use the appropriate instructions to handle the value correctly.

The directives for defining integer variables are listed below with the sizes of integer they can define:

<u>Directive</u>	<u>Size</u>
DB (bytes)	Allocates unsigned numbers from 0 to 255 or signed numbers from -128 to 127. These values can be used directly in 8086-family instructions.
DW (words)	Allocates unsigned numbers from 0 to 65,535 or signed numbers from -32,768 to 32,767. The

bytes of a word integer are stored in the format shown below:

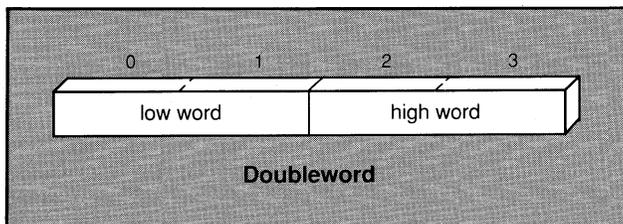


Note that in assembler listings and in most debuggers (including the CodeView debugger) the bytes of a word are shown in the opposite order—high byte first—since this is the way most people think of numbers. For instance, the decimal value 1987 is shown as 07C3h in listings and with the Dump Words (**DW**) CodeView command. Internally, the number is stored as C307h.

Word values can be used directly in 8086-family instructions. They can also be loaded, used in calculations, and stored with 8087-family instructions.

#### **DD (doublewords)**

Allocates unsigned numbers from 0 to 4,294,967,295 or signed numbers from -2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647. The words of a doubleword integer are stored in the format shown below:



These 32-bit values (called long integers) can be loaded, used in calculations, and stored with

8087-family instructions. Some calculations can be done on these numbers directly with 16-bit 8086-family processors; others involve an indirect method of doing calculations on each word separately (see Section 16.1, "Adding"). These long integers can be used directly in calculations with the 80386 processor.

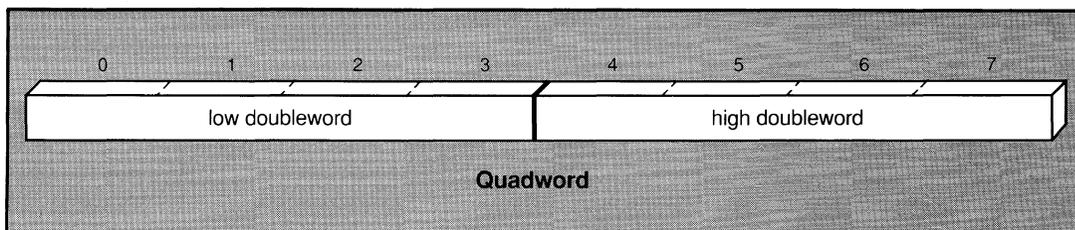
**DF** (farwords)

Allocates 6-byte (48-bit) integers.

These values are normally only used as pointer variables on the 80386 processor (see Section 6.2.1.4).

**DQ** (quadwords)

Allocates 64-bit integers. The doublewords of a quadword integer are stored in the format shown below:



These values can be loaded, used in calculations, and stored with 8087-family instructions. You must write your own routines to use them with 16-bit 8086-family processors. Some calculations can be done on these numbers directly with the 80386 processor, but others require an indirect method of doing calculations on each doubleword separately (see Section 16.1, "Adding").

**DT**

Allocates 10-byte (80-bit) integers if the **D** radix specifier is used.

By default, **DT** allocates packed BCD (binary coded decimal) numbers, as described in Section 6.3.1.2, "Binary Coded Decimal Variables." If you define binary 10-byte integers, you must write your own routines to use routines in calculations.

### ■ Example

```
integer    DB      16          ; Initialize byte to 16
expression DW     4*3         ; Initialize word to 12
empty     DQ      ?          ; Allocate uninitialized long integer
          DB      1,2,3,4,5,6 ; Initialize six unnamed bytes
high_byte DD     4294967295   ; Initialize double word to 4,294,967,295
tb        DT      2345d      ; Initialize 10-byte binary integer
```

#### 6.3.1.2 Binary Coded Decimal Variables

Binary coded decimals (BCD) provide a method of doing calculations on large numbers without rounding errors. They are sometimes used in financial applications. There are two kinds: packed and unpacked.

Unpacked BCD numbers are stored one digit to a byte, with the value in the lower four bits. They can be defined with the **DB** directive. For example, an unpacked BCD number could be defined and initialized as shown below:

```
unpackedr DB      1,5,8,2,5,2,9 ; Initialized to 9,252,851
unpackedf DB      9,2,5,2,8,5,1 ; Initialized to 9,252,851
```

Whether least-significant digits can come either first or last, depends on how you write the calculation routines that handle the numbers. Calculations with unpacked BCD numbers are discussed in Section 16.5.1.

Packed BCD numbers are stored two digits to a byte, with one digit in the lower four bits and one in the upper four bits. The leftmost bit holds the sign (0 for positive or 1 for negative).

Packed BCD variables can be defined with the **DT** directive as shown below:

```
packed    DT      9252851      ; Allocate 9,252,851
```

The 8087-family processors can do fast calculations with packed BCD numbers, as described in Chapter 19, “Calculating with a Math Coprocessor.” The 8086-family processors can also do some calculations with packed BCD numbers, but the process is slower and more complicated. See Section 16.5.2 for details.

#### 6.3.1.3 String Variables

Strings are normally initialized with the **DB** directive. The initializing value is specified as a string constant. Strings can also be initialized by specifying each value in the string. For example, the following definitions are equivalent:

```

version1    DB      97,98,99          ; As ASCII values
version2    DB      'a','b','c'      ; As characters
version3    DB      "abc"           ; As a string

```

One- and two-character strings (four-character strings on the 80386) can also be initialized with any of the other data-definition directives. The last (or only) character in the string is placed in the byte with the lowest address. Either 0 or the first character is placed in the next byte. The unused portion of such variables is filled with zeros.

## ■ Examples

```

function9   DB      'Hello',13,10,'$' ; Use with DOS INT 21h
                                           ; function 9
asciiz      DB      "\ASM\TEST.ASM",0 ; Use as ASCIIIZ string
message     DB      "Enter file name: " ; Use with DOS INT 21h
l_message   EQU     $-message          ; function 40h
a_message   EQU     OFFSET message

str1        DB      "ab"              ; Stored as 61 62
str2        DD      "ab"              ; Stored as 62 61 00 00
str3        DD      "a"               ; Stored as 61 00 00 00

```

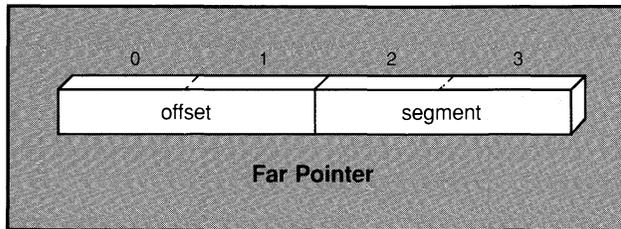
### 6.3.1.4 Pointer Variables

Pointer variables (or pointers) are variables that contain the address of a data or code object rather than the object itself. The address in the variable “points” to another address. Pointers can be either near addresses or far addresses.

Near pointers consist of the offset portion of the address. They can be initialized in word variables by using the **DW** directive. Values in near-address variables can be used in situations where the segment portion of the address is known to be the current segment.

Far pointers consist of both the segment and offset portions of the address. They can be initialized in doubleword variables, using the **DD** directive. Values in far-address variables must be used when the segment portion of

the address may be outside the current segment. The segment and offset of a far pointer are stored in the format shown below:

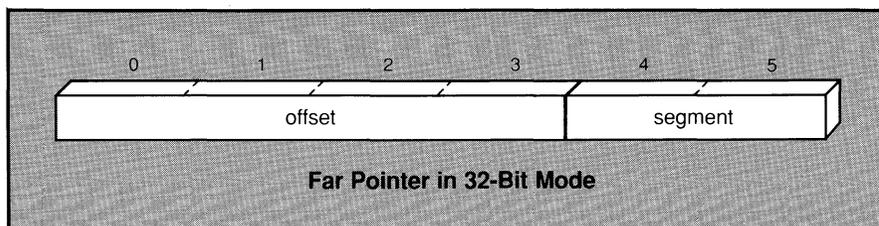


■ **Examples**

```
string    DB    "Text",0    ; Null-terminated string
npstring  DW    string      ; Near pointer to "string"
fpstring  DD    string      ; Far pointer to "string"
```

■ **80386 Only**

Pointers are different on the 80386 processor if the **USE32** use type has been specified. In this case the offset portion of an address consists of 32 bits, and the segment portion consists of 16 bits. Therefore a near pointer is 32 bits (a doubleword), and a far pointer is 48 bits (a farword). The segment and offset of a 32-bit-mode far pointer are stored in the format shown below:



■ **Example**

```
_DATA    SEGMENT WORD USE32 PUBLIC 'DATA'
string   DB    "Text",0    ; Null-terminated string
npstring DD    string      ; Near (32-bit) pointer to "string"
fpstring DF    string      ; Far (48-bit) pointer to "string"
_DATA    ENDS
```

### 6.3.1.5 Real-Number Variables

Real numbers must be stored in binary format. However, when initializing variables, you can specify decimal or hexadecimal constants and let the assembler automatically encode them into their binary equivalents.

**MASM** can use two different binary formats for real numbers: **IEEE** or **Microsoft Binary**. You can specify the format by using directives (**IEEE** is the default).

This section tells you how to initialize real-number variables, describes the two binary formats, and explains real-number encoding.

#### Initializing and Allocating Real-Number Variables

Real numbers can be defined by initializing them either with real-number constants or with encoded hexadecimal constants. The real-number designator (**R**) must follow numbers specified in encoded format.

The directives for defining real numbers are listed below with the sizes of the numbers they can allocate:

<u>Directive</u>	<u>Size</u>
<b>DD</b>	Allocates short (32-bit) real numbers in either the <b>IEEE</b> or <b>Microsoft Binary</b> format.
<b>DQ</b>	Allocates long (64-bit) real numbers in either the <b>IEEE</b> or <b>Microsoft Binary</b> format.
<b>DT</b>	Allocates temporary or 10-byte (80-bit) real numbers. The format of these numbers is similar to the <b>IEEE</b> format. They are always encoded the same regardless of the real-number format. Their size is nonstandard and incompatible with <b>Microsoft</b> high-level languages. Temporary-real format is provided for those who want to initialize real numbers in the format used internally by 8087-family processors.

The 8086-family microprocessors do not have any instructions for handling real numbers. You must write your own routines, use a library that includes real-number calculation routines, or use a coprocessor. The 8087-family coprocessors can load real numbers in the **IEEE** format; they can also use the values in calculations and store the results back to memory, as explained in Chapter 19, "Calculating with a Math Coprocessor."

## ■ Examples

```

shrt      DD      98.6           ; MASM automatically encodes
long     DQ      5.391E-4       ;   in current format
ten_byte DT      -7.31E7

eshrt    DD      87453333r      ; 98.6 encoded in Microsoft
                               ; Binary format
elong    DQ      3F41AA4C6F445B7Ar ; 5.391E-4 encoded in IEEE format

```

The real-number designator (**R**) used to specify encoded numbers is explained in Section 4.3.2, “Packed Binary Coded Decimal Constants.”

## Selecting a Real-Number Format

**MASM** can encode four- and eight-byte real numbers in two different formats: IEEE and Microsoft Binary. Your choice depends on the type of program you are writing. The four primary alternatives are listed below:

1. If your program requires a coprocessor for calculations, you must use the IEEE format.
2. Most high-level languages use the IEEE format. If you are writing modules that will be called from such a language, your program should use the IEEE format. All versions of the C, FORTRAN, and Pascal compilers sold by Microsoft and IBM use the IEEE format.
3. If you are writing a module that will be called from most previous versions of Microsoft or IBM BASIC, your program should use the Microsoft Binary format. Versions that support only the Microsoft Binary format include:
  - Microsoft QuickBASIC through Version 2.01
  - Microsoft BASIC Compiler through Version 5.3
  - IBM BASIC Compiler through Version 2.0
  - Microsoft GW-BASIC interpreter (all versions)
  - IBM BASICA interpreter (all versions)

Microsoft QuickBASIC Version 3.0 supports both the Microsoft Binary and IEEE formats as options.

Future versions of Microsoft QuickBASIC and the BASIC compiler will support only the IEEE format.

4. If you are creating a stand-alone program that does not use a coprocessor, you can choose either format. The IEEE format is better for overall compatibility with high-level languages. Also, the CodeView debugger can display only real numbers in the IEEE format. The Microsoft Binary format may be necessary for compatibility with existing source code.

---

*Note*

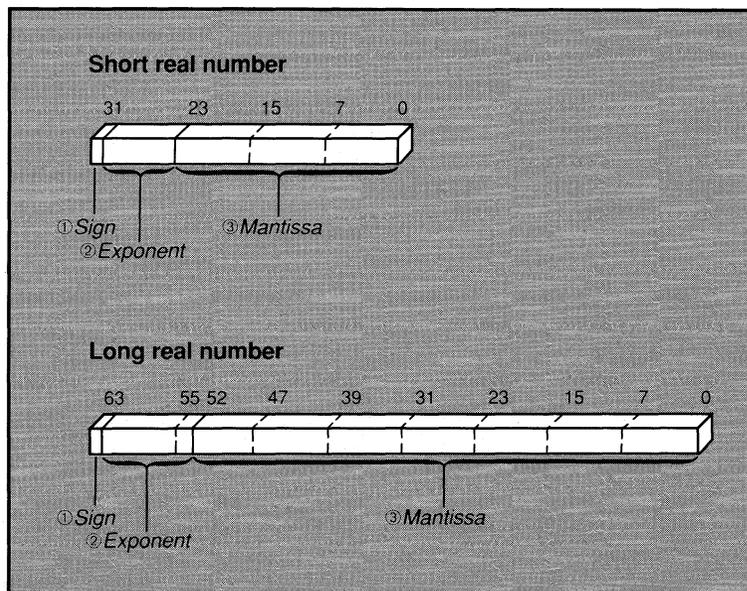
When you interface assembly-language modules with high-level languages, the real-number format only matters if you initialize real-number variables in the assembly module. If your assembly module does not use real numbers, or if all real numbers are initialized in the high-level-language module, the real-number format does not make any difference.

---

By default, **MASM** assembles real-number data in the IEEE format. This is a change from previous versions of the assembler, which used the Microsoft Binary format by default. If you wish to use the Microsoft Binary format, you must put the **.MSFLOAT** directive at the start of your source file before initializing any real-number variables (see Section 4.5.1, “Starting and Ending Source Files”).

### Real-Number Encoding

The IEEE format for encoding four- and eight-byte real numbers is illustrated in Figure 6.1.

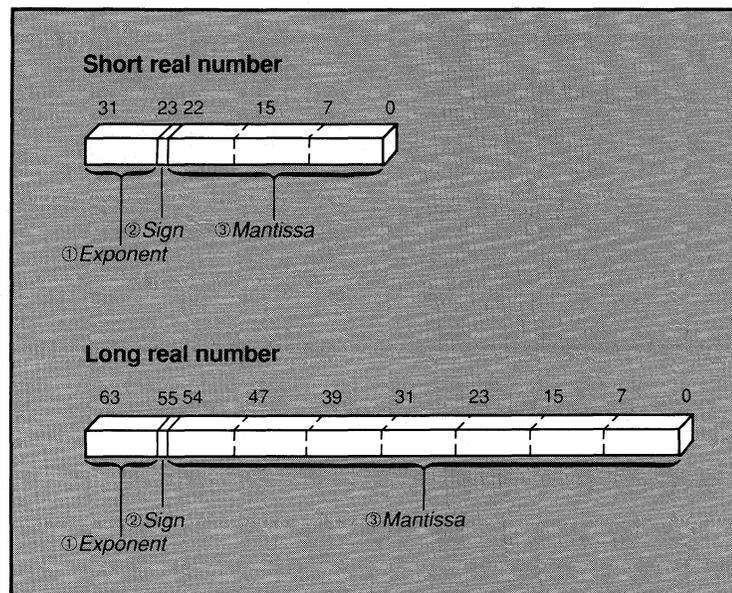


**Figure 6.1** Encoding for Real Numbers in IEEE Format

The parts of the real numbers are described below:

1. Sign bit (0 for positive or 1 for negative) in the upper bit of the first byte.
2. Exponent in the next bits in sequence (8 bits for short real number or 11 bits for long real number).
3. All except the first set bit of mantissa in the remaining bits of the variable. Since the first significant bit is known to be set, it need not be actually stored. The length is 23 bits for short real numbers and 52 bits for long real numbers.

The Microsoft Binary format for encoding real numbers is illustrated in Figure 6.2.



**Figure 6.2** Encoding for Real Numbers in Microsoft Binary Format

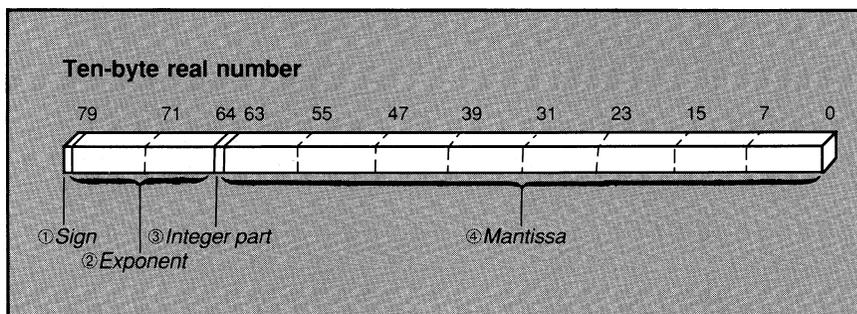
The three parts of real numbers are described below:

1. Biased exponent (8 bits) in the high-address byte. The bias is 81h for short real numbers and 401h for long real numbers.
2. Sign bit (0 for positive or 1 for negative) in the upper bit of the second-highest byte.

3. All except the first set bit of mantissa in the remaining 7 bits of the second-highest byte and in the remaining bytes of the variable. Since the first significant bit is known to be set, it need not be actually stored. The length is 23 bits for short real numbers and 55 bits for long real numbers.

**MASM** also supports the 10-byte temporary-real format used internally by 8087-family coprocessors. This format is similar to IEEE format. The size is nonstandard and is not used by Microsoft compilers or interpreters. Since the coprocessors can load and automatically convert numbers in the more standard 4- and 8-byte formats, the 10-byte format is seldom used in assembly-language programming.

The temporary-real format for encoding real numbers is illustrated in Figure 6.3.



**Figure 6.3** Encoding for Real Numbers in Temporary-Real Format

The four parts of the real numbers are described below:

1. Sign bit (0 for positive or 1 for negative) in the upper bit of the first byte.
2. Exponent in the next bits in sequence (15 bits for 10-byte real).
3. The integer part of mantissa in the next bit in sequence (bit 63).
4. Remaining bits of mantissa in the remaining bits of the variable. The length is 63 bits.

Notice that the 10-byte temporary-real format stores the integer part of the mantissa. This differs from the 4- and 8-byte formats, in which the integer part is implicit.

## 6.3.2 Arrays and Buffers

Arrays, buffers, and other data structures consisting of multiple data objects of the same size can be defined with the **DUP** operator. This operator can be used with any of the data-definition directives described in this chapter.

### ■ Syntax

```
count DUP (initialvalue[[,initialvalue]]...)
```

The *count* sets the number of times to define *initialvalue*. The initial value can be any expression that evaluates to an integer value, a character constant, or another **DUP** operator. It can also be the undefined symbol (?) if there is no initial value.

Multiple initial values must be separated by commas. If multiple values are specified within the parentheses, the sequence of values is allocated *count* times. For example, the statement

```
DB      5 DUP ("Text ")
```

allocates the string "Text " five times for a total of 20 bytes.

**DUP** operators can be nested up to 17 levels. The initial value (or values) must always be placed within parentheses.

### ■ Examples

```
array      DD      10 DUP (1)                ; 10 doublewords
           ;      initialized to 1

buffer     DB      256 DUP (?)              ; 256 byte buffer

masks      DB      20 DUP (040h,020h,04h,02h) ; 80 byte buffer
           ;      with bit masks
           DB      32 DUP ("I am here ")    ; 320 byte buffer with
           ;      signature for debugging

three_d    DD      5 DUP (5 DUP (5 DUP (0))) ; 125 doublewords
           ;      initialized to 0
```

*Note*

**MASM** sometimes generates different object code when the **DUP** operator is used rather than when multiple values are given. For example, the statement

```
test1      DB      ?,?,?,?,? ; Indeterminate
```

is “indeterminate.” It causes **MASM** to write five zero-value bytes to the object file. The statement

```
test2      DB      5 DUP (?) ; Undefined
```

is “undefined.” It causes **MASM** to increase the offset of the next record in the object file by five bytes. Therefore an object file created with the first statement will be larger than one created with the second statement.

In most cases, the distinction between indeterminate and undefined definitions is trivial. The linker adjusts the offsets so that the same executable file is generated in either case. However, the difference is significant in segments with the **COMMON** combine type. If **COMMON** segments in two modules contain definitions for the same variable, one with an indeterminate value and one with an explicit value, the actual value in the executable file varies depending on link order. If the module with the indeterminate value is linked last, the 0 initialized for it overrides the explicit value. You can prevent this by always using undefined rather than indeterminate values in **COMMON** segments. For example, use the first of the following statements:

```
test3      DB      1 DUP (?) ; Undefined - doesn't initialize  
test4      DB      ?       ; Indeterminate - initializes 0
```

If you use the undefined definition, the explicit value is always used in the executable file regardless of link order.

---

### 6.3.3 Labeling Variables

The **LABEL** directive can be used to define a variable of a given size at a specified location. It is useful if you want to refer to the same data as variables of different sizes.

## ■ Syntax

*name* LABEL *type*

The *name* is the symbol assigned to the variable, and *type* is the variable size. The type can be any one of the following type specifiers: **BYTE**, **WORD**, **DWORD**, **FWORD**, **QWORD**, or **TBYTE**. It can also be the name of a previously defined structure.

## ■ Examples

```
warray      LABEL   WORD       ; Access array as 50 words
darray      LABEL   DWORD      ; Access same array as 25 doublewords
barray      DB      100 DUP(?) ; Access same array as 100 bytes
```

## 6.4 Setting the Location Counter

The location counter is the value **MASM** maintains to keep track of the current location in the source file. The location counter is incremented automatically as each source statement is processed. However, the location counter can be set specifically using the **ORG** directive.

## ■ Syntax

**ORG** *expression*

Subsequent code and data offsets begin at the new offset specified set by *expression*. The *expression* must resolve to a constant number. In other words, all symbols used in the expression must be known on the first pass of the assembler.

---

### *Note*

The value of the location counter, represented by the dollar sign (\$), can be used in *expression*, as described in Section 9.3, “Using the Location Counter.”

---

## ■ Example 1

```

; Labeling absolute addresses

STUFF      SEGMENT AT 0      ; Segment has constant value 0
           ORG      410h    ; Offset has constant value 410h
equipment  LABEL WORD      ; Value at 0000:0410 labeled "equipment"
           ORG      417h    ; Offset has constant value 417h
keyboard   LABEL WORD      ; Value at 0000:0417 labeled "keyboard"
STUFF      ENDS

           .CODE
           .
           .
           .
ASSUME     ds:STUFF        ; Tell the assembler
           mov      ax,STUFF ; Tell the processor
           mov      ds,ax

           mov      dx,equipment
           mov      keyboard,ax

```

Example 1 illustrates one way of assigning symbolic names to absolute addresses. This technique is not possible under protected-mode operating systems.

## ■ Example 2

```

; Format for .COM files

_TEXT     SEGMENT
ASSUME    cs:_TEXT,ds:_TEXT,ss:_TEXT,es:_TEXT
           ORG      100h    ; Skip 100h bytes of DOS header

entry:    jmp      begin    ; Jump over data
variable  DW      ?        ; Put more data here
           .
begin:    .                ; First line of code
           .                ; Put more code here
_TEXT     ENDS
           END      entry

```

Example 2 illustrates how the **ORG** directive is used to initialize the starting execution point in **.COM** files.

## 6.5 Aligning Data

Some operations are more efficient when the variable used in the operation is lined up on a boundary of a particular size. The **ALIGN** and **EVEN** directives can be used to pad the object file so that the next variable is aligned on a specified boundary.

**■ Syntax 1****EVEN****■ Syntax 2****ALIGN** *number*

The **EVEN** directive always aligns on the next even byte. The **ALIGN** directive aligns on the next byte that is a multiple of *number*. The *number* must be a power of 2. For example, use **ALIGN 2** or **EVEN** to align on word boundaries, or use **ALIGN 4** to align on doubleword boundaries.

If the value of the location counter is not on the specified boundary when an **ALIGN** directive is encountered, the location counter is incremented to a value on the boundary. **NOP** (no operation) instructions are generated to pad the object file. If the location counter is already on the boundary, the directive has no effect.

The **ALIGN** and **EVEN** directives give no efficiency improvements on processors that have an 8-bit data bus (such as the 8088 or 80188). These processors always fetch data one byte at a time, regardless of the alignment. However, using **EVEN** can speed certain operation on processors that have a 16-bit data bus (such as the 8086, 80186, or 80286), since the processor can fetch a word if the data is word aligned, but must do two memory fetches if the data is not word aligned. Similarly, using **ALIGN 4** can speed some operations with a 80386 processor, since the processor can fetch four bytes at a time if the data is doubleword aligned.

---

*Note*

The **ALIGN** directive is a new feature of Version 5.0 of the Microsoft Macro Assembler. In previous versions, data could be word aligned by using the **EVEN** directive, but other alignments could not be specified.

The **EVEN** directive should not be used in segments with **BYTE** align type. Similarly, the *number* specified with the **ALIGN** directive should be at least equal to the size of the align type of the segment where the directive is given.

---

## ■ Example

```

DOSSEG
.MODEL    small
.STACK   100h
.DATA
:
:
stuff    ALIGN    4                ; For faster data access
        DW      66,124,573,99,75
:
:
evenstuff ALIGN    4                ; For faster data access
        DW      ?,?,?,?,?
.CODE
start:   mov     ax,@data           ; Load segment location
        mov     ds,ax              ; into DS
        mov     es,ax              ; and ES registers

        mov     cx,5               ; Load count
        mov     si,OFFSET stuff    ; Point to source
        mov     di,OFFSET evenstuff; and destination
mloop:   ALIGN    4                ; Align for faster loop access
        lodsw                ; Load a word
        inc     ax               ; Make it even by incrementing
        and     ax,NOT 1         ; and turning off first bit
        stosw                ; Store
        loop   mloop            ; Again

```

In this example, the words at `stuff` and `evenstuff` are forced to doubleword boundaries. This makes access to the data faster with processors that have either a 32-bit or 16-bit data bus. Without this alignment, the initial data might start on an odd boundary and the processor would have to fetch half of each word at a time with a 16-bit data bus or half of each doubleword with a 32-bit data bus.

Similarly, the alignment in the code segment speeds up repeated access to the code at the start of the loop. The sample code sacrifices program size in order to achieve significant speed improvements on the 80386 and more moderate improvements on the 8086 and 80286. There is no speed advantage on the 8088.

# CHAPTER

# 7

## USING STRUCTURES AND RECORDS

7.1	Structures.....	143
7.1.1	Declaring Structure Types.....	143
7.1.2	Defining Structure Variables.....	145
7.1.3	Using Structure Operands .....	146
7.2	Records.....	147
7.2.1	Declaring Record Types.....	148
7.2.2	Defining Record Variables .....	150
7.2.3	Using Record Operands and Record Variables .....	151
7.2.4	Record Operators.....	153
	7.2.4.1 The MASK Operator.....	153
	7.2.4.2 The WIDTH Operator .....	153
7.2.5	Using Record-Field Operands.....	154



The Macro Assembler can define and use two kinds of multifield variables: structures and records.

Structures are templates for data objects made up of smaller data objects. A structure can be used to define structure variables, which are made up of smaller variables called fields. Fields within a structure can be different sizes, and each can be accessed individually.

Records are templates for data objects whose bits can be described as groups of bits called fields. A record can be used to define record variables. Each bit field in a record variable can be used separately in constant operands or expressions. The processor cannot access bits individually at run time, but bit fields can be used with logical bit instructions to change bits indirectly.

This chapter describes structures and records and tells how to use them.

## 7.1 Structures

A structure variable is a collection of data objects that can be accessed symbolically as a single data object. Objects within the structure can have different sizes and can be accessed symbolically.

There are two steps in using structure variables:

1. Declare a structure type. A structure type is a template for data. It declares the sizes and, optionally, the initial values for objects in the structure. By itself the structure type does not define any data. The structure type is used by **MASM** during assembly but is not saved as part of the object file.
2. Define one or more variables having the structure type. For each variable defined, memory is allocated to the object file in the format declared by the structure type.

The structure variable can then be used as an operand in assembler statements. The structure variable can be accessed as a whole by using the structure name, or individual fields can be accessed by using structure and field names.

### 7.1.1 Declaring Structure Types

The **STRUC** and **ENDS** directives mark the beginning and end of a type declaration for a structure.

## ■ Syntax

```
name STRUC
fielddeclarations
name ENDS
```

The *name* declares the name of the structure type. It must be unique. The *fielddeclarations* declare the fields of the structure. Any number of field declarations may be given. They must follow the form of data definitions described in Section 6.3, "Defining and Initializing Data." Default initial values may be declared individually or with the **DUP** operator.

The names given to fields must be unique within the source file where they are declared. When variables are defined, the field names will represent the offset from the beginning of the structure to the corresponding field.

When declaring strings in a structure type, make sure the initial values are long enough to accommodate the largest possible string. Strings smaller than the field size can be placed in the structure variable, but larger strings will be truncated.

A structure declaration can contain field declarations and comments. Starting with Version 5.0 of the Macro Assembler, conditional-assembly statements are allowed in structure declarations. No other kinds of statements are allowed. Since the **STRUC** directive is not allowed inside structure declarations, structures cannot be nested.

---

### Note

The **ENDS** directive that marks the end of a structure has the same mnemonic as the **ENDS** directive that marks the end of a segment. The assembler recognizes the meaning of the directive from context. Make sure each **SEGMENT** directive and each **STRUC** directive has its own **ENDS** directive.

---

## ■ Example

```
student    STRUC                ; Structure for student records
id         DW    ?              ; Field for identification #
sname     DB    "Last, First Middle  "
scores    DB    10 DUP (100)    ; Field for 10 scores
student   ENDS
```

Within the sample structure `student`, the fields `id`, `sname`, and `scores` have the offset values 0, 2, and 24, respectively.

## 7.1.2 Defining Structure Variables

A structure variable is a variable with one or more fields of different sizes. The sizes and initial values of the fields are determined by the structure type with which the variable is defined.

### ■ Syntax

```
[[name]] structurename <[[initialvalue [,initialvalue...]]>
```

The *name* is the name assigned to the variable. If no *name* is given, the assembler allocates space for the variable, but does not give it a symbolic name. The *structurename* is the name of a structure type previously declared by using the **STRUC** and **ENDS** directives.

An *initialvalue* can be given for each field in the structure. Its type must not be incompatible with the type of the corresponding field. The angle brackets (< >) are required even if no initial value is given. If *initial-values* are given for more than one field, the values must be separated by commas.

If the **DUP** operator (see Section 6.3.2, “Arrays and Buffers”) is used to initialize multiple structure variables, only the angle brackets and initial values, if given, need to be enclosed in parentheses. For example, you can define an array of structure variables as shown below:

```
war          date      365 DUP (<.,1940>)
```

You need not initialize all fields in a structure. If an initial value is left blank, the assembler automatically uses the default initial value of the field, which was originally determined by the structure type. If there is no default value, the field is undefined.

### ■ Examples

The following examples use the `student` type declared in the first example in Section 7.1.1, “Declaring Structure Types”:

```
s1          student <>          ; Uses default values of type

s2          student <1467,"White, Robert D.",>
           ; Override default values of first two
           ;   fields--use default value of third

sarray     student 100 DUP (<>) ; Declare 100 student variables
           ;   with default initial values
```

### Note

You cannot initialize any structure field that has multiple values if this field was given a default initial value when the structure was declared. For example, assume the following structure declaration:

```
stuff      STRUC
buffer    DB      100 DUP (?)      ; Can't override
crlf     DB      13,10            ; Can't override
query    DB      'Filename:      ; String <= can override
endmark   DB      36              ; Can override
stuff     ENDS
```

The `buffer` and `crlf` fields cannot be overridden by initial values in the structure definition because they have multiple values. The `query` field can be overridden as long as the overriding string is no longer than `query` (10 bytes). A longer string would generate an error. The `endmark` field can be overridden by any byte value.

---

## 7.1.3 Using Structure Operands

Like other variables, structure variables can be accessed by name. Fields within structure variables can also be accessed by using the syntax shown below:

### ■ Syntax

*variable.field*

The *variable* must be the name of a structure (or an operand that resolves to the address of a structure). The *field* must be the name of a field within that structure. The *variable* is separated from *field* by a period. The period is discussed as a structure field-name operator in Section 9.2.1.2.

The address of a structure operand is the sum of the offsets of *variable* and *field*. The address is relative to the segment or group in which the variable is declared.

## ■ Examples

```

date          STRUC                               ; Declare structure
month         DB      ?
day           DB      ?
year          DW      ?
date          ENDS

.DATA
yesterday    date    <9,30,1987>                ; Declare structure
today        date    <10,1,1987>                ;   variables
tomorrow     date    <10,2,1987>

.CODE
.
.
mov          al,yesterday.day                    ; Use structure variables
mov          ah,today.month                      ;   as operands
mov          tomorrow.year,dx
mov          bx,OFFSET yesterday                ; Load structure address
mov          ax,[bx].month                      ; Use as indirect operand
.
.

```

## 7.2 Records

A record variable is a byte or word variable in which specific bit fields can be accessed symbolically. Records can be doubleword variables with the 80386 processor. Bit fields within the record can have different sizes.

There are two steps in declaring record variables:

1. Declare a record type. A record type is a template for data. It declares the sizes and, optionally, the initial values for bit fields in the record. By itself the record type does not define any data. The record type is used by **MASM** during assembly but is not saved as part of the object file.
2. Define one or more variables having the record type. For each variable defined, memory is allocated to the object file in the format declared by the type.

The record variable can then be used as an operand in assembler statements. The record variable can be accessed as a whole by using the record name, or individual fields can be specified by using the record name and a field name combined with the field-name operator. A record type can also be used as a constant (immediate data).

## 7.2.1 Declaring Record Types

The **RECORD** directive declares a record type for an 8- or 16-bit record that contains one or more bit fields. With the 80386, 32-bit records can also be declared.

### ■ Syntax

*recordname* **RECORD** *field* [,*field*...]

The *recordname* is the name of the record type to be used when creating the record. The *field* declares the name, width, and initial value for the field.

The syntax for each *field* is shown below:

### ■ Syntax

*fieldname:width* [= *expression*]

The *fieldname* is the name of a field in the record, *width* is the number of bits in the field, and *expression* is the initial (or default) value for the field.

Any number of *field* combinations can be given for a record, as long as each is separated from its predecessor by a comma. The sum of the widths for all fields must not exceed 16 bits.

The width must be a constant. If the total width of all declared fields is larger than eight bits, then the assembler uses two bytes. Otherwise, only one byte is used.

---

### *80386 Only*

Records can be up to 32 bits in width when the 80386 processor is enabled with **.386**. If the total width is 8 bits or less, the assembler uses 1 byte; if the width is 9 to 16 bytes, the assembler uses 2 bytes; and if the width is larger than 16 bits, the assembler uses 4 bytes.

---

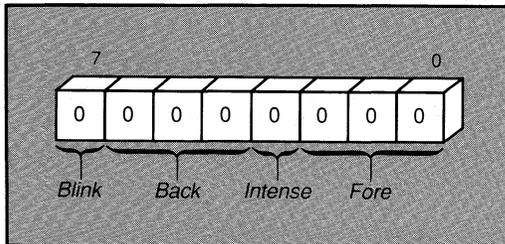
If *expression* is given, it declares the initial value for the field. An error message is generated if an initial value is too large for the width of its field. If the field is at least seven bits wide, you can use an ASCII character for *expression*. The expression must not contain a forward reference to any symbol.

In all cases, the first field you declare goes into the most significant bits of the record. Successively declared fields are placed in the succeeding bits to the right. If the fields you declare do not total exactly 8 bits or exactly 16 bits, the entire record is shifted right so that the last bit of the last field is the lowest bit of the record. Unused bits in the high end of the record are initialized to 0.

### ■ Example 1

```
color      RECORD  blink:1,back:3,intense:1,fore:3
```

The example above creates a byte record type `color` having four fields: `blink`, `back`, `intense`, and `fore`. The contents of the record type are shown below:

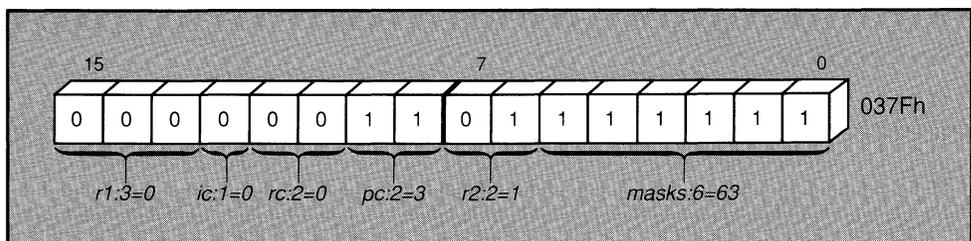


Since no initial values are given, all bits are set to 0. Note that this is only a template maintained by the assembler. No data are created.

### ■ Example 2

```
cw        RECORD  r1:3=0,ic:1=0,rc:2=0,pc:2=3,r2:2=1,masks:6=63
```

Example 2 creates a record type `cw` having six fields. Each record declared by using this type occupies 16 bits of memory. The bit diagram below shows the contents of the record type:



Default values are given for each field. They can be used when data is declared for the record.

## 7.2.2 Defining Record Variables

A record variable is an 8-bit or 16-bit variable whose bits are divided into one or more fields. With the 80386, 32-bit variables are also allowed.

### ■ Syntax

```
[name] recordname <[[initialvalue [,initialvalue...]]]>
```

The *name* is the symbolic name of the variable. If no *name* is given, the assembler allocates space for the variable, but does not give it a symbolic name. The *recordname* is the name of a record type that was previously declared by using the **RECORD** directive.

An *initialvalue* for each field in the record can be given as an integer, character constant, or an expression that resolves to a value compatible with the size of the field. Angle brackets (< >) are required even if no initial value is given. If initial values for more than one field are given, the values must be separated by commas.

If the **DUP** operator (see Section 6.3.2, “Arrays and Buffers”) is used to initialize multiple record variables, only the angle brackets and initial values, if given, need to be enclosed in parentheses. For example, you can define an array of record variables as shown below:

```
xmas          color    50 DUP (<1,2,0,4>)
```

You do not have to initialize all fields in a record. If an initial value is left blank, the assembler automatically uses the default initial value of the field. This is declared by the record type. If there is no default value, each bit in the field is cleared.

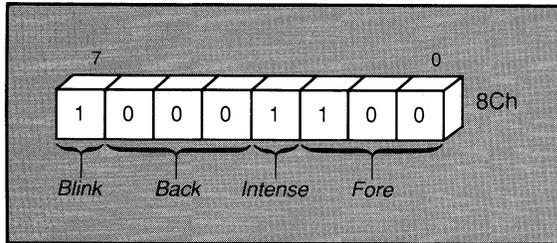
Sections 7.2.3, “Using Record Operands and Record Variables,” and 7.2.4, “Record Operators,” illustrate ways to use record data after it has been declared.

### ■ Examples

```
color          RECORD  blink:1,back:3,intense:1,fore:3 ; Record declaration
warning        color   <1,0,1,4>                      ; Record definition
```

The definition above creates a variable named *warning* whose type is given by the record type *color*. The initial values of the fields in the variable are set to the values given in the record definition. The initial values

would override the default record values, had any been given in the declaration. The contents of the record variable are shown below:



### ■ Example 2

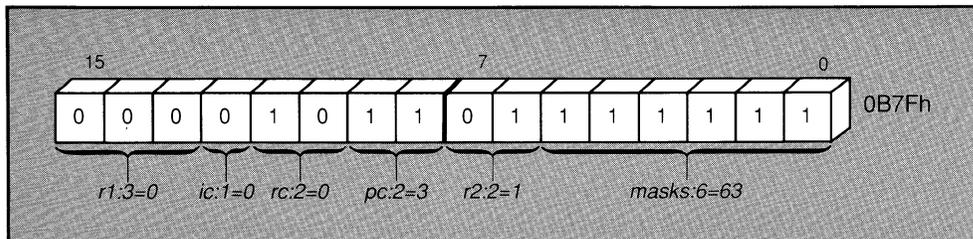
```
color      RECORD  blink:1,back:3,intense:1,fore:3 ; Record declaration
colors    color  16 DUP (<>)                      ; Record declaration
```

Example 2 creates an array named `colors` containing 16 variables of type `color`. Since no initial values are given in either the declaration or the definition, the variables have undefined (0) values.

### ■ Example 3

```
cw        RECORD  r1:3=0,ic:1=0,rc:2=0,pc:2=3,r2:2=1,masks:6=63
newcw    cw      <,,2,,,>
```

Example 3 creates a variable named `newcw` with type `cw`. The default values set in the type declaration are used for all fields except the `pc` field. This field is set to 2. The contents of the variable are shown below:



## 7.2.3 Using Record Operands and Record Variables

A record operand refers to the value of a record type. It should not be confused with a record variable. A record operand is a constant; a record variable is a value stored in memory. A record operand can be used with the following syntax:

## ■ Syntax

*recordname* <[[*value*][,*value*...]]>

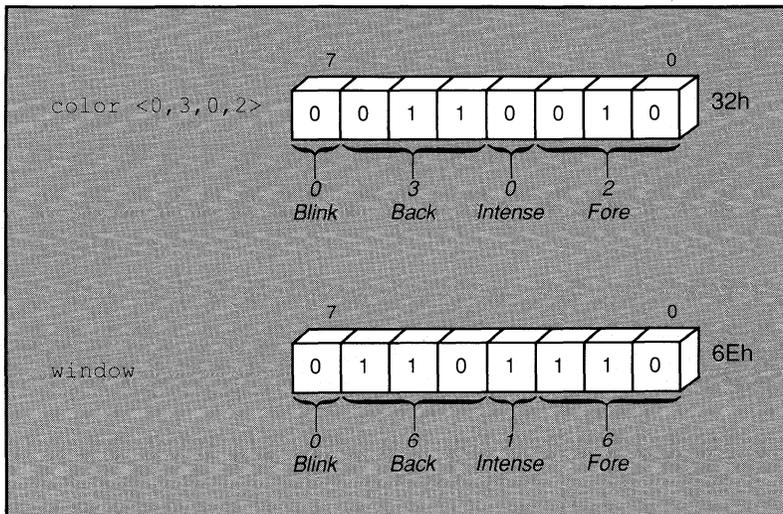
The *recordname* must be the name of a record type declared in the source file. The optional *value* is the value of a field in the record. If more than one *value* is given, each value must be separated by a comma. Values can include expressions or symbols that evaluate to constants. The enclosing angle brackets (< >) are required, even if no value is given. If no value for a field is given, the default value for that field is used.

## ■ Example

```
.DATA
color      RECORD  blink:1,back:3,intense:1,fore:3 ; Record declaration
window    color  <0,6,1,6>                       ; Record definition

.CODE
.
.
mov       ah,color <0,3,0,2> ; Load record operand
                               ; (constant value 32h)
mov       bh>window          ; Load record variable
                               ; (memory value 6Eh)
```

In this example, the record operand `color <0,3,0,2>` and the record variable `window` are loaded into registers. The contents of the values are shown below:



## 7.2.4 Record Operators

The **WIDTH** and **MASK** operators are used exclusively with records to return constant values representing different aspects of previously declared records.

### 7.2.4.1 The MASK Operator

The **MASK** operator returns a bit mask for the bit positions in a record occupied by the given record field. A bit in the mask contains a 1 if that bit corresponds to a field bit. All other bits contain 0.

#### ■ Syntax

**MASK** { *recordfieldname* | *record* }

The *recordfieldname* may be the name of any field in a previously defined record. The *record* may be the name of any previously defined record. The **NOT** operator is sometimes used with the **MASK** operator to reverse the bits of a mask.

#### ■ Example

```

color      .DATA
message    RECORD blink:1,back:3,intense:1,fore:3
           color  <0,5,1,1>
           .CODE
           .
           .
           mov    ah,message      ; Load initial  0101 1001
           and    ah,NOT MASK back ; Turn off    AND 1000 1111
           ;      "back"          ; -----
           ;                      ; 0000 1001
           or     ah,MASK blink   ; Turn on     OR 1000 0000
           ;      "blink"        ; -----
           ;                      ; 1000 1001
           xor    ah,MASK intense ; Toggle     XOR 0000 1000
           ;      "intense"     ; -----
           ;                      ; 1000 0001
           ;

```

### 7.2.4.2 The WIDTH Operator

The **WIDTH** operator returns the width (in bits) of a record or record field.

## ■ Syntax

**WIDTH** { *recordfieldname* | *record* }

The *recordfieldname* may be the name of any field defined in any record. The *record* may be the name of any defined record.

Note that the width of a field is the number of bits assigned for that field; the value of the field is the starting position (from the right) of the field.

## ■ Examples

```

color          .DATA
              RECORD  blink:1,back:3,intense:1,fore:3

wblink        EQU    WIDTH blink  ; "wblink"   = 1   "blink"   = 7
wback         EQU    WIDTH back   ; "wback"   = 3   "back"    = 4
wintense      EQU    WIDTH intense; "wintense" = 1   "intense" = 3
wfore         EQU    WIDTH fore   ; "wfore"   = 3   "fore"    = 0
wcolor        EQU    WIDTH color  ; "wcolor"  = 8

prompt        color  <1,5,1,1>

              .CODE
              :
              :
              IF      (WIDTH color) GE 8 ; If color is 16 bit, load
mov            ax,prompt                ; into 16-bit register
              ELSE
              ; else
mov            al,prompt                 ; load into low 8-bit register
xor            ah,ah                     ; and clear high 8-bit register
              ENDIF

```

## 7.2.5 Using Record-Field Operands

Record-field operands represent the location of a field in its corresponding record. The operand evaluates to the bit position of the low-order bit in the field and can be used as a constant operand. The field name must be from a previously declared record.

Record-field operands are often used with the **WIDTH** and **MASK** operators, as described in Sections 7.2.4.1 and 7.2.4.2.

## ■ Example

```

color          .DATA
              RECORD  blink:1,back:3,intense:1,fore:3 ; Record declaration
cursor        color  <1,5,1,1>                       ; Record definition
              .CODE
              :
              :

```

```

; Rotate "back" of "cursor" without changing other values

mov     al,cursor      ; Load value from memory
mov     ah,al          ; Save a copy for work      1101 1001=ah/al
and     al,NOT MASK back ; Mask out old bits      and 1000 1111=mask
;           to save old cursor      -----
;                                     1000 1001=al

mov     cl,back        ; Load bit position
shr     ah,cl          ; Shift to right      0000 1101=ah
inc     ah             ; Increment      0000 1110=ah

shl     ah,cl          ; Shift left again      1110 0000=ah
and     ah,MASK back  ; Mask off extra bits  and 0111 0000=mask
;           to get new cursor      -----
;                                     0110 0000 ah
or      ah,al          ; Combine old and new   or 1000 1001 al
;                                     -----
mov     cursor,ah     ; Write back to memory      1110 1001 ah

```

This example illustrates several ways in which record fields can be used as operands and in expressions.



# CHAPTER

# 8

## CREATING PROGRAMS FROM MULTIPLE MODULES

- 8.1 Declaring Symbols Public .....160
- 8.2 Declaring Symbols External .....161
- 8.3 Using Multiple Modules .....164
- 8.4 Declaring Symbols Communal .....165
- 8.5 Specifying Library Files .....169



Most medium and large assembly-language programs are created from several source files or modules. When several modules are used, the scope of symbols becomes important. This chapter discusses the scope of symbols and explains how to declare global symbols that can be accessed from any module. It also tells you how to specify a module that will be accessed from a library.

Symbols such as labels and variable names can be either local or global in scope. By default, all symbols are local; they are specific to the source file in which they are defined. Symbols must be declared global if they must be accessed from modules other than the one in which they are defined.

To declare symbols global, they must be declared public in the source module in which they are defined. They must also be declared external in any module that must access the symbol. If the symbol represents uninitialized data, it can be declared communal—meaning that the symbol is both public and external. The **PUBLIC**, **EXTRN**, and **COMM** directives are used to declare symbols public, external, and communal, respectively.

---

### *Notes*

The term “local” has a different meaning in assembly language than in many high-level languages. Often, local symbols in compiled languages are symbols that are known only within a procedure (called a function, routine, subprogram, or subroutine, depending on the language). Local symbols of this type cannot be declared by **MASM**, although procedures can be written to allocate local symbols dynamically at run time, as described in Section 17.4.4, “Using Local Variables.”

By default, the assembler converts all lowercase letters in names declared with the **PUBLIC**, **EXTRN**, and **COMM** directives to uppercase letters before copying the name to the object file. The **/ML** and **/MX** options can be used in the **MASM** command line to direct the assembler to preserve lowercase letters when copying public and external symbols to the object file. This should be done when preparing assembler modules to be linked with modules from case-sensitive languages such as C.

---

## 8.1 Declaring Symbols Public

The **PUBLIC** directive is used to declare symbols public so that they can be accessed from other modules. If a symbol is not declared public, the symbol name is not written to the object file. The symbol has the value of its offset address during assembly, but the name and address are not available to the linker.

If the symbol is declared public, its name is associated with its offset address in the object file. During linking, symbols in different modules—but with the same name—are resolved to a single address.

Public symbol names are also used by some symbolic debuggers (such as **SYMDEB**) to associate addresses with symbols. However, variables and labels do not need to be declared public in order to be visible in the Code-View debugger.

### ■ Syntax

**PUBLIC** *name* [,*name*]...

The *name* must be the name of a variable, label, or numeric equate defined within the current source file. **PUBLIC** declarations can be placed anywhere in the source file. Equate names, if given, can only represent 1- or 2-byte integer or string values. Text macros (or text equates) cannot be declared public.

---

### Note

Although absolute symbols can be declared public, aliases for public symbols should be avoided, since they may decrease the efficiency of the linker. For example, the following statements would increase processing time for the linker:

```
lines      PUBLIC  lines      ; Declare absolute symbol public
lines      EQU    rows       ; Declare alias for lines
rows       EQU    25         ; Assign value to alias
```

---

## ■ Example

```

PUBLIC true,status,first,clear
.MODEL small
true EQU -1
.DATA
status DB 1
.CODE
.
.
first LABEL FAR
clear PROC
.
.
clear ENDP

```

## 8.2 Declaring Symbols External

If a symbol undeclared in a module must be accessed by instructions in that module, it must be declared with the **EXTRN** directive.

This directive tells the assembler not to generate an error, even though the symbol is not in the current module. The assembler assumes that the symbol occurs in another module. However, the symbol must actually exist and must be declared public in some module. Otherwise, the linker generates an error.

## ■ Syntax

**EXTRN** *name:type* [,*name:type*]...

The **EXTRN** directive defines an external variable, label, or symbol of the specified *name* and *type*. The *type* must match the type given to the item in its actual definition in some other module. It can be any one of the following:

Description	Types
Distance specifier	<b>NEAR, FAR, or PROC</b>
Size specifier	<b>BYTE, WORD, DWORD, FWORD, QWORD, or TBYTE</b>
Absolute	<b>ABS</b>

The **ABS** type is for symbols that represent constant numbers, such as equates declared with the **EQU** and **=** directives (see Section 11.1, "Using Equates").

The **PROC** type represents the default type for a procedure. For programs that use simplified segment directives, the type of an external symbol declared with **PROC** will be near for small or compact model, or far for medium, large, or huge model. Section 5.1.3, "Defining the Memory Model," tells you how to declare the memory model using the **.MODEL** directive. If full segment definitions are used, the default type represented by **PROC** is always near.

Although the actual address of an external symbol is not determined until link time, the assembler assumes a default segment for the item, based on where the **EXTRN** directive is placed in the source code. Placement of **EXTRN** directives should follow these rules.

- **NEAR** code labels (such as procedures) must be declared in the code segment from which they are accessed.
- **FAR** code labels can be declared anywhere in the source code. It may be convenient to declare them in the code segment from which they are accessed if the label may be **FAR** in one context or **NEAR** in another.
- Data must be declared in the segment in which it occurs. This may require that you define a dummy data segment for the external declaration.
- Absolute symbols can be declared anywhere in the source code.

### ■ Example 1

```

EXTRN  max:ABS,act:FAR      ; Constant or FAR label anywhere
DOSSEG
.MODEL  small
.STACK  100h
.DATA
EXTRN  nvar:BYTE           ; NEAR variable in near data
.FARDATA
EXTRN  fvar:WORD           ; FAR variable in far data

.CODE
EXTRN  task:PROC           ; PROC or NEAR in near code
start: mov  ax,@data        ; Load segment
      mov  ds,ax           ; into DS
      ASSUME es:@fardata   ; Tell assembler
      mov  ax,@fardata     ; Tell processor that ES
      mov  es,ax           ; has far data segment
      .
      .
      .

```

```

mov     ah,nvar           ; Load external NEAR variable
mov     bx,fvar           ; Load external FAR variable
mov     cx,max            ; Load external constant
call    task              ; Call procedure (NEAR or FAR)
jmp     act               ; Jump to FAR label

END     start

```

Example 1 shows how each type of external symbol could be declared and used in a small-model program that uses simplified segment directives. Notice the use of the **PROC** type specifier to make the external-procedure memory model independent. The jump and its external declaration are written so that they will be **FAR** regardless of the memory model. Using these techniques, you can change the memory model without breaking code.

## ■ Example 2

```

                                EXTRN  max:ABS,act:FAR      ; Constant or FAR label anywhere
                                DOSSEG
STACK                            SEGMENT PARA STACK 'STACK'
                                DB      100h DUP (?)
STACK                            ENDS
_DATA                            SEGMENT WORD PUBLIC 'DATA'
_DATA                            EXTRN  nvar:BYTE          ; NEAR variable in near data
_DATA                            ENDS
FAR_DATA                          SEGMENT PARA 'FAR_DATA'
FAR_DATA                          EXTRN  fvar:WORD         ; FAR variable in far data
FAR_DATA                          ENDS

DGROUP                            GROUP  _DATA,STACK
_TEXT                            SEGMENT BYTE PUBLIC 'CODE'
                                EXTRN  task:NEAR          ; NEAR procedure in near code
                                ASSUME  cs:_TEXT,ds:DGROUP,ss:DGROUP
start:                            mov    ax,DGROUP        ; Load segment
                                mov    ds,ax              ; into DS
                                ASSUME  es:FAR_DATA       ; Tell assembler
                                mov    ax,FAR_DATA       ; Tell processor that ES
                                mov    es,ax              ; has far data segment
                                .
                                .
                                .
                                mov    ah,nvar           ; Load external NEAR variable
                                mov    bx,fvar           ; Load external FAR variable
                                mov    cx,max            ; Load external constant

                                call    task              ; Call NEAR procedure

                                jmp     act               ; Jump to FAR label

_TEXT                            ENDS
                                END     start

```

Example 2 shows a fragment similar to the one in Example 2, but with full segment definitions. Notice that the types of code labels must be declared specifically. If you wanted to change the memory model, you would have to specifically change each external declaration and each call or jump.

## 8.3 Using Multiple Modules

The following source files illustrate a program that uses public and external declarations to access instruction labels. The program consists of two modules called `hello` and `display`.

The `hello` module is the program's initializing module. Execution starts at the instruction labeled `start` in the `hello` module. After initializing the data segment, the program calls the procedure `display` in the `display` module, where a DOS call is used to display a message on the screen. Execution then returns to the address after the call in the `hello` module.

The `hello` module is shown below:

```

        TITLE    hello
        DOSSEG
        .MODEL   small
        .STACK   256

        .DATA
PUBLIC  message, lmessage
message DB      "Hello, world.",13,10
lmessage EQU    $ - message

        .CODE
start:  EXTRN    display:PROC      ; Declare in near code segment
        mov     ax,@data          ; Load segment location
        mov     ds,ax            ; into DS register

        call    display          ; Call other module

        mov     ax,04CO0h        ; Terminate with exit code 0
        int     21h              ; Call DOS

        END     start           ; Start address in main module

```

The `display` module is shown below:

```

        TITLE    display
        EXTRN    lmessage:ABS     ; Declare anywhere
        .MODEL   small
        .DATA
        EXTRN    message:BYTE    ; Declare in near data segment

        .CODE
display PUBLIC  display
        PROC
        mov     bx,1              ; File handle for standard output
        mov     cx,lmessage       ; Message length
        mov     dx,OFFSET message ; Message address
        mov     ah,40h           ; Write function
        int     21h              ; Call DOS
        ret
display ENDP
        END           ; No start address in second module

```

The sample program is a variation of the `hello.asm` program used in examples in Chapter 1, “Getting Started,” except that it uses an external procedure to display to the screen. Notice that all symbols defined in one module but used in another are declared **PUBLIC** in the defining module and declared **EXTRN** in the using module.

For instance, `message` and `lmessage` are declared **PUBLIC** in `hello` and declared **EXTRN** in `display`. The procedure `display` is declared **EXTRN** in `hello` and **PUBLIC** in `display`.

To create an executable file for these modules, assemble each module separately, as in the following command lines:

```
MASM hello;  
MASM display;
```

Then link the two modules:

```
LINK hello display;
```

The result is the executable file `hello.exe`.

For each source module, **MASM** writes a module name to the object file. The module name is used by some debuggers and by the linker when it displays error messages. Starting with Version 5.0, the module name is always the base name of the source module file. With previous versions, the module name could be specified with the **NAME** or **TITLE** directive.

For compatibility, **MASM** recognizes the **NAME** directive. However, **NAME** has no effect. Arguments to the directive are ignored.

## 8.4 Declaring Symbols Communal

Communal variables are uninitialized variables that are both public and external. They are often declared in include files.

If a variable must be used by several assembly routines, you can declare the variable communal in an include file, and then include the file in each of the assembly routines. Although the variable is declared in each source module, it exists at only one address. Using a communal variable in an include file and including it in several source modules is an alternative to defining the variable and declaring it public in one source module and then declaring it external in other modules.

If a variable is declared communal in one module and public in another, the public declaration takes precedence and the communal declaration has the same effect as an external declaration.

## ■ Syntax

`COMM definition[[,definition]]...`

Each *definition* has the following syntax:

`[[NEAR | FAR]] label:size[:count]`

A communal variable can be **NEAR** or **FAR**. If neither is specified, the type will be that of the default memory model. If you use simplified segment directives, the default type is **NEAR** for small and medium models, or **FAR** for compact, large, and huge models. If you use full segment definitions the default type is **NEAR**.

The *label* is the name of the variable. The *size* can be **BYTE**, **WORD**, **DWORD**, **QWORD**, or **TBYTE**. The *count* is the number of elements. If no *count* is given, one element is assumed. Multiple variables can be defined with one **COMM** statement by separating each variable with a comma.

---

### Note

C variables declared outside functions (except static variables) are communal unless explicitly initialized; they are the same as assembly-language communal variables. If you are writing assembly-language modules for C, you can declare the same communal variables in C include files and in **MASM** include files.

---

**MASM** cannot tell whether a communal variable has been used in another module. Allocation of communal variables is handled by **LINK**. As a result, communal variables have the following limitations that other variables declared in assembly language do not have:

- Communal variables cannot be initialized. Under DOS, initial values are not guaranteed to be 0 or any other value. The variables can be used for data, such as file buffers, that are not given a value until run time.
- Communal variables are not guaranteed to be allocated in the sequence in which they are declared. Assembly-language techniques that depend on the sequence and position in which data is defined

should not be used with communal variables. For example, the following statements do not work:

```

lbuffer    COMM    buffer:WORD:128
           EQU     $ - buffer ; "lbuffer" won't have desired value

bbuffer    LABEL   BYTE           ; "bbuffer" won't have desired address
           COMM    wbuffer:WORD:128
    
```

- Placement of communal declarations follows the same rules as external declarations. They must be declared inside a data segment. Examples of near and far communal variables are shown below:

```

.DATA
COMM    NEAR nbuffer:BYTE:30
.FARDATA
COMM    FAR  fbuffer:WORD:40
    
```

- Communal variables are allocated in segments that are part of the Microsoft segment conventions. You cannot override the default to place communal variables in other segments.

Near communal variables are placed in a segment called **c\_ common**, which is part of **DGROUP**. This group is created and initialized automatically if you use simplified segment directives. If you use full segment directives, you must create a group called **DGROUP** and use the **ASSUME** directive to associate it with the **DS** register.

Far communal variables are placed in a segment called **FAR\_ BSS**. This segment has combine type private and class type 'FAR\_ BSS'. This means that multiple segments with the same name can be created. Such segments cannot be accessed by name. They must be initialized indirectly using the **SEG** operator. For example, if a far communal variable (with word size) is called **fcomvar**, its segment can be initialized with the following lines:

```

ASSUME    ds:SEG comvar           ; Tell the assembler
mov       ax,SEG comvar          ; Tell the processor
mov       ds,ax
mov       bx,comvar              ; Use the variable
    
```

### ■ Example 1

```

IF        @datasize
.FARDATA
ELSE
.DATA
ENDIF
COMM     var:WORD, buffer:BYTE:10
    
```

Example 1 creates two communal variables. The first is a word variable called **var**. The second is a 10-byte array called **buffer**. Both have the

default size associated with the memory model of the program in which they are used.

## ■ Example 2

```

        .DATA
        COMM    temp:BYTE:128

ASCIIIZ MACRO    address          ; Name of address for string
        mov     temp,128          ; Insert maximum length
        mov     dx,OFFSET temp    ; Address of string buffer
        mov     ah,0Ah            ; Get string
        int     21h              ;
        mov     dl,temp[1]        ; Get length of string
        xor     dh,dh
        mov     bx,dx
        mov     temp[bx+2],0      ; Overwrite CR with null
address EQU     OFFSET temp+2
        ENDM
    
```

Example 2 shows an include file that declares a buffer for temporary data. The buffer is then used in a macro in the same include file. An example of how the macro could be used in a source file is shown below:

```

        DOSSEG
        .MODEL  small
        INCLUDE communal.inc
        .DATA
message DB      "Enter file name: $"
        .CODE
        .
        .
        mov     dx,OFFSET message ; Load offset of file prompt
        mov     ah,09h            ; Display prompt
        int     21h

        ASCIIIZ place            ; Get file name and
                                ; return address as "place"

        mov     al,00000010b      ; Load access code
        mov     dx,place          ; Load address of ASCIIIZ string
        mov     ah,3Dh           ; Open the file
        int     21h
    
```

Note that once the macro is written, the user does not need to know the name of the temporary buffer or how it is used in the macro.

## 8.5 Specifying Library Files

The **INCLUDELIB** directive instructs the linker to link with a specified library file. If you are writing a program that calls library routines, you can use this directive to specify the library file in the assembly source file rather than in the **LINK** command line.

### ■ Syntax

**INCLUDELIB** *libraryname*

The *libraryname* is written to the comment record of the object file. The Intel title for this record is **COMENT**. At link time, the linker reads this record and links with the specified library file.

The *libraryname* must be a file name rather than a complete file specification. If you do not specify an extension, the default extension **.LIB** is assumed. **LINK** searches for the library file in the following order:

1. In the current directory
2. In any directories given in the library field of the **LINK** command line
3. In any directories listed in the **LIB** environment variable

### ■ Example

```
INCLUDELIB graphics
```

This statement passes a message from **MASM** telling **LINK** to use library routines from the file `graphics.lib`. If this statement is included in a source file called `draw`, then the program might be linked with the following command line:

```
LINK draw;
```

Without the **INCLUDELIB** directive, the program would have to be linked with the following command line:

```
LINK draw,,,graphics;
```



# CHAPTER

# 9

## USING OPERANDS AND EXPRESSIONS

9.1	Using Operands with Directives .....	173
9.2	Using Operators .....	174
9.2.1	Calculation Operators .....	174
9.2.1.1	Arithmetic Operators .....	175
9.2.1.2	Structure-Field-Name Operator .....	176
9.2.1.3	Index Operator .....	177
9.2.1.4	Shift Operators .....	178
9.2.1.5	Bitwise Logical Operators .....	179
9.2.2	Relational Operators .....	180
9.2.3	Segment-Override Operator .....	181
9.2.4	Type Operators .....	182
9.2.4.1	PTR Operator .....	182
9.2.4.2	SHORT Operator .....	183
9.2.4.3	THIS Operator .....	183
9.2.4.4	HIGH and LOW Operators .....	184
9.2.4.5	SEG Operator .....	184
9.2.4.6	OFFSET Operator .....	185
9.2.4.7	.TYPE Operator .....	186
9.2.4.8	TYPE Operator .....	187
9.2.4.9	LENGTH Operator .....	188
9.2.4.10	SIZE Operator .....	188
9.2.5	Operator Precedence .....	189
9.3	Using the Location Counter .....	190
9.4	Using Forward References .....	191
9.4.1	Forward References to Labels .....	192
9.4.2	Forward References to Variables .....	194
9.5	Strong Typing for Memory Operands .....	194



Operands are the arguments that define values to be acted on by instructions or directives. Operands can be constants, variables, expressions, or keywords, depending on the instruction or directive, and the context of the statement.

A common type of operand is an expression. An expression consists of several operands that are combined to describe a value or memory location. Operators indicate the operations to be performed when combining the operands of an expression.

Expressions are evaluated at assembly time. By using expressions, you can instruct the assembler to calculate values that would be difficult or inconvenient to calculate when you are writing source code.

This chapter discusses operands, expressions, and operators as they are evaluated at assembly time. See Chapter 14, “Using Addressing Modes,” for a discussion of the addressing modes that can be used to calculate operand values at run time. This chapter also discusses the location-counter operand, forward references, and strong typing of operands.

## 9.1 Using Operands with Directives

Each directive requires a specific type of operand. Most directives take string or numeric constants, or symbols or expressions that evaluate to such constants.

The type of operand varies for each directive, but the operand must always evaluate to a value that is known at assembly time. This differs from instructions, whose operands may not be known at assembly time and may vary at run time. Operands used with instructions are discussed in Chapter 14, “Using Addressing Modes.”

Some directives, such as those used in data declarations, accept labels or variables as operands. When a symbol that refers to a memory location is used as an operand to a directive, the symbol represents the address of the symbol rather than its contents. This is because the contents may change at run time and are therefore not known at assembly time.

### ■ Example 1

```

var          ORG      100h          ; Set address to 100h
            DB       10h          ; Address of "var" is 100h
            ; Value of "var" is 10h
pvar        DW       var          ; Address of "pvar" is 101h
            ; Value of "pvar" is
            ;   address of "var" (100h)

```

In Example 1, the operand of the **DW** directive in the third statement represents the address of `var` (100h) rather than its contents (10h). The address is relative to the start of the segment in which `var` is defined.

## ■ Example 2

```

TEXT      TITLE    doit                ; String
          SEGMENT BYTE PUBLIC 'CODE'  ; Key words
          INCLUDE  \include\bios.inc  ; Pathname
          .RADIX  16                  ; Numeric constant
tst       DW      a / b                ; Numeric expression
          PAGE    +                    ; Special character
sum       EQU    x * y                 ; Numeric expression
here     LABEL   WORD                  ; Type specifier

```

Example 2 illustrates the different kinds of values that can be used as directive operands.

## 9.2 Using Operators

The assembler provides a variety of operators for combining, comparing, changing, or analyzing operands. Some operators work with integer constants, some with memory values, and some with both. Operators cannot be used with floating-point constants since **MASM** does not recognize real numbers in expressions.

It is important to understand the difference between operators and instructions. Operators handle calculations of constant values that are known at assembly time. Instructions handle calculations of values that may not be known until run time. For example, the addition operator (+) handles assembly-time addition, while the **ADD** and **ADC** instructions handle run-time addition.

This section describes the different kinds of operators used in assembly-language statements and gives examples of expressions formed with them. In addition to the operators described in this chapter, you can use the **DUP** operator (Section 6.3.2, “Arrays and Buffers”) the record operators (Section 7.2.5, “Using Record-Field Operands”), and the macro operators (Section 11.4, “Using Macro Operators”).

### 9.2.1 Calculation Operators

**MASM** provides the common arithmetic operators as well as several other operators for adding, shifting, or doing bit manipulations. The sections below describe operators that can be used for doing numeric calculations.

---

*Note*

Constant values used with calculation operators are extended to 33 bits before the calculations are done. This rule applies regardless of the processor used. Exceptions are noted to this rule.

---

**9.2.1.1 Arithmetic Operators**

MASM recognizes a variety of arithmetic operators for common mathematical operations. Table 9.1 lists the arithmetic operators.

**Table 9.1**  
**Arithmetic Operators**

<b>Operator</b>	<b>Syntax</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
+	<i>+expression</i>	Positive (unary)
-	<i>-expression</i>	Negative (unary)
*	<i>expression1*expression2</i>	Multiplication
/	<i>expression1/expression2</i>	Integer division
<b>MOD</b>	<i>expression1MODexpression2</i>	Remainder (modulus)
+	<i>expression1+expression2</i>	Addition
-	<i>expression1-expression2</i>	Subtraction

For all arithmetic operators except the addition operator (+) and the subtraction operator (-), the expressions operated on must be integer constants.

The addition and subtraction operators can be used to add or subtract an integer constant and a memory operand. The result can be used as a memory operand.

The subtraction operator can also be used to subtract one memory operand from another, but only if the operands refer to locations within the same segment. The result will be a constant, not a memory operand.

---

*Note*

The unary plus and minus (used to designate positive or negative numbers) are not the same as the binary plus and minus (used to

designate addition or subtraction). The unary plus and minus have a higher level of precedence, as described in Section 9.2.5, "Operator Precedence."

### ■ Example 1

```

intgr      =      14 * 3          ; = 42
intgr      =      intgr / 4      ; 42 / 4 = 10
intgr      =      intgr MOD 4    ; 10 mod 4 = 2
intgr      =      intgr + 4      ; 2 + 4 = 6
intgr      =      intgr - 3      ; 6 - 3 = 3
intgr      =      -intgr - 8     ; -3 - 8 = -11
intgr      =      -intgr - intgr ; -11 - 11 = 22

```

Example 1 illustrates arithmetic operators used in integer expressions.

### ■ Example 2

```

a          ORG      100h
a          DB      ?          ; Address is 100h
b          DB      ?          ; Address is 101h
mem1       EQU      a + 5     ; mem1 = 100h + 5 = 105h
mem2       EQU      a - 5     ; mem2 = 100h - 5 = 0FBh
const     EQU      b - a     ; const = 101h - 100h = 1

```

Example 2 illustrates arithmetic operators used in memory expressions.

## 9.2.1.2 Structure-Field-Name Operator

The structure-field-name operator (.) indicates addition. It is used to designate a field within a structure.

### ■ Syntax

*variable.field*

The *variable* is a memory operand (usually a previously declared structure variable) and *field* is the name of a field within the structure. See Section 7.1, "Structures," for more information.

### ■ Example

```

.DATA
date      STRUC                ; Declare structure
month     DB      ?
day       DB      ?
year      DW      ?
date      ENDS
yesterday date    <12,31,1987> ; Define structure variables
today     date    <1,1,1988>

.CODE
.
.
.
mov      bh,yesterday.day    ; Load structure variable

mov      bx,OFFSET today     ; Load structure variable address
inc      [bx].year           ; Use in indirect memory operand

```

#### 9.2.1.3 Index Operator

The index operator ([ ]) indicates addition. It is similar to the addition (+) operator.

### ■ Syntax

`[[expression1]][expression2]`

In most cases *expression1* is simply added to *expression2*. The limitations of the addition operator for adding memory operands also apply to the index operator. For example, two direct memory operands cannot be added. The expression `label1[label2]` is illegal if both are memory operands.

The index operator has an extended function in specifying indirect memory operands. Section 14.3.2, “Indirect Memory Operands,” explains the use of indirect memory operands. The index brackets must be outside the register or registers that specify the indirect displacement. However, any of the three operators that indicate addition (the addition operator, the index operator, or the structure-field-name operator) may be used for multiple additions within the expression.

For example, the following statements are equivalent:

```

mov      ax,table[bx][di]
mov      ax,table[bx+di]
mov      ax,[table+bx+di]
mov      ax,[table][bx][di]

```

The following statements are illegal because the index operator does not enclose the registers that specify indirect displacement:

```

mov    ax,table+bx+di    ; Illegal - no index operator
mov    ax,[table]+bx+di ; Illegal - registers not
                        ; inside index operator

```

The index operator is typically used to index elements of a data object, such as variables in an array or characters in a string.

### ■ Example 1

```

mov    al,string[3]      ; Get 4th element of string
add    ax,array[4]      ; Add 5th element of array
mov    string[7],al     ; Load into 8th element of string

```

Example 1 illustrates the index operator used with direct memory operands.

### ■ Example 2

```

mov    ax,[bx]           ; Get element BX points to
add    ax,array[si]     ; Add element SI points to
mov    string[di],al    ; Load element DI points to
cmp    cx,table[bx][di] ; Compare to element BX and DI
                        ; point to

```

Example 2 illustrates the index operator used with indirect memory operands.

## 9.2.1.4 Shift Operators

The **SHR** and **SHL** operators can be used to shift bits in constant values. Both perform logical shifts. Bits on the right for **SHL** and on the left for **SHR** are zero-filled as their contents are shifted out of position.

### ■ Syntax

*expression* **SHR** *count*  
*expression* **SHL** *count*

The *expression* is shifted right or left by *count* number of bits. Bits shifted off either end of the expression are lost. If *count* is greater than or equal to 16 (32 on the 80386), the result is 0.

Do not confuse the **SHR** and **SHL** operators with the processor instructions having the same names. The operators work on integer constants only at assembly time. The processor instructions work on register or memory values at run time. The assembler can tell the difference between instructions and operands from context.

## ■ Examples

```

mov     ax,01110111b SHL 3 ; Load 01110111000b
mov     ah,01110111b SHR 3 ; Load 01110b

```

### 9.2.1.5 Bitwise Logical Operators

The bitwise operators perform logical operations on each bit of an expression. The expressions must resolve to constant values. Table 9.2 lists the logical operators and their meanings.

**Table 9.2**  
**Logical Operators**

Operator	Syntax	Meaning
NOT	NOT <i>expression</i>	Bitwise complement
AND	<i>expression1</i> AND <i>expression2</i>	Bitwise AND
OR	<i>expression1</i> OR <i>expression2</i>	Bitwise inclusive OR
XOR	<i>expression1</i> XOR <i>expression2</i>	Bitwise exclusive OR

Do not confuse the **NOT**, **AND**, **OR**, and **XOR** operators with the processor instructions having the same names. The operators work on integer constants only at assembly time. The processor instructions work on register or memory values at run time. The assembler can tell the difference between instructions and operands from context.

#### Note

Although calculations on expressions using the **AND**, **OR**, and **XOR** operators are done using 33-bit numbers, the results are truncated to 32 bits. Calculations on expressions using the **NOT** operator are truncated to 16 bits (except on the 80386).

## ■ Examples

```

mov     ax,NOT 11110000b           ; Load 1111111100001111b
mov     ah,NOT 11110000b           ; Load 00001111b
mov     ah,01010101b AND 11110000b ; Load 01010000b
mov     ah,01010101b OR  11110000b ; Load 11110101b
mov     ah,01010101b XOR 11110000b ; Load 10100101b

```

## 9.2.2 Relational Operators

The relational operators compare two expressions and return true (-1) if the condition specified by the operator is satisfied, or false (0) if it is not. The expressions must resolve to constant values. Relational operators are typically used with conditional directives. Table 9.3 lists the operators and the values they return if the specified condition is satisfied.

**Table 9.3**  
**Relational Operators**

Operator	Syntax	Returned Value
<b>EQ</b>	<i>expression1 EQ expression2</i>	True if expressions are equal
<b>NE</b>	<i>expression1 NE expression2</i>	True if expressions are not equal
<b>LT</b>	<i>expression1 LT expression2</i>	True if left expression is less than right
<b>LE</b>	<i>expression1 LE expression2</i>	True if left expression is less than or equal to right
<b>GT</b>	<i>expression1 GT expression2</i>	True if left expression is greater than right
<b>GE</b>	<i>expression1 GE expression2</i>	True if left expression is greater than or equal to right

### Note

The **EQ** and **NE** operators treat their arguments as 32-bit numbers. Numbers specified with the 32nd bit set are considered negative. For example, the expression `-1 EQ 0FFFFFFFFh` is true, but the expression `-1 NE 0FFFFFFFFh` is false.

The **LT**, **LE**, **GT**, and **GE** operators treat their arguments as 33-bit numbers, in which the 33rd bit specifies the sign. For example, `0FFFFFFFFh` is 4,294,967,295, not -1. The expression `1 GT -1` is true, but the expression `1 GT 0FFFFFFFFh` is false.

## ■ Examples

```
mov    ax,4 EQ 3 ; Load false ( 0)
mov    ax,4 NE 3 ; Load true  (-1)
mov    ax,4 LT 3 ; Load false ( 0)
mov    ax,4 LE 3 ; Load false ( 0)
mov    ax,4 GT 3 ; Load true  (-1)
mov    ax,4 GE 3 ; Load true  (-1)
```

## 9.2.3 Segment-Override Operator

The segment-override operator (**:**) forces the address of a variable or label to be computed relative to a specific segment.

### ■ Syntax

*segment:expression*

The *segment* can be specified in several ways. It can be one of the segment registers: **CS**, **DS**, **SS**, or **ES** (or **FS** or **GS** on the 80386). It can also be a segment or group name. In this case, the name must have been previously defined with a **SEGMENT** or **GROUP** directive and assigned to a segment register with an **ASSUME** directive. The expression can be a constant, expression, or a **SEG** expression. See Section 9.2.4.5 for more information on the **SEG** operator.

---

### Note

When a segment override is given with an indexed operand, the segment must be specified outside the index operators. For example, **es:[di]** is correct, but **[es:di]** generates an error.

---

## ■ Examples

```
mov    ax,ss:[bx+4] ; Override default assume (DS)
mov    al,es:082h   ; Load from ES

ASSUME ds:FAR_DATA ; Tell the assembler and
mov    bx,FAR_DATA:count ; load from a far segment
```

As shown in the last two statements, a segment override with a segment name is not enough if no segment register is assumed for the segment name. You must use the **ASSUME** statement to assign a segment register, as explained in Section 5.4, “Associating Segments with Registers.”

## 9.2.4 Type Operators

This section describes the assembler operators that specify or analyze the types of memory operands and other expressions.

### 9.2.4.1 PTR Operator

The **PTR** operator specifies the type for a variable or label.

#### ■ Syntax

*type* **PTR** *expression*

The operator forces *expression* to be treated as having *type*. The *expression* can be any operand. The *type* can be **BYTE**, **WORD**, **DWORD**, **QWORD**, or **TBYTE** for memory operands. It can be **NEAR**, **FAR**, or **PROC** for labels.

The **PTR** operator is typically used with forward references to define explicitly what size or distance a reference has. If it is not used, the assembler assumes a default size or distance for the reference. See Section 9.4 for more information on forward references.

The **PTR** operator is also used to enable instructions to access variables in ways that would otherwise generate errors. For example, you could use the **PTR** operator to access the high-order byte of a **WORD** size variable. The **PTR** operator is required for **FAR** calls and jumps to forward-referenced labels.

#### ■ Example 1

```

stuff      .DATA
           DD      ?
buffer    DB      20 DUP (?)

           .CODE
           .
           .
           call    FAR PTR task          ; Call a far procedure
           jmp     FAR PTR place        ; Jump far

           mov     bx,WORD PTR stuff[0] ; Load a word from a
                                           ; doubleword variable
           add     ax,WORD PTR buffer[bx] ; Add a word from a
                                           ; byte variable

```

### 9.2.4.2 SHORT Operator

The **SHORT** operator sets the type of a specified label to **SHORT**. Short labels can be used in **JMP** instructions whenever the distance from the label to the instruction is less than 128 bytes.

#### ■ Syntax

**SHORT** *label*

Instructions using short labels are a byte smaller than identical instructions using the default near labels. See Section 9.4.1, “Forward Reference to Labels,” for information on using the **SHORT** operator with jump instructions.

#### ■ Example

```

        jmp     again           ; Jump 128 bytes or more
        .
        .
        jmp     SHORT again    ; Jump less than 128 bytes
        .
        .
again:

```

### 9.2.4.3 THIS Operator

The **THIS** operator creates an operand whose offset and segment values are equal to the current location-counter value and whose type is specified by the operator.

#### ■ Syntax

**THIS** *type*

The *type* can be **BYTE**, **WORD**, **DWORD**, **FWORD**, **QWORD**, or **TBYTE** for memory operands. It can be **NEAR**, **FAR**, or **PROC** for labels.

The **THIS** operator is typically used with the **EQU** or equal-sign (=) directive to create labels and variables. The result is similar to using the **LABEL** directive.

## ■ Examples

```

tag1      EQU      THIS BYTE ; Both represent the same variable
tag2      LABEL    BYTE

check1    EQU      THIS NEAR ; All represent the same address
check2    LABEL    NEAR
check3:
check4    PROC     NEAR
check4    ENDP
    
```

### 9.2.4.4 HIGH and LOW Operators

The **HIGH** and **LOW** operators return the high and low bytes, respectively, of an expression.

## ■ Syntax

**HIGH** *expression*  
**LOW** *expression*

The **HIGH** operator returns the high-order eight bits of *expression*; the **LOW** operator returns the low-order eight bits. The *expression* must evaluate to a constant. You cannot use the **HIGH** and **LOW** operators on the contents of a memory operand since the contents may change at run time.

## ■ Examples

```

stuff     EQU      OABCDh
          mov      ah,HIGH stuff      ; Load OABh
          mov      al,LOW stuff       ; Load OCDh
    
```

### 9.2.4.5 SEG Operator

The **SEG** operator returns the segment address of an expression.

## ■ Syntax

**SEG** *expression*

The *expression* can be any label, variable, segment name, group name, or other memory operand. The **SEG** operator cannot be used with constant expressions. The returned value can be used as a memory operand.

## ■ Examples

```

var          .DATA
            DB      ?
            .CODE
            .
            .
            mov     ax,SEG var          ; Get address of segment
            ASSUME ds:SEG var          ; where variable is declared
            ; Assume segment of variable

```

### 9.2.4.6 OFFSET Operator

The **OFFSET** operator returns the offset address of an expression.

## ■ Syntax

**OFFSET** *expression*

The *expression* can be any label, variable, or other direct memory operand. Constant expressions return meaningless values. The value returned by the **OFFSET** operand is an immediate (constant) operand.

If simplified segment directives are given, the returned value varies. If the item is declared in a near data segment, the returned value is the number of bytes between the item and the beginning of its group (normally **DGROUP**). If the item is declared in a far segment, the returned value is the number of bytes between the item and the beginning of the segment.

If full segment definitions are given, the returned value is a memory operand equal to the number of bytes between the item and the beginning of the segment in which it is defined.

The segment-override operator (**:**) can be used to force **OFFSET** to return the number of bytes between the item in *expression* and the beginning of a named segment or group. This is the method used to generate valid offsets for items in a group when full segment definitions are used. For example, the statement

```
mov     bx,OFFSET DGROUP:array
```

is not the same as

```
mov     bx,OFFSET array
```

if `array` is not the first segment in `DGROUP`.

## ■ Examples

```

string    .DATA
          DB    "This is it."
          .CODE
          .
          .
          mov    dx,OFFSET string    ; Load offset of variable

```

### 9.2.4.7 .TYPE Operator

The **.TYPE** operator returns a byte that defines the mode and scope of an expression.

## ■ Syntax

**.TYPE** *expression*

If the *expression* is not valid, **.TYPE** returns 0. Otherwise **.TYPE** returns a byte having the bit setting shown in Table 9.4. Only bits 0, 1, 5, and 7 are affected. Other bits are always 0.

**Table 9.4**  
**.TYPE Operator and Variable Attributes**

Bit Position	If Bit = 0	If Bit = 1
0	Not program related	Program related
1	Not data related	Data related
5	Not defined	Defined
7	Local or public scope	External scope

The **.TYPE** operator is typically used in macros in which different kinds of arguments may need to be handled differently.

## ■ Example

```

display  MACRO    string
          IF      ((.TYPE string) SHL 14) NE 8000h
          IF2
          %OUT    Argument must be a variable
          ENDIF
          ENDIF
          mov     dx,OFFSET string
          mov     ah,09h
          int     21h
          ENDM

```

This macro checks to see if the argument passed to it is data related (a variable). It does this by shifting all bits except the relevant bits (1 and 0) left so that they can be checked. If the data bit is not set, an error message is generated.

#### 9.2.4.8 TYPE Operator

The **TYPE** operator returns a number that represents the type of an expression.

##### ■ Syntax

**TYPE** *expression*

If *expression* evaluates to a variable, the operator returns the number of bytes in each data object in the variable. Each byte in a string is considered a separate data object, so the **TYPE** operator returns 1 for strings.

If *expression* evaluates to a structure or structure variable, the operator returns the number of bytes in the structure. If *expression* is a label, the operator returns 0FFFFh for **NEAR** labels and 0FFFEh for **FAR** labels. If *expression* is a constant, the operator returns 0.

The returned value can be used to specify the type for a **PTR** operator.

##### ■ Examples

```

var          .DATA
            DW      ?
array        DD      10 DUP (?)
str          DB      "This is a test"
            .CODE
            .
            .
            mov     ax,TYPE var           ; Puts 2 in AX
            mov     bx,TYPE array        ; Puts 4 in BX
            mov     cx,TYPE str          ; Puts 1 in CX
            jmp     (TYPE room) PTR room ; Jump is near or far,
            .                               ; depending on memory model
            .
room         LABEL  PROC

```

### 9.2.4.9 LENGTH Operator

The **LENGTH** operator returns the number of data elements in an array or other variable defined with the **DUP** operator.

#### ■ Syntax

**LENGTH** *variable*

The returned value is the number of elements of the declared size in the variable. If the variable was declared with nested **DUP** operators, only the value given for the outer **DUP** operator is returned. If the variable was not declared with the **DUP** operator, the value returned is always 1.

#### ■ Examples

```
array      DD      100 DUP (OFFFFFFh)
table     DW      100 DUP (1,10 DUP (?))
string    DB      'This is a string'
var       DT      ?
larray    EQU     LENGTH array      ; 100 - number of elements
ltable    EQU     LENGTH table      ; 100 - inner DUP not counted
lstring   EQU     LENGTH string     ; 1 - string is one element
lvar      EQU     LENGTH var        ; 1
.
.
.
again:    mov     cx,LENGTH array    ; Load number of elements
.         .                         ; Perform some operation on
.         .                         ; each element
.
loop     again
```

### 9.2.4.10 SIZE Operator

The **SIZE** operator returns the total number of bytes allocated for an array or other variable defined with the **DUP** operator.

## ■ Syntax

**SIZE** *variable*

The returned value is equal to the value of **LENGTH** *variable* times the value of **TYPE** *variable*. If the variable was declared with nested **DUP** operators, only the value given for the outside **DUP** operator is considered. If the variable was not declared with the **DUP** operator, the value returned is always **TYPE** *variable*.

## ■ Example

```

array      DD      100 DUP(1)
table     DW      100 DUP(1,10 DUP(?))
string    DB      'This is a string'
var       DT      ?
sarray    EQU     SIZE array          ; 400 - elements times size
stable    EQU     SIZE table          ; 200 - inner DUP ignored
sstring   EQU     SIZE string        ; 1 - string is one element
svar      EQU     SIZE var           ; 10 - bytes in variable
.
.
.
again:    mov     cx,SIZE array       ; Load number of bytes
.         .         .               ; Perform some operation on
.         .         .               ;   each byte
.
loop     again

```

## 9.2.5 Operator Precedence

Expressions are evaluated according to the following rules:

- Operations of highest precedence are performed first.
- Operations of equal precedence are performed from left to right.
- The order of evaluation can be overridden by using parentheses. Operations in parentheses are always performed before any adjacent operations.

The order of precedence for all operators is listed in Table 9.5. Operators on the same line have equal precedence.

**Table 9.5**  
**Operator Precedence**

Precedence	Operators
(Highest)	
1	LENGTH, SIZE, WIDTH, MASK, (), [], <>
2	. (structure-field-name operator)
3	:
4	PTR, OFFSET, SEG, TYPE, THIS
5	HIGH, LOW
6	+, - (unary)
7	*, /, MOD, SHL, SHR
8	+, - (binary)
9	EQ, NE, LT, LE, GT, GE
10	NOT
11	AND
12	OR, XOR
13	SHORT, .TYPE
(Lowest)	

### ■ Examples

```

a      EQU      8 / 4 * 2          ; Equals 4
b      EQU      8 / (4 * 2)       ; Equals 1
c      EQU      8 + 4 * 2        ; Equals 16
d      EQU      (8 + 4) * 2      ; Equals 24
e      EQU      8 OR 4 AND 2     ; Equals 8
f      EQU      (8 OR 4) AND 3   ; Equals 0

```

## 9.3 Using the Location Counter

The location counter is a special operand that, during assembly, represents the address of the statement currently being assembled. At assembly time, the location counter keeps changing, but when used in source code it resolves to a constant representing an address.

The location counter has the same attributes as a near label. It represents an offset that is relative to the current segment and is equal to the number of bytes generated for the segment to that point.

### ■ Example 1

```
string      DB      "Who wants to count every byte in a string, "
            DB      "especially if you might change it later."
lstring     EQU     $-string ; Let the assembler do it
```

Example 1 shows one way of using the location-counter operand in expressions relating to data.

### ■ Example 2

```
                cmp     ax,bx
                jl      shortjump ; If ax < bx, go to "shortjump"
                .       ;     else if ax >= bx, continue
                .
shortjump:     .

                cmp     ax,bx
                jge     $+5       ; If ax >= bx, continue
                jmp     longjump  ;     else if ax < bx, go to "longjump"
                .       ; This is "$+5"
                .
longjump:     .
```

Example 2 illustrates how you can use the location counter to do conditional jumps of more than 128 bytes. The first part shows the normal way of coding jumps of less than 128 bytes, and the second part shows how to code the same jump when the label is more than 128 bytes away.

## 9.4 Using Forward References

The assembler permits you to refer to labels, variable names, segment names, and other symbols before they are declared in the source code. Such references are called forward references.

The assembler handles forward references by making assumptions about them on the first pass and then attempting to correct the assumptions, if necessary, on the second pass. Checking and correcting assumptions on the second pass takes processing time, so source code with forward references assembles more slowly than source code with no forward references.

In addition, the assembler may make incorrect assumptions that it cannot correct, or corrects at a cost in program efficiency.

## 9.4.1 Forward References to Labels

Forward references to labels may result in incorrect or inefficient code.

In the statement below, the label `target` is a forward reference:

```

        jmp     target           ; Generates 3 bytes
        .           ;   in 16-bit segment
        .
target:

```

Since the assembler processes source files sequentially, `target` is unknown when it is first encountered. Assuming 16-bit segments, it could be one of three types: short (–128 to 127 bytes from the jump), near (–32,768 to 32,767 bytes from the jump), or far (in a different segment than the jump). **MASM** assumes that `target` is a near label, and assembles the number of bytes necessary to specify a near label: one byte for the instruction and two bytes for the operand.

If on the second pass the assembler learns that `target` is a short label, it will need only two bytes: one for the instruction and one for the operand. However, it will not be able to change its previous assembly and the three-byte version of the assembly will stand. If the assembler learns that `target` is a far label, it will need five bytes. Since it can't make this adjustment, it will generate a phase error.

You can override the assembler's assumptions by specifying the exact size of the jump. For example, if you know that a **JMP** instruction refers to a label less than 128 bytes from the jump, you can use the **SHORT** operator, as shown below:

```

        jmp     SHORT target    ; Generates 2 bytes
        .           ;   in 16-bit segment
        .
target:

```

Using the **SHORT** operator makes the code smaller and slightly faster. If the assembler has to use the three-byte form when the two-byte form would be acceptable, it will generate a warning message if the warning level is 2. (The warning level can be set with the **/W** option, as described in Section 2.4.13.) You can ignore the warning, or you can go back to the source code and change the code to eliminate the forward references.

*Note*

The **SHORT** operator in the example above would not be needed if target were located before the jump. The assembler would have already processed target and would be able to make adjustments based on its distance.

If you use the **SHORT** operator when the label being jumped to is more than 128 bytes away, **MASM** generates an error message. You can either remove the **SHORT** operator, or try to reorganize your program to reduce the distance.

If a far jump to a forward-referenced label is required, you must override the assembler's assumptions with the **FAR** and **PTR** operators, as shown below:

```

        jmp     FAR PTR target      ; Generates 5 bytes
        .      ; in 16-bit segment
        .
target:      ; In different segment

```

If the type of a label has been established earlier in the source code with an **EXTRN** directive, the type does not need to be specified in the jump statement.

### ■ 80386 Only

If the 80386 processor is enabled, jumps with forward references have different limitations. One difference is that conditional jumps can be either short or near. With previous processors, all conditional jumps were short. For 32-bit segments, the number of bytes generated for near and far jumps is greater in order to handle the larger addresses in the operand.

### ■ Example 1

```

.MODEL   large          ; Model comes first, so use
.386     ; 16-bit segments
.CODE
.
.
jmp     SHORT place     ; Short unconditional jump - 2 bytes
jne     SHORT place     ; Short conditional jump - 2 bytes
jmp     place           ; Near unconditional jump - 3 bytes
jne     place           ; Near conditional jump - 4 bytes
jmp     FAR PTR place   ; Far unconditional jump - 5 bytes

```

## ■ Example 2

```

.386                ; .386 comes first, so use
.MODEL large       ; 32-bit segments
.CODE
.
.
jmp SHORT place    ; Short unconditional jump - 2 bytes
jne SHORT place    ; Short conditional jump - 2 bytes
jmp place          ; Near unconditional jump - 5 bytes
jne place          ; Near conditional jump - 6 bytes
jmp FAR PTR place  ; Far unconditional jump - 7 bytes

```

### 9.4.2 Forward References to Variables

When **MASM** encounters code referencing variables that have not yet been defined in Pass 1, it makes assumptions about the segment where the variable will be defined. If on Pass 2 the assumptions turn out to be wrong, an error will occur.

These problems usually occur with complex segment structures that do not follow the Microsoft segment conventions. The problems never appear if simplified segment directives are used.

By default, **MASM** assumes that variables are referenced to the **DS** register. If a statement must access a variable in a segment not associated with the **DS** register, and if the variable has not been defined earlier in the source code, you must use the segment-override operator to specify the segment.

The situation is different if neither the variable nor the segment in which it is defined has been defined earlier in the source code. In this case, you must assign the segment to a group earlier in the source code. **MASM** will then know about the existence of the segment even though it has not yet been defined.

## 9.5 Strong Typing for Memory Operands

The assembler carries out strict syntax checks for all instruction statements, including strong typing for operands that refer to memory locations. This means that when an instruction uses two operands with implied data types, the operand types must match. Warning messages are generated for nonmatching types.

For example, in the following fragment, the variable `string` is incorrectly used in a move instruction:

```
string      .DATA
            DB      "A message."
            .CODE
            .
            .
            mov     ax,string[1]
```

The **AX** register has **WORD** type, but `string` has **BYTE** type. Therefore, the statement generates warning message 37:

Operand types must match

To avoid all ambiguity and prevent the warning error, use the **PTR** operator to override the variable's type, as shown below:

```
mov     ax,WORD PTR string[1]
```

You can ignore the warnings if you are willing to trust the assembler's assumptions. When a register and memory operand are mixed, the assembler assumes that the register operand is always the correct size. For example, in the statement

```
mov     ax,string[1]
```

the assembler assumes that the programmer wishes the word size of the register to override the byte size of the variable. A word starting at `string[1]` will be moved into **AX**. In the statement

```
mov     string[1],ax
```

the assembler assumes that the programmer wishes to move the word value in **AX** into the word starting at `string[1]`. However, the assembler's assumptions are not always as clear as in these examples. You should not ignore warnings about type mismatches unless you are sure you understand how your code will be assembled.

---

### *Note*

Some assemblers (including early versions of the IBM Macro Assembler) do not do strict type checking. For compatibility with these assemblers, type errors are warnings rather than severe errors. Many assembly-language program listings in books and magazines are written for assemblers with weak type checking. Such programs may produce warning messages, but assemble correctly. You can use the **/W** option to turn off type warnings if you are sure the code is correct.

---



# CHAPTER

# 10

## ASSEMBLING CONDITIONALLY

10.1	Using Conditional-Assembly Directives.....	199
10.1.1	Testing Expressions with IF and IFE Directives .....	200
10.1.2	Testing the Pass with IF1 and IF2 Directives .....	201
10.1.3	Testing Symbol Definition with IFDEF and IFNDEF Directives .....	201
10.1.4	Verifying Macro Parameters with IFB and IFNB Directives.....	202
10.1.5	Comparing Macro Arguments with IFIDN and IFDIF Directives .....	203
10.2	Using Conditional-Error Directives .....	204
10.2.1	Generating Unconditional Errors with .ERR, .ERR1, and .ERR2 .....	205
10.2.2	Testing Expressions with .ERRE or .ERRNZ Directives .....	206
10.2.3	Verifying Symbol Definition with .ERRDEF and .ERRNDEF Directives..	207
10.2.4	Testing for Macro Parameters with .ERRB and .ERRNB Directives.....	207
10.2.5	Comparing Macro Arguments with .ERRIDN and .ERRDIF Directives .....	208



The Macro Assembler provides two types of conditional directives, conditional-assembly and conditional-error directives. Conditional-assembly directives test for a specified condition and assemble a block of statements if the condition is true. Conditional-error directives test for a specified condition and generate an assembly error if the condition is true.

Both kinds of conditional directives test assembly-time conditions. They cannot test run-time conditions. Only expressions that evaluate to constants during assembly can be compared or tested.

Since macros and conditional-assembly directives are often used together, you may need to refer to Chapter 11, “Using Equates, Macros, and Repeat Blocks,” to understand some of the examples in this chapter. In particular, conditional directives are frequently used with the special macro operators described in Section 11.4, “Using Macro Operators.”

## 10.1 Using Conditional-Assembly Directives

The conditional-assembly directives include the following:

<b>IF</b>	<b>IFDEF</b>	<b>IFNB</b>
<b>IF1</b>	<b>IFDIF</b>	<b>IFNDEF</b>
<b>IF2</b>	<b>IFE</b>	<b>ENDIF</b>
<b>IFB</b>	<b>IFIDN</b>	<b>ELSE</b>

The **IF** directives and the **ENDIF** and **ELSE** directives can be used to enclose the statements to be considered for conditional assembly.

### ■ Syntax

```
IF condition  
statements  
[[ELSE  
statements]  
ENDIF
```

The *statements* following the **IF** directive can be any valid statements, including other conditional blocks. The **ELSE** directive and its *statements* are optional. **ENDIF** ends the block.

The statements in the conditional block are assembled only if the condition specified by the corresponding **IF** statement is satisfied. If the conditional block contains an **ELSE** directive, only the statements up to the **ELSE** directive are assembled. The statements that follow the **ELSE** directive are assembled only if the **IF** statement is not met. An **ENDIF** directive must mark the end of any conditional-assembly block. No more than one **ELSE** directive is allowed for each **IF** statement.

**IF** statements can be nested up to 255 levels. A nested **ELSE** directive always belongs to the nearest preceding **IF** statement that does not have its own **ELSE**.

### 10.1.1 Testing Expressions with **IF** and **IFE** Directives

The **IF** and **IFE** directives test the value of an expression and grant assembly based on the result.

#### ■ Syntax

**IF** *expression*  
**IFE** *expression*

The **IF** directive grants assembly if the value of *expression* is true (nonzero). The **IFE** directive grants assembly if the value of *expression* is false (0). The *expression* must resolve to a constant value and must not contain forward references.

#### ■ Example

```
IF      debug GT 20
push   debug
call   adebug
ELSE
call   bdebug
ENDIF
```

In this example, a different debug routine will be called, depending on the value of `debug`.

## 10.1.2 Testing the Pass with IF1 and IF2 Directives

The **IF1** and **IF2** directives test the current assembly pass and grant assembly only on the pass specified by the directive. Multiple passes of the assembler are discussed in Section 2.5.7, “Reading a Pass 1 Listing.”

### ■ Syntax

**IF1**  
**IF2**

The **IF1** directive grants assembly only on Pass 1. **IF2** grants assembly only on Pass 2. The directives take no arguments.

Macros usually only need to be processed once. You can enclose blocks of macros in **IF1** blocks to prevent them from being reprocessed on the second pass.

### ■ Example

```
dostuff      IF1      ; Define on first pass only
              MACRO   argument
              .
              .
              ENDM
              ENDF
```

## 10.1.3 Testing Symbol Definition with IFDEF and IFNDEF Directives

The **IFDEF** and **IFNDEF** directives test whether or not a symbol has been defined and grant assembly based on the result.

### ■ Syntax

**IFDEF** *name*  
**IFNDEF** *name*

The **IFDEF** directive grants assembly only if *name* is a defined label, variable, or symbol. The **IFNDEF** directive grants assembly if *name* has not yet been defined.

The name can be any valid name. Note that if *name* is a forward reference, it is considered undefined on Pass 1, but defined on Pass 2.

### ■ Example

```
buff          IFDEF  buffer
              DB     buffer DUP(?)
              ENDEF
```

In this example, `buff` is allocated only if `buffer` has been previously defined.

One way to use this conditional block is to leave `buffer` undefined in the source file and define it if needed by using the `/Dsymbol` option (see Section 2.4.4, “Defining Assembler Symbols.”) when you start **MASM**. For example, if the conditional block is in `test.asm`, you could start the assembler with the following command line:

```
MASM /Dbuffer=1024 test;
```

The command line would define the symbol `buffer`; as a result, the conditional assemble would allocate `buff`. However, if you didn't need `buff`, you could use the following command line:

```
MASM test;
```

## 10.1.4 Verifying Macro Parameters with IFB and IFNB Directives

The **IFB** and **IFNB** directives test to see if a specified argument was passed to a macro and grant assembly based on the result.

### ■ Syntax

```
IFB <argument>
IFNB <argument>
```

These directives are always used inside macros, and they always test whether a real argument was passed for a specified dummy argument. The **IFB** directive grants assembly if *argument* is blank. The **IFNB** directive grants assembly if *argument* is not blank. The arguments can be any name, number, or expression. Angle brackets (`< >`) are required.

## ■ Example

```

Write      MACRO    buffer,bytes,handle
           IFNB     <handle>
           mov     bx,handle      ; (1=stdout,2=stderr,3=aux,4=printer)
           ELSE
           mov     bx,1           ; Default standard out
           ENDIF
           mov     dx,OFFSET buffer; Address of buffer to write to
           mov     cx,bytes       ; Number of bytes to write
           mov     ah,40h
           int     21h
           ENDM

```

In this example, a default value is used if no value is specified for the third macro argument.

## 10.1.5 Comparing Macro Arguments with IFIDN and IFDIF Directives

The **IFIDN** and **IFDIF** directives compare two macro arguments and grant assembly based on the result.

### ■ Syntax

```

IFIDN [I] <argument1>,<argument2>
IFDIF [I] <argument1>,<argument2>

```

These directives are always used inside macros, and they always test whether real arguments passed for two specified arguments are the same. The **IFIDN** directive grants assembly if *argument1* and *argument2* are identical. The **IFDIF** directive grants assembly if *argument1* and *argument2* are different. The arguments can be names, numbers, or expressions. They must be enclosed in angle brackets and separated by a comma.

The optional **I** at the end of the directive name specifies that the directive is case insensitive. Arguments that are spelled the same will be evaluated the same, regardless of case. This is a new feature starting with Version 5.0. If the **I** is not given, the directive is case sensitive.

## ■ Example

```

divide8      MACRO    numerator,denominator
              IFDIFI  <numerator>,<al>    ;; If numerator isn't AL
              mov     al,numerator        ;; make it AL
              ENDIF
              xor     ah,ah
              div     denominator
              ENDM

```

In this example, a macro uses the **IFDIFI** directive to check one of the arguments and take a different action, depending on the text of the string. The sample macro could be enhanced further by checking for other values that would require adjustment (such as a denominator passed in **AL** or passed in **AH**).

## 10.2 Using Conditional-Error Directives

Conditional-error directives can be used to debug programs and check for assembly-time errors. By inserting a conditional-error directive at a key point in your code, you can test assembly-time conditions at that point. You can also use conditional-error directives to test for boundary conditions in macros.

The conditional-error directives and the error messages they produce are listed in Table 10.1.

**Table 10.1**  
**Conditional-Error Directives**

Directive	Number	Message
<b>.ERR1</b>	87	Forced error - pass1
<b>.ERR2</b>	88	Forced error - pass2
<b>.ERR</b>	89	Forced error
<b>.ERRE</b>	90	Forced error - expression true (0)
<b>.ERRNZ</b>	91	Forced error - expression false (not 0)
<b>.ERRNDEF</b>	92	Forced error - symbol not defined
<b>.ERRDEF</b>	93	Forced error - symbol defined
<b>.ERRB</b>	94	Forced error - string blank
<b>.ERRNB</b>	95	Forced error - string not blank
<b>.ERRIDN</b> <sub>[1]</sub>	96	Forced error - strings identical
<b>.ERRDIF</b> <sub>[1]</sub>	97	Forced error - strings different

Like other severe errors, those generated by conditional-error directives cause the assembler to return exit code 7. If a severe error is encountered during assembly, **MASM** will delete the object module. All conditional error directives except **ERR1** generate severe errors.

## 10.2.1 Generating Unconditional Errors with **.ERR**, **.ERR1**, and **.ERR2** Directives

The **.ERR**, **.ERR1**, and **.ERR2** directives force an error where the directives occur in the source file. The error is generated unconditionally when the directive is encountered, but the directives can be placed within conditional-assembly blocks to limit the errors to certain situations.

### ■ Syntax

```
.ERR  
.ERR1  
.ERR2
```

The **.ERR** directive forces an error regardless of the pass. The **.ERR1** and **.ERR2** directives force the error only on their respective passes. The **.ERR1** directive appears only on the screen or in the listing file if you use the **/D** option to request a Pass 1 listing.

You can place these directives within conditional-assembly blocks or macros to see which blocks are being expanded.

### ■ Example

```
IFDEF      dos  
.  
.  
ELSE  
IFDEF     xenix  
.  
.  
ELSE  
.  
%OUT dos or xenix must be defined  
ENDIF  
ENDIF
```

This example makes sure that either the symbol `dos` or the symbol `xenix` is defined. If neither is defined, the nested **ELSE** condition is assembled and an error message is generated. Since the **.ERR** directive is used, an error would be generated on each pass. You could use **.ERR1** or **.ERR2** to check if you want the error to be generated only on the corresponding pass.

## 10.2.2 Testing Expressions with **.ERRE** or **.ERRNZ** Directives

The **.ERRE** and **.ERRNZ** directives test the value of an expression and conditionally generate an error based on the result.

### ■ Syntax

```
.ERRE expression
.ERRNZ expression
```

The **.ERRE** directive generates an error if the *expression* is false (0). The **.ERRNZ** directive generates an error if the *expression* is true (nonzero). The *expression* must resolve to a constant value and must not contain forward references.

### ■ Example

```
buffer    MACRO    count,bname
           .ERRE    count LE 128           ;; Allocate memory, but
bname     DB      count DUP (0)          ;;   no more than 128 bytes
           ENDM
           .
           .
           buffer 128,buf1                ; Data allocated - no error
           buffer 129,buf2                ; Error generated
```

In this example, the **.ERRE** directive is used to check the boundaries of a parameter passed to the macro `buffer`. If `count` is less than or equal to 128, the expression being tested by the error directive will be true (nonzero) and no error will be generated. If `count` is greater than 128, the expression will be false (0) and the error will be generated.

### 10.2.3 Verifying Symbol Definition with `.ERRDEF` and `.ERRNDEF` Directives

The `.ERRDEF` and `.ERRNDEF` directives test whether or not a symbol is defined and conditionally generate an error based on the result.

#### ■ Syntax

```
.ERRDEF name  
.ERRNDEF name
```

The `.ERRDEF` directive produces an error if *name* is defined as a label, variable, or symbol. The `.ERRNDEF` directive produces an error if *name* has not yet been defined. If *name* is a forward reference, it is considered undefined on Pass 1, but defined on Pass 2.

#### ■ Example

```
.ERRNDEF publevel  
IF publevel LE 2  
  PUBLIC var1, var2  
ELSE  
  PUBLIC var1, var2, var3  
ENDIF
```

In this example, the `.ERRNDEF` directive at the beginning of the conditional block makes sure that a symbol being tested in the block actually exists.

### 10.2.4 Testing for Macro Parameters with `.ERRB` and `.ERRNB` Directives

The `.ERRB` and `.ERRNB` directives test whether a specified argument was passed to a macro and conditionally generate an error based on the result.

#### ■ Syntax

```
.ERRB <argument>  
.ERRNB <argument>
```

These directives are always used inside macros, and they always test whether a real argument was passed for a specified dummy argument. The

**.ERRB** directive generates an error if *argument* is blank. The **.ERRNB** directive generates an error if *argument* is not blank. The *argument* can be any name, number, or expression. Angle brackets (< >) are required.

### ■ Example

```
work      MACRO    realarg, testarg
          .ERRB    <realarg>  ;; Error if no parameters
          .ERRNB   <testarg>  ;; Error if more than one parameter
          .
          .
          ENDM
```

In this example, error directives are used to make sure that one, and only one, argument is passed to the macro. The **.ERRB** directive generates an error if no argument is passed to the macro. The **.ERRNB** directive generates an error if more than one argument is passed to the macro.

## 10.2.5 Comparing Macro Arguments with **.ERRIDN** and **.ERRDIF** Directives

The **.ERRIDN** and **.ERRDIF** directives compare two macro arguments and conditionally generate an error based on the result.

### ■ Syntax

```
.ERRIDN[I] <argument1>, <argument2>
.ERRDIF[I] <argument1>, <argument2>
```

These directives are always used inside macros, and they always compare the real arguments specified for two parameters. The **.ERRIDN** directive generates an error if the arguments are identical. The **.ERRDIF** directive generates an error if the arguments are different. The arguments can be names, numbers, or expressions. They must be enclosed in angle brackets and separated by a comma.

The optional **I** at the end of the directive name specifies that the directive is case insensitive. Arguments that are spelled the same will be evaluated

the same regardless of case. This is a new feature starting with Version 5.0. If the **I** is not given, the directive is case sensitive.

### ■ Example

```
addem      MACRO      ad1,ad2,sum
            .ERRIDNI  <ax>,<ad2> ;; Error if ad2 is "ax"
            mov      ax,ad1      ;; Would overwrite if ad2 were AX
            add      ax,ad2
            mov      sum,ax      ;; Sum must be register or memory
            ENDM
```

In this example, the **.ERRIDNI** directive is used to protect against passing the **AX** register as the second parameter, since this would cause the macro to fail.



# CHAPTER

# 11

## USING EQUATES, MACROS, AND REPEAT BLOCKS

11.1	Using Equates .....	213
11.1.1	Redefinable Numeric Equates.....	213
11.1.2	Nonredefinable Numeric Equates.....	214
11.1.3	String Equates.....	216
11.2	Using Macros .....	217
11.2.1	Defining Macros.....	218
11.2.2	Calling Macros .....	219
11.2.3	Using Local Symbols .....	220
11.2.4	Exiting from a Macro .....	222
11.3	Defining Repeat Blocks .....	223
11.3.1	The REPT Directive .....	223
11.3.2	The IRP Directive.....	224
11.3.3	The IRPC Directive .....	225
11.4	Using Macro Operators .....	226
11.4.1	Substitute Operator.....	226
11.4.2	Literal-Text Operator.....	228
11.4.3	Literal-Character Operator.....	229
11.4.4	Expression Operator .....	230
11.4.5	Macro Comments.....	231
11.5	Using Recursive, Nested, and Redefined Macros.....	231
11.5.1	Using Recursion.....	231
11.5.2	Nesting Macro Definitions .....	232
11.5.3	Nesting Macro Calls.....	233
11.5.4	Redefining Macros .....	234
11.5.5	Avoiding Inadvertent Substitutions.....	234

11.6	Managing Macros and Equates .....	235
11.6.1	Using Include Files.....	235
11.6.2	Purging Macros from Memory .....	237

This chapter explains how to use equates, macros, and repeat blocks. Equates are constant values assigned to symbols so that the symbol can be used in place of the value. Macros are a series of statements that are assigned a symbolic name (and optionally parameters) so that the symbol can be used in place of the statements. Repeat blocks are a special form of macro used to do repeated statements.

Both equates and macros are processed at assembly time. They can simplify writing source code by allowing the user to substitute mnemonic names for constants and repetitive code. By changing a macro or equate, a programmer can change the effect of statements throughout the source code.

In exchange for these conveniences, the programmer loses some assembly-time efficiency. Assembly may be slightly slower for a program that uses macros and equates extensively than for the same program written without them. However, the program without macros and equates usually takes longer to write and is more difficult to maintain.

## 11.1 Using Equates

The equate directives enable you to use symbols that represent numeric or string constants. **MASM** recognizes three kinds of equates:

1. Redefinable numeric equates
2. Nonredefinable numeric equates
3. String equates (also called text macros)

### 11.1.1 Redefinable Numeric Equates

Redefinable numeric equates are used to assign a numeric constant to a symbol. The value of the symbol can be redefined at any point during assembly time. Although the value of a redefinable equate may be different at different points in the source code, a constant value will be assigned for each use, and that value will not change at run time.

Redefinable equates are often used for assembly-time calculations in macros and repeat blocks.

## ■ Syntax

*name* = *expression*

The equal-sign (=) directive creates or redefines a constant symbol by assigning the numeric value of *expression* to *name*. No storage is allocated for the symbol. The symbol can be used in subsequent statements as an immediate operand having the assigned value. It can be redefined at any time.

The *expression* can be an integer, a constant expression, a one- or two-character string constant (four-character on the 80386), or an expression that evaluates to an address. The *name* must be either a unique name or a name previously defined by using the equal-sign (=) directive.

---

### Note

Redefinable equates must be assigned numeric values. String constants longer than two characters cannot be used.

---

## ■ Example

```
counter      =          0          ; Initialize counter
array       LABEL  BYTE          ; Label array of increasing numbers
            REPT    100          ; Repeat 100 times
            DB      counter      ; Initialize number
counter     =      counter + 1    ; Increment counter
            ENDM
```

This example redefines equates inside a repeat block to declare an array initialized to increasing values from 0 to 100. The equal-sign directive is used to increment the `counter` symbol for each loop. See Section 11.3 for more information on repeat blocks.

### 11.1.2 Nonredefinable Numeric Equates

Nonredefinable numeric equates are used to assign a numeric constant to a symbol. The value of the symbol cannot be redefined.

Nonredefinable numeric equates are often used for assigning mnemonic names to constant values. This can make the code more readable and easier to maintain. If a constant value used in numerous places in the source code needs to be changed, then the equate can be changed in one place rather than throughout the source code.

## ■ Syntax

*name* EQU *expression*

The EQU directive creates constant symbols by assigning *expression* to *name*. The assembler replaces each subsequent occurrence of *name* with the value of *expression*. Once a numeric equate has been defined with the EQU directive, it cannot be redefined. Attempting to do so generates an error.

---

### Note

String constants can also be defined with the EQU directive, but the syntax is different, as described in Section 11.1.3, “String Equates.”

---

No storage is allocated for the symbol. Symbols defined with numeric values can be used in subsequent statements as immediate operands having the assigned value.

## ■ Examples

```
column    EQU    80           ; Numeric constant 80
row       EQU    25          ; Numeric constant 25
screenful EQU    column * row ; Numeric constant 2000
line     EQU    row         ; Alias for "row"

        .DATA
buffer  DW    screenful

        .CODE
        .
        .
        mov    cx, column
        mov    bx, line
```

### 11.1.3 String Equates

String equates (or text macros) are used to assign a string constant to a symbol. String equates can be used in a variety of contexts, including defining aliases and string constants.

#### ■ Syntax

```
name EQU [<]string[>]
```

The **EQU** directive creates constant symbols by assigning *string* to *name*. The assembler replaces each subsequent occurrence of *name* with *string*. Symbols defined to represent strings with the **EQU** directive can be redefined to new strings. Symbols cannot be defined to represent strings with the equal-sign (=) directive.

An alias is a special kind of string equate. It is a symbol that is equated to another symbol or keyword.

---

#### Note

The use of angle brackets to force string evaluation is a new feature of Version 5.0 of the Macro Assembler. Previous versions tried to evaluate equates as expressions. If the string did not evaluate to a valid expression, **MASM** evaluated it as a string. This behavior sometimes caused unexpected consequences.

For example, the statement

```
rt          EQU      run-time
```

would be evaluated as `run minus time`, even though the user might intend to define the string `run-time`. If `run` and `time` were not already defined as numeric equates, the statement would generate an error. Using angle brackets solves this problem. The statement

```
rt          EQU      <run-time>
```

is evaluated as the string `run-time`.

When maintaining existing source code, you can leave string equates alone that evaluate correctly, but for new source code that will not be used with previous versions of **MASM**, it is a good idea to enclose all string equates in angle brackets.

---

## ■ Examples

```

; String equate definitions
pi      EQU      <3.1415>          ; String constant "3.1415"
prompt  EQU      <'Type Name: '>  ; String constant "'Type Name: '"
WPT     EQU      <WORD PTR>       ; String constant for "WORD PTR"
arg1    EQU      <[bp+4]>         ; String constant for "[bp+4]"

; Use of string equates
        .DATA
message DB      prompt           ; Allocate string "Type Name: "
pie     DQ      pi               ; Allocate real number 3.1415

        .CODE
        .
        .
        inc     WPT parm1       ; Increment word value of
                                ; argument passed on stack

```

## 11.2 Using Macros

Macros enable you to assign a symbolic name to a block of source statements, and then to use that name in your source file to represent the statements. Parameters can also be defined to represent arguments passed to the macro.

Macro expansion is a text-processing function that occurs at assembly time. Each time **MASM** encounters the text associated with a macro name, it replaces that text with the text of the statements in the macro definition. Similarly, the text of parameter names is replaced with the text of the corresponding actual arguments.

A macro can be defined any place in the source file as long as the definition precedes the first source line that calls the macro. Macros and equates are often kept in a separate file and made available to the program through an **INCLUDE** directive (see Section 11.6.1, “Using Include Files”) at the start of the source code.

---

### Note

Since most macros only need to be expanded once, you can increase efficiency by processing them only during a single pass of the assembler. You can do this by enclosing the macros (or an **INCLUDE** statement that calls them) in a conditional block using the **IF1** directive. Any macros that use the **EXTRN** or **PUBLIC** statements should be processed on Pass 1 rather than Pass 2 to increase linker efficiency.

---

Often a task can be done by using either a macro or procedure. For example, the `addup` procedure shown in Section 17.4.3, “Passing Arguments on the Stack,” does the same thing as the `addup` macro in Section 11.2.1, “Defining Macros.” Macros are expanded on every occurrence of the macro name, so they can increase the length of the executable file if called repeatedly. Procedures are coded only once in the executable file, but the increased overhead of saving and restoring addresses and parameters can make them slower.

The section below tells how to define and call macros. Repeat blocks, a special form of macro for doing repeated operations, are discussed separately in Section 11.3.

### 11.2.1 Defining Macros

The **MACRO** and **ENDM** directives are used to define macros. **MACRO** designates the beginning of the macro block and **ENDM** designates the end of the macro block.

#### ■ Syntax

```
name MACRO [parameter [,parameter]...]
statements
ENDM
```

The *name* must be unique and a valid symbol name. It can be used later in the source file to invoke the macro.

The *parameters* (sometimes called dummy parameters) are names that act as placeholders for values to be passed as arguments to the macro when it is called. Any number of *parameters* can be specified, but they must all fit on one line. If you give more than one parameter, you must separate them with commas, spaces, or tabs. Commas can always be used as separators; spaces and tabs may cause ambiguity if the arguments are expressions.

---

#### Note

This manual uses the term “parameter” to refer to a placeholder for a value that will be passed to a macro or procedure. Parameters appear in macro or procedure definitions. The term “argument” is used to refer to an actual value passed to the macro or procedure when it is called.

---

Any valid assembler statement may be placed within a macro, including statements that call or define other macros. Any number of statements can

be used. The *parameters* can be used any number of times in the statements. Macros can be nested, redefined, or used recursively, as explained in Section 11.5, “Using Recursive, Nested, and Redefined Macros.”

**MASM** assembles the statements in a macro only if the macro is called, and only at the point in the source file from which it is called. The macro definition itself is never assembled.

A macro definition can include the **LOCAL** directive, which lets you define labels used only within a macro, or the **EXITM** directive, which allows you to exit from a macro before all the statements in the block are expanded. These directives are discussed in Sections 11.2.3, “Using Local Symbols,” and 11.2.4, “Exiting from a Macro.” Macro operators can also be used in macro definitions, as described in Section 11.4, “Using Macro Operators.”

### ■ Example

```
addup      MACRO    ad1,ad2,ad3
            mov     ax,ad1      ;; First parameter in AX
            add     ax,ad2      ;; Add next two parameters
            add     ax,ad3      ;; and leave sum in AX
            ENDM
```

The preceding example defines a macro named `addup`, which uses three parameters to add three values and leave their sum in the **AX** register. The three parameters will be replaced with arguments when the macro is called.

## 11.2.2 Calling Macros

A macro call directs **MASM** to copy the statements of the macro to the point of the call and to replace any parameters in the macro statements with the corresponding actual arguments.

### ■ Syntax

```
name [argument [,argument]...]
```

The *name* must be the name of a macro defined earlier in the source file. The *arguments* can be any text. For example, symbols, constants, and registers are often given as arguments. Any number of arguments can be given, but they must all fit on one line. Multiple arguments must be separated by commas, spaces, or tabs.

**MASM** replaces the first parameter with the first argument, the second parameter with the second argument, and so on. If a macro call has more

arguments than the macro has parameters, the extra arguments are ignored. If a call has fewer arguments than the macro has parameters, any remaining parameters are replaced with a null (empty) string.

You can use conditional statements to enable macros to check for null strings or other types of arguments. The macro can then take appropriate action to adjust to different kinds of arguments. See Chapter 10, "Assembling Conditionally," for more information on using conditional-assembly and conditional-error directives to test macro arguments.

### ■ Example

```
addup      MACRO    ad1,ad2,ad3      ; Macro definition
            mov     ax,ad1           ;; First parameter in AX
            add     ax,ad2           ;; Add next two parameters
            add     ax,ad3           ;; and leave sum in AX
            ENDM
            .
            .
            .
            addup   bx,2,count       ; Macro call
```

When the `addup` macro is called, **MASM** replaces the parameters with the actual parameters given in the macro call. In the example above, the assembler would expand the macro call to the following code:

```
mov     ax,bx
add     ax,2
add     ax,count
```

This code could be shown in an assembler listing, depending on whether the `.LALL`, `.XALL`, or `.SALL` directive was in effect (see Section 12.3.3, "Controlling Listing of Macros").

## 11.2.3 Using Local Symbols

The **LOCAL** directive can be used within a macro to define symbols that are available only within the defined macro.

---

### Note

In this context, the term "local" is not related to the public availability of a symbol, as described in Chapter 8, "Creating Programs from Multiple Modules," or to variables that are defined to be local to a procedure, as described in Section 17.4.4, "Using Local Variables."

"Local" simply means that the symbol is not known outside the macro where it is defined.

---

## ■ Syntax

**LOCAL** *localname* [,*localname*]...

The *localname* is a temporary symbol name that is to be replaced by a unique symbol name when the macro is expanded. At least one *localname* is required for each **LOCAL** directive. If more than one local symbol is given, the names must be separated with commas. Once declared, *localname* can be used in any statement within the macro definition.

**MASM** creates a new actual name for *localname* each time the macro is expanded. The actual name has the following form:

??*number*

The *number* is a hexadecimal number in the range 0000 to 0FFFF. You should not give other symbols names in this format, since doing so may produce a symbol with multiple definitions. In listings, the local name is shown in the macro definition, but the actual name is shown in expansions of macro calls.

Nonlocal labels may be used in a macro; but if the macro is used more than once, the same label will appear in both expansions, and **MASM** will display an error message, indicating that the file contains a symbol with multiple definitions. To avoid this problem, use only local labels (or redefinable equates) in macros.

---

### Note

The **LOCAL** directive can only be used in macro definitions, and it must precede all other statements in the definition. If you try another statement (such as a comment instruction) before the **LOCAL** directive, an error will be generated.

---

## ■ Example

```
power      MACRO    factor,exponent    ;; Use for unsigned only
           LOCAL   again,gotzero      ;; Declare symbols for macro
           xor     dx,dx               ;; Clear DX
           mov     cx,exponent         ;; Exponent is count for loop
           mov     ax,1                ;; Multiply by 1 first time
           jcxz   gotzero              ;; Get out if exponent is zero
           mov     bx,factor
again:     mul     bx                   ;; Multiply until done
           loop   again
gotzero:
           ENDM
```

In this example, the **LOCAL** directive defines the local names `again` and `gotzero` as labels to be used within the `power` macro.

These local names will be replaced with unique names each time the macro is expanded. For example, the first time the macro is called, `again` will be assigned the name `??0000` and `gotzero` will be assigned `??0001`. The second time through, `again` will be assigned `??0002` and `gotzero` will be assigned `??0003`, and so on.

### 11.2.4 Exiting from a Macro

Normally, **MASM** processes all the statements in a macro definition and then continues with the next statement after the macro call. However, you can use the **EXITM** directive to tell the assembler to terminate macro expansion before all the statements in the macro have been assembled.

When the **EXITM** directive is encountered, the assembler exits the macro or repeat block immediately. Any remaining statements in the macro or repeat block are not processed. If **EXITM** is encountered in a nested macro or repeat block, **MASM** returns to expanding the outer block.

The **EXITM** directive is typically used with conditional directives to skip the last statements in a macro under specified conditions. Often macros using the **EXITM** directive contain repeat blocks or are called recursively.

#### ■ Example

```
allocate    MACRO    times    ; Macro definition
x          =        0
          REPT    times    ;; Repeat up to 256 times
          IF      x GT 0FFh ;; Is x > 255 yet?
          EXITM   ;; If so, quit
          ELSE
          DB      x        ;; Else allocate x
          ENDIF
x          =        x + 1    ;; Increment x
          ENDM
          ENDM
```

This example defines a macro that allocates a variable amount of data, but no more than 255 bytes. The macro contains an **IFE** directive that checks the expression `x - 0FFh`. When the value of this expression is true ( $x - 255 = 0$ ), the **EXITM** directive is processed and expansion of the macro stops.

## 11.3 Defining Repeat Blocks

Repeat blocks are a special form of macro that allows you to create blocks of repeated statements. They differ from macros in that they are not named, and thus cannot be called. However, like macros, they can have parameters that are replaced by actual arguments during assembly. Macro operators, symbols declared with the **LOCAL** directive, and the **EXITM** directive can be used in repeat blocks. Like macros, repeat blocks are always terminated by an **ENDM** directive.

Repeat blocks are frequently placed in macros in order to repeat some of the statements in the macro. They can also be used independently, usually for declaring arrays with repeated data elements.

Repeat blocks are processed at assembly time and should not be confused with the **REP** instruction, which causes string instructions to be repeated at run time, as explained in Chapter 18, “Processing Strings.”

Three different kinds of repeat blocks can be defined by using the **REPT**, **IRP**, and **IRPC** directives. The difference between them is in how the number of repetitions is specified.

### 11.3.1 The REPT Directive

The **REPT** directive is used to create repeat blocks in which the number of repetitions is specified with a numeric argument.

#### ■ Syntax

```
REPT expression  
statements  
ENDM
```

The *expression* must evaluate to a numeric constant (a 16-bit unsigned number). It specifies the number of repetitions. Any valid assembler statements may be placed within the repeat block.

## ■ Example

```

alphabet LABEL BYTE
x = 0 ;; Initialize
REPT 26 ;; Specify 26 repetitions
DB 'A' + x ;; Allocate ASCII code for letter
x = x + 1 ;; Increment
ENDM

```

This example repeats the equal-sign (=) and **DB** directives to initialize ASCII values for each uppercase letter of the alphabet.

## 11.3.2 The IRP Directive

The **IRP** directive is used to create repeat blocks in which the number of repetitions, as well as parameters for each repetition, are specified in a list of arguments.

### ■ Syntax

```

IRP parameter, <argument[, argument]...>
statements
ENDM

```

The assembler *statements* inside the block are repeated once for each *argument* in the list enclosed by angle brackets (<>). The *parameter* is a name for a placeholder to be replaced by the current argument. Each argument can be text, such as a symbol, string, or numeric constant. Any number of arguments can be given. If multiple arguments are given, they must be separated by commas. The angle brackets (<>) around the argument list are required. The *parameter* can be used any number of times in the *statements*.

When **MASM** encounters an **IRP** directive, it makes one copy of the statements for each argument in the enclosed list. While copying the statements, it substitutes the current argument for all occurrences of *parameter* in these statements. If a null argument (<>) is found in the list, the dummy name is replaced with a null value. If the argument list is empty, the **IRP** directive is ignored and no statements are copied.

### ■ Example

```

numbers LABEL BYTE
IRP x, <0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9>
DB 10 DUP(x)
ENDM

```

This example repeats the **DB** directive 10 times, allocating 10 bytes for each number in the list. The resulting statements create 100 bytes of data, starting with 10 zeros, followed by 10 ones, and so on.

### 11.3.3 The **IRPC** Directive

The **IRPC** directive is used to create repeat blocks in which the number of repetitions, as well as arguments for each repetition, is specified in a string.

#### ■ Syntax

```
IRPC parameter,string
statements
ENDM
```

The assembler *statements* inside the block are repeated as many times as there are character in *string*. The *parameter* is a name for a placeholder to be replaced by the current character in *string*. The string can be any combination of letters, digits, and other characters. It should be enclosed with angle brackets (< >) if it contains spaces, commas, or other separating characters. The *parameter* can be used any number of times in these statements.

When **MASM** encounters an **IRPC** directive, it makes one copy of the statements for each character in the string. While copying the statements, it substitutes the current character for all occurrences of *parameter* in these statements.

#### ■ Example 1

```
ten          LABEL  BYTE
             IRPC  x,0123456789
             DB   x
             ENDM
```

Example 1 repeats the **DB** directive 10 times, once for each character in the string 0123456789. The resulting statements create 10 bytes of data having the values 0–9.

## ■ Example 2

```

IRPC    letter, ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
DB      '&letter'           ; Allocate uppercase letter
DB      '&letter'+20h       ; Allocate lowercase letter
DB      '&letter'-40h       ; Allocate number of letter
ENDM

```

Example 2 allocates the ASCII codes for uppercase, lowercase, and numeric versions of each letter in the string. Notice that the substitute operator (&) is required so that `letter` will be treated as an argument rather than a string. See Section 11.4.1, “Substitute Operator,” for more information.

## 11.4 Using Macro Operators

Macro and conditional directives use the following special set of macro operators:

Operator	Definition
&	Substitute operator
< >	Literal-text operator
!	Literal-character operator
%	Expression operator
::	Macro comment

When used in a macro definition, a macro call, a repeat block, or as the argument of a conditional-assembly directive, these operators carry out special control operations, such as text substitution.

### 11.4.1 Substitute Operator

The substitute operator (&) forces **MASM** to replace a parameter with its corresponding actual argument value.

#### ■ Syntax

*&parameter*

The substitute operator can be used when a parameter immediately precedes or follows other characters, or whenever the parameter appears in a quoted string.

## ■ Example

```
errgen      MACRO   y,x
            PUBLIC  err&y
err&y       DB      'Error &y: &x'
            ENDM
```

In the example, **MASM** replaces `&x` with the value of the argument passed to the macro `errgen`. If the macro is called with the statement

```
errgen 5,<Unreadable disk>
```

the macro is expanded to

```
err5      DB      'Error 5: Unreadable disk'
```

### Note

For complex, nested macros, you can use extra ampersands to delay the replacement of a parameter. In general, you need to supply as many ampersands as there are levels of nesting.

For example, in the following macro definition, the substitute operator is used twice with `z` to make sure its replacement occurs while the **IRP** directive is being processed:

```
alloc      MACRO   x
            IRP    z,<1,2,3>
x&&z       DB      z
            ENDM
            ENDM
```

In this example, the dummy parameter `x` is replaced immediately when the macro is called. The dummy parameter `z`, however, is not replaced until the **IRP** directive is processed. This means the dummy parameter is replaced as many times as there are numbers in the **IRP** parameter list. If the macro is called with

```
alloc var
```

the macro will be expanded as shown below:

```
var1      DB      1
var2      DB      2
var3      DB      3
```

## 11.4.2 Literal-Text Operator

The literal-text operator (< >) directs **MASM** to treat a list as a single string rather than as separate arguments.

### ■ Syntax

< *text* >

The *text* is considered a single literal element even if it contains commas, spaces, or tabs. The literal-text operator is most often used in macro calls and with the **IRP** directive to ensure that values in a parameter list are treated as a single parameter.

The literal-text operator can also be used to force **MASM** to treat special characters, such as the semicolon or the ampersand, literally. For example, the semicolon inside angle brackets <;> becomes a semicolon, not a comment indicator.

**MASM** removes one set of angle brackets each time the parameter is used in a macro. When using nested macros, you will need to supply as many sets of angle brackets as there are levels of nesting.

### ■ Example

```

work    1,2,3,4,5           ; Passes five parameters
                           ;   to "work"

work    <1,2,3,4,5>        ; Passes one five-element
                           ;   parameter to "work"

```

---

### Note

When the **IRP** directive is used inside a macro definition and when the argument list of the **IRP** directive is also a parameter of the macro, you must use the literal-text operator (< >) to enclose the macro parameter.

For example, in the following macro definition, the parameter *x* is used as the argument list for the **IRP** directive:

```

init    MACRO    x
        IRP     y, <x>
        DB     y
        ENDM
        ENDM

```

If this macro is called with

```
init    <0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9>
```

the macro removes the angle brackets from the parameter so that it is expanded as 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9. The brackets inside the repeat block are necessary to put the angle brackets back on. The repeat block is then expanded as shown below:

```
IRP     y,<0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9>
DB      y
ENDM
```

### 11.4.3 Literal-Character Operator

The literal-character operator (!) forces the assembler to treat a specified character literally rather than as a symbol.

#### ■ Syntax

*!character*

The literal-character operator is used with special characters such as the semicolon or ampersand when meaning of the special character must be suppressed. Using the literal-character operator is the same as enclosing a single character in brackets. For example, !! is the same as <!>.

#### ■ Example

```
errgen   MACRO   y,x
PUBLIC  err&y
err&y    DB      'Error &y: &x'
ENDM
.
.
errgen  103,<Expression !> 255>
```

The example macro call is expanded to allocate the string Error 103: Expression > 255. Without the literal-character operator, the greater-than symbol would be interpreted as the end of the argument and an error would result.

## 11.4.4 Expression Operator

The expression operator (`%`) causes the assembler to treat the argument following the operator as an expression.

### ■ Syntax

`%text`

**MASM** computes the expression's value and replaces *text* with the result. The expression can be either a numeric expression or a text equate. Handling text equates with this operator is a new feature in Version 5.0. Previous versions handled numeric expressions only. If there are additional arguments after an argument that uses the expression operator, the additional arguments must be preceded by a comma, not a space or tab.

The expression operator is typically used in macro calls when the programmer needs to pass the result of an expression rather than the actual expression to a macro.

### ■ Example

```

printe      MACRO    exp,val
             IF2                ;; On pass 2 only
             %OUT    exp = val  ;; Display expression and result
             ENDF                ;; to screen
             ENDM

sym1        EQU     100
sym2        EQU     200
msg         EQU     <"Hello, World.">

             printe <sym1 + sym2>,%(sym1 + sym2)
             printe msg,%msg

```

In the first macro call, the text literal `sym1 + sym2 =` is passed to the parameter `exp`, and the result of the expression is passed to the parameter `val`. In the second macro call, the equate name `msg` is passed to the parameter `exp`, and the text of the equate is passed to the parameter `val`. As a result, **MASM** displays the following messages:

```

sym1 + sym2 = 300
msg = "Hello, World."

```

The `%OUT` directive, which sends a message to the screen, is described in Section 12.1, "Sending Messages to the Standard Output Device"; the `IF2`

directive is described in Section 10.1.2, “Testing the Pass with IF1 and IF2 Directives.”

### 11.4.5 Macro Comments

A macro comment is any text in a macro definition that does not need to be copied in the macro expansion. A double semicolon (;;) is used to start a macro comment.

#### ■ Syntax

*;;text*

All *text* following the double semicolon (;;) is ignored by the assembler and will appear only in the macro definition when the source listing is created.

The regular comment operator (;) can also be used in macros. However, regular comments may appear in listings when the macro is expanded. Macro comments will appear in the macro definition, but not in macro expansions. Whether or not regular comments are listed in macro expansions depends on the use of the **.LALL**, **.XALL**, and **.SALL** directives, as described in Section 12.2.3, “Controlling Page Breaks.”

## 11.5 Using Recursive, Nested, and Redefined Macros

The concept of replacing macro names with predefined macro text is simple, but in practice it has many implications and potentially unexpected side effects. The following sections discuss advanced macro features (such as nesting, recursion, and redefinition) and point out some side effects of macros.

### 11.5.1 Using Recursion

Macro definitions can be recursive: that is, they can call themselves. Using recursive macros is one way of doing repeated operations. The macro does a task, and then calls itself to do the task again. The recursion is repeated until a specified condition is met.

## ■ Example

```

pushall    MACRO    reg1,reg2,reg3,reg4,reg5,reg6
            IFNB    <reg1>        ;; If parameter not blank
            push    reg1          ;; push one register and repeat
            pushall reg2,reg3,reg4,reg5,reg6
            ENDIF
            ENDM
            .
            .
            .
pushall    ax,bx,si,ds
pushall    cs,es
    
```

In this example, the `pushall` macro repeatedly calls itself to push a register given in a parameter until no parameters are left to push. A variable number of parameters (up to six) can be given.

## 11.5.2 Nesting Macro Definitions

One macro can define another. **MASM** does not process nested definitions until the outer macro has been called. Therefore, nested macros cannot be called until the outer macro has been called at least once. Macro definitions can be nested to any depth. Nesting is limited only by the amount of memory available when the source file is assembled.

Using a macro to create similar macros can make maintenance easier. If you want to change all the macros, change the outer macro and it automatically changes the others.

## ■ Example

```

shifts    MACRO    opname          ; Define macro that defines macros
opname&s  MACRO    operand,rotates
            IF      rotates LE 4
            REPT    rotates
            opname operand,1        ;; One at a time is faster
            ENDM                                ;; for 4 or less on 8088/8086
            ELSE
            mov     cl,rotates      ;; Using CL is faster
            opname operand,cl      ;; for more than 4 on 8088/8086
            ENDIF
            ENDM
            ENDM

            shifts ror              ; Call macro
            shifts rol              ; to new macros
            shifts shr
            shifts shl
            shifts rcl
            shifts rcr
            shifts sal
            shifts sar
            .
            .
            shrs   ax,5              ; Call defined macros
            rols   bx,3
    
```

This macro, when called as shown, creates macros for multiple shifts with each of the shift and rotate instructions. All the macro names are identical except for the instruction. For example, the macro for the **SHR** instruction is called `shrs`; the macro for the **ROL** instruction is called `rols`. If you want to enhance the macros by doing more parameter checking, you can modify the original macro. Doing so will change the created macros automatically. This macro uses the substitute operator, as described in Section 11.4.1.

### 11.5.3 Nesting Macro Calls

Macro definitions can contain calls to other macros. Nested macro calls are expanded like any other macro call, but only when the outer macro is called.

#### ■ Example

```

ex          MACRO   text,val   ; Inner macro definition
            IF 2
            %OUT    The expression (&text) has the value: &val
            ENDF
            ENDM

express     MACRO   expression ; Outer macro definition
ex          <expression>,%(expression)
            ENDM
            .
            .
            .
            express <4 + 2 * 7 - 3 MOD 4>

```

The two sample macros enable you to print the result of a complex expression to the screen by using the `%OUT` directive, even though that directive expects text rather than an expression (see Section 12.1, “Sending Messages to the Standard Output Device”). Being able to see the value of an expression is convenient during debugging.

Both macros are necessary. The `express` macro calls the `ex` macro, using operators to pass the expression both as text and as the value of the expression. With the call in the example, the assembler sends the following line to the standard output:

```
The expression (4 + 2 * 7 - 3 MOD 4) has the value: 15
```

You could get the same output by using only the `ex` macro, but you would have to type the expression twice and supply the macro operators in

the correct places yourself. The `express` macro does this for you automatically. Notice that expressions containing spaces must still be enclosed in angle brackets. Section 11.4.2, "Literal-Text Operator," explains why.

## 11.5.4 Redefining Macros

Macros can be redefined. You do not need to purge the macro before redefining it. The new definition automatically replaces the old definition. If you redefine a macro from within the macro itself, make sure there are no statements or comments between the `ENDM` directive of the nested redefinition and the `ENDM` directive of the original macro.

### ■ Example

```
getasciiz  MACRO
            .DATA
max        DB      80
actual    DB      ?
tmpstr    DB      80 DUP (?)
            .CODE
            mov     ah,0Ah
            mov     dx,OFFSET max
            int     21h
            mov     bl,actual
            xor     bh,bh
            mov     tmpstr[bx],0
getasciiz  MACRO
            mov     ah,0Ah
            mov     dx,OFFSET max
            int     21h
            mov     bl,actual
            xor     bh,bh
            mov     tmpstr[bx],0
            ENDM
            ENDM
```

This macro allocates data space the first time it is called, and then redefines itself so that it doesn't try to reallocate the data on subsequent calls.

## 11.5.5 Avoiding Inadvertent Substitutions

MASM replaces all parameters when they occur with the corresponding argument, even if the substitution is inappropriate. For example, if you

use a register name such as **AX** or **BH** as a parameter, **MASM** replaces all occurrences of that name when it expands the macro. If the macro definition contains statements that use the register, not the parameter, the macro will be incorrectly expanded. **MASM** will not warn you about using reserved names as macro parameters.

**MASM** does give a warning if you use a reserved name as a macro name. You can ignore the warning, but be aware that the reserved name will no longer have its original meaning. For example, if you define a macro called **ADD**, the **ADD** instruction will no longer be available. Your **ADD** macro takes its place.

## 11.6 Managing Macros and Equates

Macros and equates are often kept in a separate file and read into the assembler source file at assembly time. In this way, libraries of related macros and equates can be used by many different source files.

The **INCLUDE** directive is used to read an include file into a source file. Memory can be saved by using the **PURGE** directive to delete the unneeded macros from memory.

### 11.6.1 Using Include Files

The **INCLUDE** directive inserts source code from a specified file into the source file from which the directive is given.

#### ■ Syntax

**INCLUDE** *filespec*

The *filespec* must specify an existing file containing valid assembler statements. When the assembler encounters an **INCLUDE** directive, it opens the specified source file and begins processing its statements. When all statements have been read, **MASM** continues with the statement immediately following the **INCLUDE** directive.

The *filespec* can be given either as a file name, or as a complete or relative file specification including drive or directory name.

If a complete or relative file specification is given, **MASM** looks for the include file only in the specified directory. If a file name is given without a directory or drive name, **MASM** looks for the file in the following order:

1. If paths are specified with the **/I** option, **MASM** looks for the include file in the specified directory or directories. See Section 2.4.6, "Getting Command-Line Help," for more information on the **/I** option.
2. **MASM** looks for the include file in the current directory.
3. If an **INCLUDE** environment variable is defined, **MASM** looks for the include file in the directory or directories specified in the environment variable.

Nested **INCLUDE** directives are allowed. **MASM** marks included statements with the letter "C" in assembly listings.

Directories can be specified in **INCLUDE** path names with either the backslash (\) or the forward slash (/). This is for XENIX compatibility.

---

### Note

Any standard code can be placed in an include file. However, include files are usually used only for macros, equates, and standard segment definitions. Standard procedures are usually assembled into separate object files and linked with the main source modules. The CodeView debugger can debug code in multiple modules, but it cannot debug code in include files.

---

### ■ Examples

```
INCLUDE fileio.mac           ; File name only; use with
                             ; /I or environment
INCLUDE b:\include\keybd.inc ; Complete file specification
INCLUDE /usr/jons/include/stdio.mac ; Path name in XENIX format
INCLUDE masm_inc\define.inc  ; Partial path name in DOS format
                             ; (relative to current directory)
```

## 11.6.2 Purging Macros from Memory

The **PURGE** directive can be used to delete a currently defined macro from memory.

### ■ Syntax

**PURGE** *macroname*[,*macroname*]...

Each *macroname* is deleted from memory when the directive is encountered at assembly time. Any subsequent call to that macro causes the assembler to generate an error.

The **PURGE** directive is intended to clear memory space no longer needed by a macro. If a macro has been used to redefine a reserved name, the reserved name is restored to its previous meaning.

The **PURGE** directive can be used to clear memory if a macro or group of macros is needed only for part of a source file.

It is not necessary to purge a macro before redefining it. Any redefinition of a macro automatically purges the previous definition. Also, a macro can purge itself as long as the **PURGE** directive is on the last line of the macro.

The **PURGE** directive works by redefining the macro to a null string. Therefore, calling a purged macro does not cause an error. The macro name is simply ignored.

### ■ Examples

```
GetStuff  
PURGE  GetStuff
```

These examples call a macro and then purge it. You might need to purge macros in this way if your system does not have enough memory to keep all the macros needed for a source file in memory at the same time.



# CHAPTER

# 12

## CONTROLLING ASSEMBLY OUTPUT

- 12.1 Sending Messages  
to the Standard Output Device.....241
- 12.2 Controlling Page Format in Listings .....242
  - 12.2.1 Setting the Listing Title .....242
  - 12.2.2 Setting the Listing Subtitle.....243
  - 12.2.3 Controlling Page Breaks.....243
- 12.3 Controlling the Contents of Listings.....245
  - 12.3.1 Suppressing and Restoring Listing Output ..245
  - 12.3.2 Controlling Listing of Conditional Blocks ...246
  - 12.3.3 Controlling Listing of Macros.....247
- 12.4 Controlling Cross-Reference Output .....249



MASM has two ways of communicating results of an assembly to the user. It can write information to a listing, cross-reference, or object file; or it can display messages to the standard output device (ordinarily the screen).

Both kinds of output can be controlled from the command line or from inside a source file. The command lines and options that affect information output are described in Chapter 2, “Using MASM.” This chapter explains the directives that directly control output from inside source files.

## 12.1 Sending Messages to the Standard Output Device

The `%OUT` directive instructs the assembler to display text to the standard output device. This device is normally the screen, but you can also redirect the output to a file or other device (see Section 2.3, “Controlling Message Output”).

### ■ Syntax

`%OUT text`

The *text* can be any line of ASCII characters. If you want to display multiple lines, you must use a separate `%OUT` directive for each line.

The directive is useful for displaying messages at specific points of a long assembly. It can be used inside conditional-assembly blocks to display messages when certain conditions are met.

The `%OUT` directive generates output for both assembly passes. The `IF1` and `IF2` directives can be used for control when the directive is processed. Macros that enable you to output the value of expressions are shown in Section 11.5.3, “Nesting Macros Calls.”

### ■ Example

```
IF1
%OUT First Pass - OK
ENDIF
```

This sample block could be placed at the end of a source file so that the message `First Pass - OK` would be displayed at the end of the first pass, but ignored on the second pass.

## 12.2 Controlling Page Format in Listings

MASM provides several directives for controlling the page format of listings. These directives include the following:

<b>Directive</b>	<b>Action</b>
<b>TITLE</b>	Sets title for listings
<b>SUBTTL</b>	Sets title for sections in listings
<b>PAGE</b>	Sets page length and width, and controls page and section breaks

### 12.2.1 Setting the Listing Title

The **TITLE** directive specifies a title to be used on each page of assembly listings.

#### ■ Syntax

**TITLE** *text*

The *text* can be any combination of characters up to 60 in length. The title is printed flush left on the second line of each page of the listing.

If no **TITLE** directive is given, the title will be blank. No more than one **TITLE** directive per module is allowed.

#### ■ Example

```
TITLE Graphics Routines
```

This example sets the listing title. A page heading that reflects this title is shown below:

```
Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.00  
Graphics Routines
```

```
9/25/87 12:00:00  
Page      1-2
```

## 12.2.2 Setting the Listing Subtitle

The **SUBTTL** directive specifies the subtitle used on each page of assembly listings.

### ■ Syntax

**SUBTTL** *text*

The *text* can be any combination of characters up to 60 in length. The subtitle is printed flush left on the third line of the listing pages.

If no **SUBTTL** directive is used, or if no *text* is given for a **SUBTTL** directive, the subtitle line is left blank.

Any number of **SUBTTL** directives can be given in a program. Each new directive replaces the current subtitle with the new *text*. **SUBTTL** directives are often used just before a **PAGE +** statement, which creates a new section (see Section 12.2.3, “Controlling Page Breaks”).

### ■ Example

```
SUBTTL Point Plotting Procedure
PAGE +
```

The example above creates a section title and then creates a page break and a new section. A page heading that reflects this title is shown below:

```
Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.00
Graphics Routines
Point Plotting Procedure
```

```
9/25/87 12:00:00
Page      3-1
```

## 12.2.3 Controlling Page Breaks

The **PAGE** directive can be used to designate the line length and width for the program listing, to increment the section and adjust the section number accordingly, or to generate a page break in the listing.

### ■ Syntax

```
PAGE [[[length],[width]]
PAGE +
```

If *length* and *width* are specified, the **PAGE** directive sets the maximum number of lines per page to *length* and the maximum number of characters

per line to *width*. The *length* must be in the range of 10–255 lines. The default page length is 50 lines. The *width* must be in the range of 60–132 characters. The default page width is 80 characters. To specify *width* without changing the default *length*, use a comma before *width*.

If no argument is given, **PAGE** starts a new page in the program listing by copying a form-feed character to the file and generating new title and subtitle lines.

If a plus sign follows **PAGE**, a page break occurs, the section number is incremented, and the page number is reset to 1. Program-listing page numbers have the following format:

*section-page*

The *section* is the section number within the module, and *page* is the page number within the section. By default, section and page numbers begin with 1-1. The **SUBTTL** directive and the **PAGE** directive can be used together to start a new section with a new subtitle. See Section 12.2.2, “Setting the Listing Subtitle,” for an example.

### ■ Example 1

```
PAGE
```

Example 1 creates a page break.

### ■ Example 2

```
PAGE 58,90
```

Example 2 sets the maximum page length to 58 lines and the maximum width to 90 characters.

### ■ Example 3

```
PAGE ,132
```

Example 3 sets the maximum width to 132 characters. The current page length (either the default of 50 or a previously set value) remains unchanged.

#### ■ Example 4

PAGE +

Example 4 creates a page break, increments the current section number, and sets the page number to 1. For example, if the preceding page was 3-6, the new page would be 4-1.

## 12.3 Controlling the Contents of Listings

MASM provides several directives for controlling what text will be shown in listings. The directives that control the contents of listings are shown below:

Directive	Action
<b>.LIST</b>	Lists statements in program listing
<b>.XLIST</b>	Suppresses listing of statements
<b>.LFCOND</b>	Lists false-conditional blocks in program listing
<b>.SFCOND</b>	Suppresses false-conditional listing
<b>.TFCOND</b>	Toggles false-conditional listing
<b>.LALL</b>	Includes macro expansions in program listing
<b>.SALL</b>	Suppresses listing of macro expansions
<b>.XALL</b>	Excludes comments from macro listing

### 12.3.1 Suppressing and Restoring Listing Output

The **.LIST** and **.XLIST** directives specify which source lines are included in the program listing.

#### ■ Syntax

**.LIST**  
**.XLIST**

The **.XLIST** directive suppresses copying of subsequent source lines to the program listing. The **.LIST** directive restores copying. The directives are typically used in pairs to prevent a particular section of a source file from being copied to the program listing.

The **.XLIST** directive overrides other listing directives such as **.SFCOND** or **.LALL**.

### ■ Example

```
.XLIST           ; Listing suspended here
.
.
.LIST           ; Listing resumes here
.
.
```

## 12.3.2 Controlling Listing of Conditional Blocks

The **.SFCOND**, **.LFCOND**, and **.TFCOND** directives control whether false-conditional blocks should be included in assembly listings.

### ■ Syntax

```
.SFCOND
.LFCOND
.TFCOND
```

The **.SFCOND** directive suppresses the listing of any subsequent conditional blocks whose condition is false. The **.LFCOND** directive restores the listing of these blocks. Like **.LIST** and **.XLIST**, conditional-listing directives can be used to suppress listing of conditional blocks in sections of a program.

The **.TFCOND** directive toggles the current status of listing of conditional blocks. This directive can be used in conjunction with the **/X** option of the assembler. By default, conditional blocks are not listed on start-up. However, they will be listed on start-up if the **/X** option is given. This means that using **/X** reverses the meaning of the first **.TFCOND** directive in the source file. The **/X** option is discussed in Section 2.4.14, “Listing False Conditionals.”

### ■ Example

```

test1      EQU      0          ; Defined to make all conditionals false
                                     ; /X not used          /X used
                                     .TFCOND
test2      IFNDEF test1      ; Listed          Not listed
          DB      128
          ENDIF
          .TFCOND
test3      IFNDEF test1      ; Not listed      Listed
          DB      128
          ENDIF
          .SFCOND
test4      IFNDEF test1      ; Not listed      Not listed
          DB      128
          ENDIF
          .LFCOND
test5      IFNDEF test1      ; Listed          Listed
          DB      128
          ENDIF

```

In the example above, the listing status for the first two conditional blocks would be different, depending on whether the **/X** option was used. The blocks with **.SFCOND** and **.LFCOND** would not be affected by the **/X** option.

### 12.3.3 Controlling Listing of Macros

The **.LALL**, **.XALL**, and **.SALL** directives control the listing of the expanded macros calls. The assembler always lists the full macro definition. The directives only affect expansion of macro calls.

#### ■ Syntax

**.LALL**

**.XALL**

**.SALL**

The **.LALL** directive causes **MASM** to list all the source statements in a macro expansion, including normal comments (preceded by a single semicolon) but not macro comments (preceded by a double semicolon).

The **.XALL** directive causes **MASM** to list only those source statements in a macro expansion that generate code or data. For instance, comments, equates, and segment definitions are ignored.

The **.SALL** directive causes **MASM** to suppress listing of all macro expansions. The listing shows the macro call, but not the source lines generated by the call.

The **.XALL** directive is in effect when **MASM** first begins execution.

### ■ Example

```

tryout      MACRO   param
              ;Macro comment
              ;Normal comment
it          EQU     3          ; No code or data
              ASSUME es:_DATA ; No code or data
              DW     param    ; Generates data
              mov    ax,it     ; Generates code
              ENDM
              .
              .
              .XALL
tryout      6              ; Call with .LALL
              .XALL
tryout      6              ; Call with .XALL
              .SALL
tryout      6              ; Call with .SALL

```

The macro calls in the example generate the following listing lines:

```

              .LALL
              tryout 6      ; Call with .LALL
              1          ; Normal comment
= 0003      1 it      EQU   3      ; No code or data
              1          ASSUME es:_TEXT ; No code or data
0015 0006   1          DW     6      ; Generates data
0017 B8 0003 1          mov    ax,it  ; Generates code
              .XALL
001A 0006   1          tryout 6      ; Call with .XALL
001C B8 0003 1          DW     6      ; Generates data
              mov    ax,it  ; Generates code
              .SALL
              tryout 6      ; Call with .SALL

```

Notice that the macro comment is never listed in macro expansions. Normal comments are listed only with the **.LALL** directive.

## 12.4 Controlling Cross-Reference Output

The `.CREF` and `.XCREF` directives control the generation of cross-references for the macro assembler's cross-reference file.

### ■ Syntax

`.CREF`

`.XCREF` [*name*[,*name*]...]

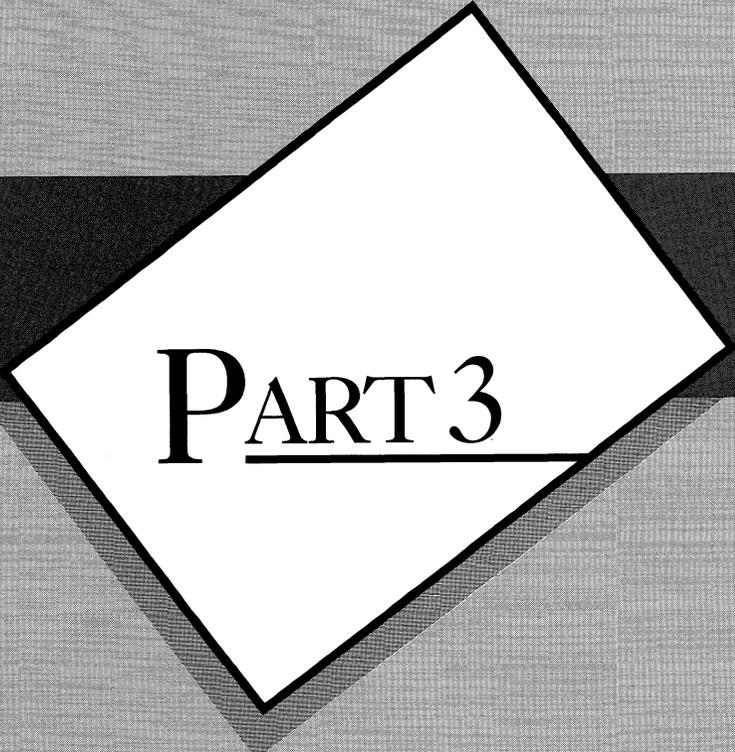
The `.XCREF` directive suppresses the generation of label, variable, and symbol cross-references. The `.CREF` directive restores generation of cross-references.

If *names* are specified with `.XCREF`, only the named labels, variables, or symbols will be suppressed. All other names will be cross-referenced. The named labels, variables, or symbols will also be omitted from the symbol table of the program listing.

### ■ Example

```
.XCREF                ; Suppress cross-referencing
.                    ;   of symbols in this block
.
.
.CREF                ; Restore cross-referencing
.                    ;   of symbols in this block
.
.
.XCREF test1,test2  ; Don't cross-reference test1 or test2
.                    ;   in this block
.
.
```





PART 3

USING

INSTRUCTIONS

# CHAPTERS

13 Understanding  
8086-Family Processors . . . . 255

14 Using Addressing Modes . . . . 271

15 Loading, Storing,  
and Moving Data . . . . 287

16 Doing Arithmetic  
and Bit Manipulations . . . . 305

17 Controlling Program Flow . . . . 331

18 Processing Strings . . . . 363

19 Calculating with a  
Math Coprocessor . . . . 377

20 Controlling the Processor . . . . 409

# ● PART 3 USING INSTRUCTIONS

Part 3 of the Programmer's Guide explains how to use instructions in assembly-language source code. Instructions define the code that will be executed by the processor at run time.

Chapters 13 and 14 describe overall concepts that apply to all instructions. Chapter 13 summarizes the 8086-family processors; it explains protection modes, tells how the processors address memory, and describes registers.

Chapter 14 explains the addressing modes that can be used with instruction operands.

Chapters 15–20 describe the instructions themselves. The material is organized topically, with related instructions discussed together. The 8087-family coprocessors and their instructions are explained in Chapter 19.



# CHAPTER

# 13

## UNDERSTANDING

## 8086-FAMILY PROCESSORS

13.1	Using the 8086-Family Processors.....	257
13.1.1	Processor Differences.....	257
13.1.2	Real and Protected Modes.....	259
13.2	Segmented Addresses.....	260
13.3	Using 8086-Family Registers.....	261
13.3.1	Segment Registers.....	263
13.3.2	General-Purpose Registers.....	264
13.3.3	Other Registers.....	266
13.3.4	The Flags Register.....	266
13.3.5	8087-Family Registers.....	268
13.4	Using the 80386 Processor Under DOS.....	269



This chapter introduces the 8086-family of processors. It describes their segmented-memory structure and their registers. Differences between the chips in the family are also covered.

## 13.1 Using the 8086-Family Processors

The Intel Corporation manufactures the group of processors referred to in this manual as the 8086-family processors. The MS-DOS and PC-DOS operating systems are designed to work under these processors and to take advantage of their features. The processors have several features in common, as follows:

- Memory is organized by using a segmented architecture.
- The instruction set is upwardly compatible—all features available in the early versions of the processor are also available in the newer versions, but the new versions contain additional features not supported in the old versions.
- The register set is also upwardly compatible.

### 13.1.1 Processor Differences

The main 8086-family processors are discussed below:

<b>Processor</b>	<b>Description</b>
8088 and 8086	<p>These processors work in real mode. They are designed to run a single process. No provision is made to protect one part of memory from actions occurring in another part of memory. The processor can address up to one megabyte of memory. Addresses specified in assembly language correspond to physical memory addresses.</p> <p>The 8088 uses an 8-bit data bus, and the 8086 uses a 16-bit data bus. This makes the 8086 somewhat faster. However, from the programming standpoint, the two processors are identical except that the 8086 will handle certain data more efficiently if you word-align it by using the <b>EVEN</b> or <b>ALIGN</b> directives (see Section 6.5, “Aligning Data”).</p>

- 80186            This processor is identical to the 8086 except that new instructions have been added and some old instructions have been optimized. It runs significantly faster than the 8086. (There is also an enhanced version of the 8088 called the 80188.)
- 80286            This processor has the added instructions and speed of the 80186. It can run in the real mode of the 8088 and 8086, but it also has an optional protected mode in which multiple processes can be run concurrently. Memory used by each process can be protected from other processes.
- In protected mode, the processor can address up to 16 megabytes of memory. However, when memory is accessed in protected mode, the addresses do not correspond to physical memory. Under protected-mode operating systems, the processor allocates and manages memory dynamically. Additional privileged instructions for initializing protected mode and controlling multiple processes are available.
- 80386            This is both a 16-bit and a 32-bit processor. It is fully compatible with the 80286; but at the system level, it implements many new features, including virtual memory, multiple 8086 processes, and addressing for up to four gigabytes of memory. This manual does not explain how to use these features.
- For the applications programmer running in DOS, the 80386 supports all the instructions of the 80286 and some additional instructions. It also allows limited use of 32-bit registers and addressing modes. Finally, the 80386 operates significantly faster than the 80286. Considerations for programming the 80386 under DOS are summarized in Section 13.4.
- 8087,  
80287, and  
80387            These are math coprocessors that work concurrently with the 8086-family processors. They do mathematical calculations faster and more accurately than can be done with the 8086-family processors. Although there are performance and technical differences between the three coprocessors, the main difference to the applications programmer is that the 80287 and 80387 can operate in protected mode. The 80387 also has several new instructions.

### 13.1.2 Real and Protected Modes

Real mode is the single-process mode used in current versions of DOS. Protected mode is the multiple-process mode used in Microsoft XENIX. It will also be used in OS/2, the planned multitasking version of DOS.

To the applications programmer, there is little difference between assembly-language programming in real or protected mode. Processes are managed at the system level by the operating system. The applications programmer does not deal with processes except when interfacing with the operating system.

This manual does not address issues of interfacing with multitasking operating systems. If you are using a multitasking system, you must use the documentation for that operating system. However, applications programmers should be aware of the following differences between real- and protected-mode programming:

- In protected mode, up to 16 megabytes of memory can be addressed (compared to one megabyte in real mode). This distinction may make a difference in the number and size of data structures created, but it should make no difference in the assembly-language syntax, since data is addressed in exactly the same way in either mode.
- In protected mode, segment registers contain segment selectors rather than actual segment values. The selectors must come from the operating system. They cannot be calculated by the program. Programming techniques that attempt to calculate segment values or address memory directly will not work.
- The planned multitasking version of DOS, OS/2, will use the Applications Program Interface (API) to access DOS functions. This system is different from the current DOS system of using interrupt 21h.
- Certain instructions that can be used normally in real mode are privileged instructions in protected-mode operating systems. These include **STI**, **CLI**, **IN**, and **OUT**. These instructions are still available at privilege levels normally used only by systems programmers.

Protected-mode operating systems, such as XENIX and OS/2, provide extended functions for doing the kinds of tasks that are currently done by using the restricted practices described above.

## 13.2 Segmented Addresses

When used with current versions of DOS, 8086-family processors can store addresses as 16-bit word values. Therefore, the maximum unsigned value that can be stored as an address is 65,535 (0FFFFh). Yet the processors are actually capable of accessing much larger addresses. The highest possible address is one megabyte (0FFFFFFh) in real mode or 16 megabytes (0FFFFFFFFh) in protected mode.

Addresses larger than 65,535 bytes are specified by combining two segmented word addresses: a 16-bit segment and a 16-bit offset within the segment. A common syntax for showing segmented addresses is the *segment:offset* format. For example, an address with a segment of 053C2h and an offset of 0107Ah would be represented as 53C2:107A. This method of specifying addresses can be used directly in most debuggers, but it is not legal in assembler source code.

In real mode, the address 53C2:107A represents a physical 20-bit address. This address can be calculated by multiplying the *segment* portion of the address by 16 (10h), and then adding the *offset* portion, as shown below:

53C20h	Segment times 10h
+ 107Ah	Offset
54C9Ah	Physical address

In protected mode, the address 53C2:107A represents a movable address. The segment portion of the address is a selector assigned a physical address by the operating system. The applications programmer has no control (and needs none) over the physical address represented by the selector.

---

### *80386 Only*

The 80386 processor supports 48-bit addresses consisting of a 16-bit segment selector and a 32-bit offset. This enables the processor to access addresses of up to four gigabytes per segment in protected mode. The processor can also run in modes compatible with the 16-bit real- and protected-mode addressing schemes of the other 8086-family processors.

---

Addresses cannot be represented directly in the *segment:offset* format in assembly language. Instead the *segment* portion of the address is specified symbolically, using a name assigned to the segment in the source code. The address represented by the symbol can then be assigned to one of the segment registers. Chapter 5, “Defining Segment Structure,” describes the directives that assign symbols to segment addresses.

The *offset* portion of addresses can be specified in a number of ways, depending on the context. Directives that assign symbols to offsets are discussed in Chapter 4, “Writing Source Code.”

In assembly-language programming, addresses can be near or far. A near address is simply the offset portion of the address. Any instruction that accesses a near address will assume that the segment address is the same as the current segment for the type of address being accessed (usually a code segment for code or a data segment for data).

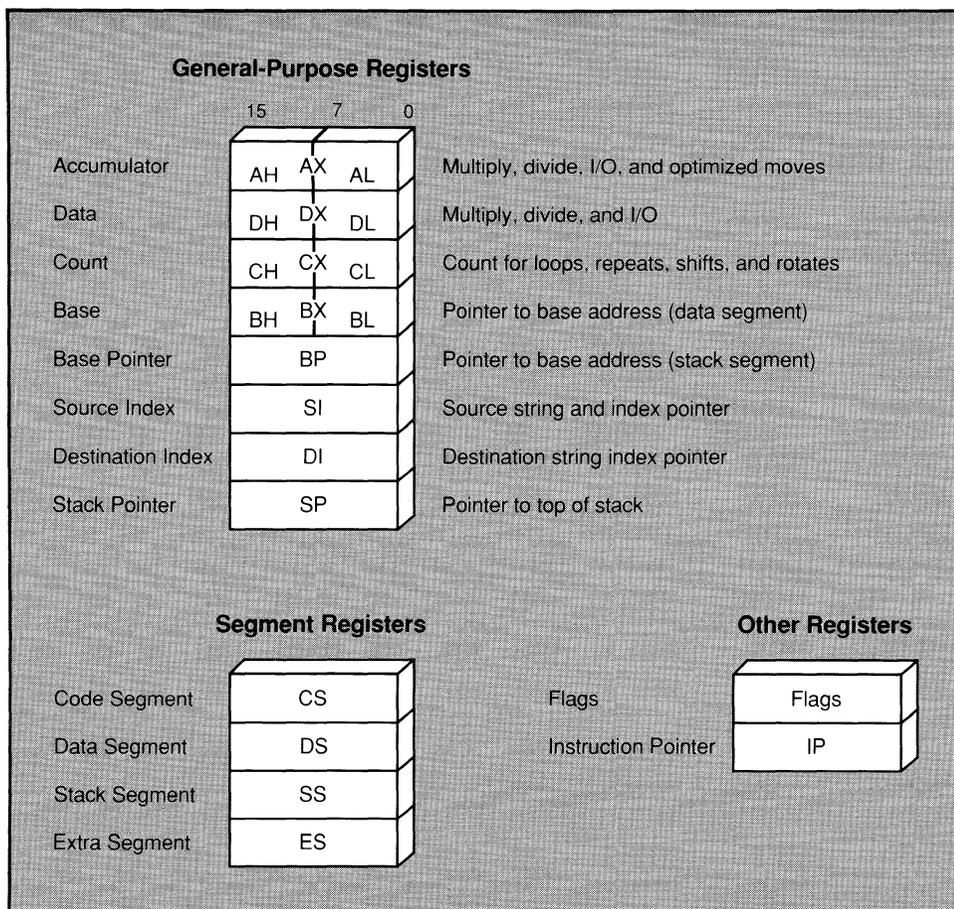
A far address consists of both the segment and offset portions of the address. Far addresses can be accessed from any segment. Both the segment and offset must be provided for instructions that access far addresses. Far addresses are more flexible because they can be used for larger programs and larger data objects. However, near addresses are more efficient, since they produce smaller code and can be accessed more quickly.

### 13.3 Using 8086-Family Registers

Like most microprocessors, the 8086-family processors have special areas of memory called registers. Some registers control the behavior or status of the processor. Others are used as temporary storage places where data can be accessed and processed faster than if data were stored in regular memory.

All the 8086-family processors share the same set of 16-bit registers. Some registers can be accessed as two separate 8-bit registers. In the 80386, most registers can also be accessed as extended 32-bit registers.

Figure 13.1 shows the registers common to all the 8086-family processors. Each register and group of registers has its own special uses and limitations, as described in this section.



**Figure 13.1 Register for 8088–80286 Processors**

■ **80386 Only**

The 80386 processor uses the same registers as the other processors in the 8086 family, but all except the segment registers can be extended to 32 bits. The extended registers begin with the letter **E**. For example, the 32-bit version of **AX** is **EAX**. The 80386 also has two additional segment registers, **FS** and **GS**. Figure 13.2 shows the extended registers of the 80386.

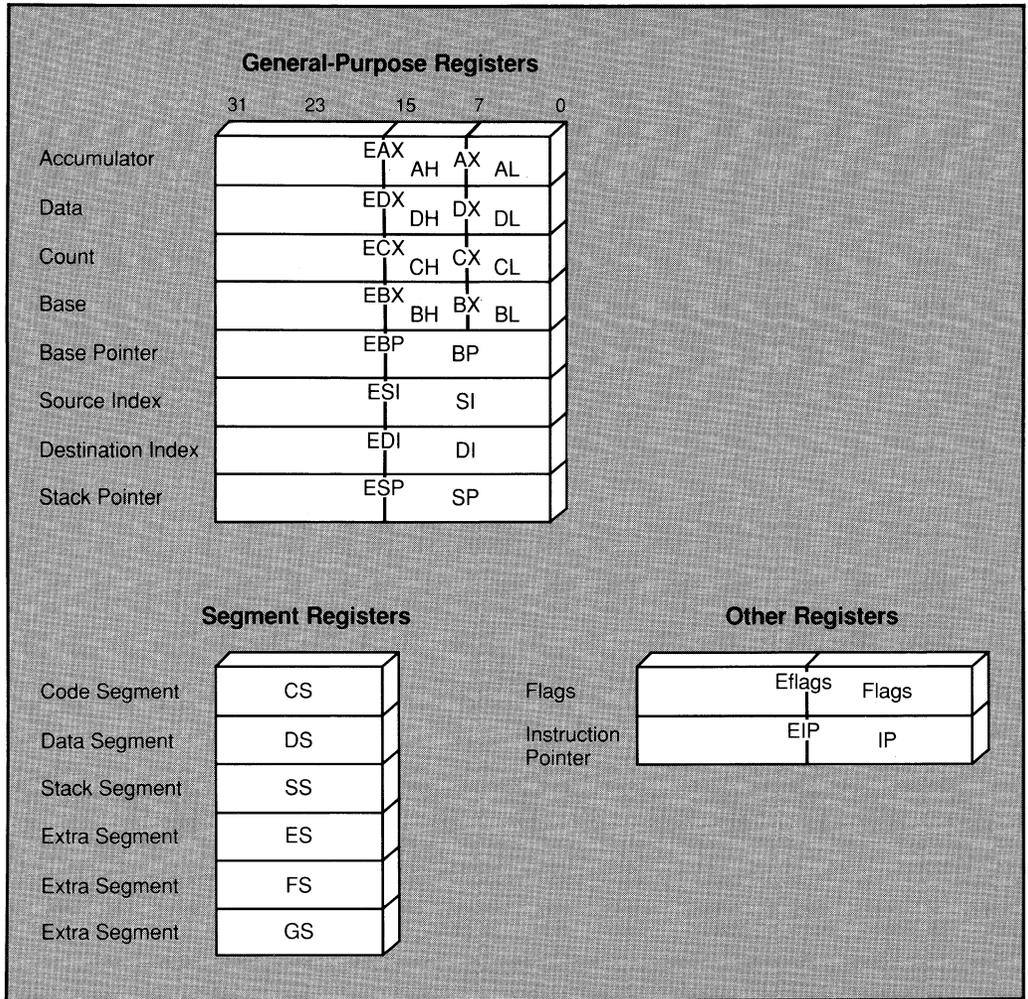


Figure 13.2 Extended Registers of 80386 Processor

### 13.3.1 Segment Registers

At run time, all addresses are relative to one of four segment registers: CS, DS, SS, or ES. These registers and the segments they correspond to are listed below:

Segment	Purpose
Code Segment (CS)	Addresses in the segment pointed to by this register contain the encoded instructions and operands specified by the program.

- Data Segment (DS)** Addresses in the segment pointed to by this register normally contain data allocated by the program.
- Stack Segment (SS)** Addresses in the segment pointed to by this register are available for instructions that store data on the program stack. A stack is an area of memory reserved for storing temporary data. See Section 15.4, "Transferring Data to and from the Stack," for information on using stacks.
- Extra Segment (ES)** Addresses in the segment pointed to by this register are available for string instructions. An additional segment can also be stored in the ES register. The 80386 has two additional segments, FS and GS.

### 13.3.2 General-Purpose Registers

The **AX**, **DX**, **CX**, **BX**, **BP**, **SI**, and **DI** registers are 16-bit, general-purpose registers. They can be used to temporarily store data during processing. Data in registers can be accessed much more quickly than data in memory. Therefore, it is more efficient to keep the most frequently used values in registers.

Memory-to-memory operations are never allowed in 8086-family processors. As a result, data must often be moved into registers before doing calculations or other operations involving more than one variable.

Four of the general registers, **AX**, **DX**, **CX**, and **BX**, can be accessed as two 8-bit registers or as a single 16-bit register. The **AH**, **DH**, **CH**, **BH** registers represent the high-order 8 bits of the corresponding registers. Similarly, **AL**, **DL**, **CL**, and **BL** represent the low-order 8 bits of the registers. All the general registers can be extended to 32 bits on the 80386 by appending the letter **E**—**EAX**, **EDX**, **ECX**, and so on.

In addition to their general use for storing data, each of the general-purpose registers has special uses in certain situations. Specific uses for each register are listed below:

<u>Register</u>	<u>Description</u>
<b>AX</b>	The <b>AX</b> (Accumulator) register is most often used for storing temporary data. Many instructions are optimized so that they work slightly faster on data in the accumulator register than on data in other registers.  With division instructions, the accumulator holds all or part of the dividend before the operation and the

quotient afterward. With multiplication instructions, the accumulator holds one of the factors before the operation and all or part of the result afterward. In I/O operations to and from ports, the accumulator holds the data being transferred.

- DX** The **DX** (Data) register is most often used for storing temporary data.
- When dividing a doubleword value, **DX** holds the upper word of the dividend before the operation and the remainder afterward. When multiplying word values, **DX** holds the upper word of the doubleword result. In I/O operations to and from ports, **DX** holds the number of the port to be accessed.
- CX** The **CX** (Count) register must be used to hold the count for instructions that do looping or other repeated operations. These include the loop instructions, certain jump instructions, repeated string instructions, and shifts and rotates. This register can also be used for temporary data storage.
- BX** The **BX** (Base) register can be used as a pointer. For instance, it can point to the base of a data object (see Section 14.3.2, “Indirect Memory Operands”). This register can also be used for temporary data storage.
- BP** The **BP** (Base Pointer) register can be used for general data storage. It is more often used as a pointer. For instance, it is often used to point to the base of a stack frame. The Microsoft conventions for passing arguments to procedures have a specific use for **BP** as described in Section 17.4.3, “Passing Arguments on the Stack.” The **SS** register is assumed as the segment register in operations using **BP**.
- SI** The **SI** (Source Index) register can be used as a pointer or for general data storage. It is often used for pointing to (indexing) an item within a data object. With string instructions, **SI** is used to point to bytes or words within a source string.
- DI** The **DI** (Destination Index) register can be used as a pointer or for general data storage. It is often used for pointing to (indexing) an item within a data object. With string instructions, **DI** is used to point to bytes or words within a destination string.

### 13.3.3 Other Registers

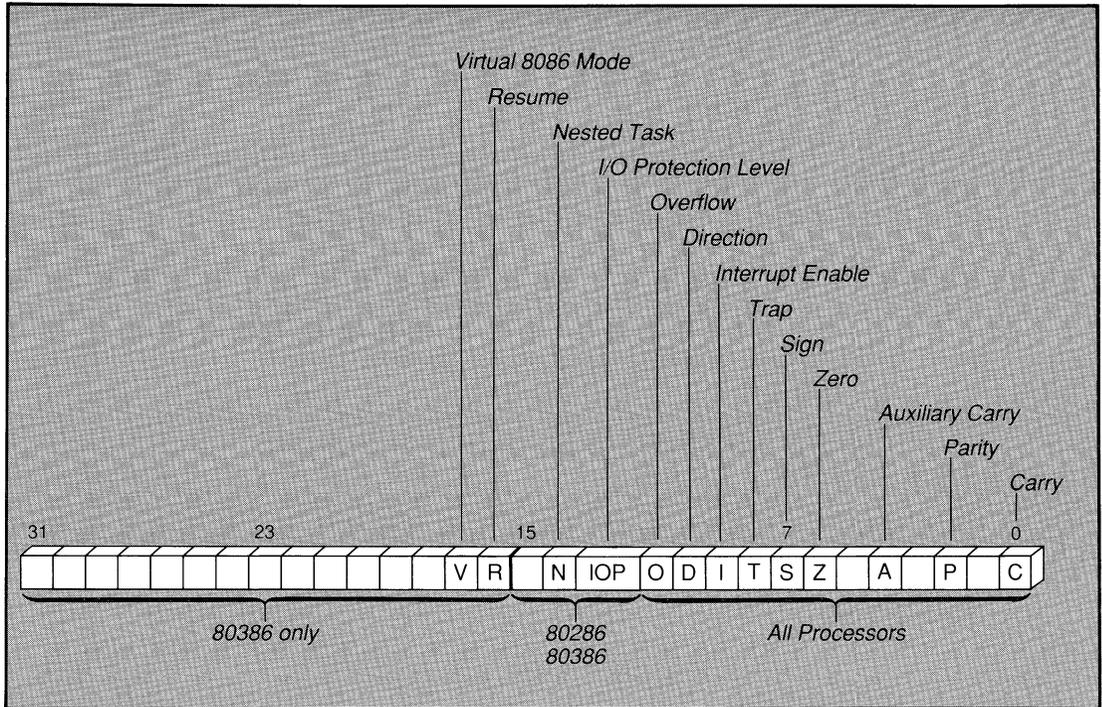
The 8086-family processors have two additional registers whose values are changed automatically by the processor.

Register	Description
SP	<p>The <b>SP</b> (Stack Pointer) register points to the current location within the stack segment. Pushing a value onto the stack increases the value of <b>SP</b> by two; popping from the stack decreases the value of <b>SP</b> by two. Call instructions store the calling address on the stack and decrease <b>SP</b> accordingly; return instructions get the stored address and increase <b>SP</b>. With 80386 32-bit segments, <b>SP</b> is increased or decreased by four instead of two. Sections 15.4.2, "Using the Stack," and 17.4.3, "Passing Arguments on the Stack," discuss operation of the stack in more detail.</p> <p><b>SP</b> is technically a general-purpose register that could be used in calculations or for temporary data storage. However, it should generally be used only for stack operations.</p>
IP	<p>The <b>IP</b> (Instruction Pointer) register always contains the address of the instruction about to be executed. The programmer cannot directly access or change the instruction pointer. However, instructions that control program flow (such as calls, jumps, loops, and interrupts) automatically change the instruction pointer.</p>

### 13.3.4 The Flags Register

The flags register is a 16-bit register made up of bits that control various instructions and reflect the current status of the processor. In the 80386 processor, the flags register is extended to 32 bits. Some bits are undefined, so there are actually 9 flags for real mode, 11 flags (including a 2-bit flag) for 80286-protected mode, and 13 flags for the 80386. The extend flags register of the 80386 is sometimes called eflags.

Figure 13.3 shows the bits of the 32-bit flags register for the 80386. Only the lower word is used for the other 8086-family processors. The unmarked bits are reserved for processor use and should never be modified by the programmer.



**Figure 13.3** Flags for 8088–80386 Processors

The nine flags common to all 8086-family processors are summarized below, starting with the low-order flags. In these descriptions, the term “set” means the bit value is 1, and “cleared” means the bit value is 0.

<b>Flag</b>	<b>Description</b>
Carry	Is set if an operation generates a carry to or a borrow from a destination operand.
Parity	Is set if the low-order bits of the result of an operation contain an even number of set bits.
Auxiliary Carry	Is set if an operation generates a carry to or a borrow from the low-order four bits of an operand. This flag is used for binary-coded decimal arithmetic.
Zero	Is set if the result of an operation is 0.
Sign	Equal to the high-order bit of the result of an operation (0 is positive, 1 is negative).

Trap	If set, the processor generates a single-step interrupt after each instruction. A debugger program can use this feature to execute a program one instruction at a time.
Interrupt Enable	If set, interrupts will be recognized and acted on as they are received. The bit can be cleared to temporarily turn off interrupt processing.
Direction	Can be set to make string operations process down from high addresses to low addresses, or can be cleared to make string operations process up from low addresses to high addresses.
Overflow	Is set if the result of an operation is too large or small to fit in the destination operand.
I/O Protection Level	This 2-bit flag indicates the protection level for input and output. Managing the protection level is a systems task not described in this manual.
Nested Task	Controls chaining of interrupted and called tasks. Controlling tasks in protected mode is a systems task not described in this manual.
Resume	If set, debug exceptions are temporarily disabled. Using 80386 debug exceptions is a systems task not described in this manual.
Virtual 8086 Mode	If set, the processor is running an 8086-family real-mode program in a protected multitasking environment. If clear, the 80386 processor is in its normal mode. Running in virtual 8086 mode is a systems task not described in this manual.

### 13.3.5 8087-Family Registers

The 8087-family processors use a stack-based architecture to access up to eight 80-bit registers. See Chapter 19, "Calculating with a Math Coprocessor," for information on using 8087-family registers and instructions. The format of real numbers used by coprocessors is explained in Section 6.3.1.5, "Real-Number Variables."

## 13.4 Using the 80386 Processor Under DOS

Many of the added functions of the 80386 are not supported by versions of DOS available at release time for Version 5.0 of the Microsoft Macro Assembler. Although DOS runs on 80386 machines, it does not operate any differently (except faster) than on an 80286 machines. New features of the 80386, such as protected mode and 8086 virtual mode, are not supported by DOS. Since 32-bit segments are only available in protected mode, they cannot be used under DOS. Techniques for overcoming these limitations are beyond the scope of this manual.

Applications programmers can use some 80386 enhancements. The following features of the 80386 can be used under current versions of DOS. Note that using any of these features means your code will not run on machines that do not have an 80386 processor.

- You can use the new 80386 instructions (except for those that manage protected mode). New instructions include bit scan (**BSF** and **BFR**); bit test (**BT**, **BTC**, **BTR**, and **BTS**); move with sign and zero extend (**MOVSX** and **MOVZX**); set byte on condition (**SET***condition*); and double-precision shift (**SHLD** and **SHRD**).
- You can use 80286 instructions that have been enhanced to work with 32-bit registers. These include the integer-multiply instruction (**IMUL**); conversion instructions (**CWDE** and **CDQ**); string instructions (**CMPSD**, **LODSD**, **MOVSD**, **SCASD**, **STOSD**, **INSD**, **OUTSD**); and 32-bit stack enhancements (**PUSHAD**, **POPAD**, **PUSHFD**, **POPFD**, and **IRETD**).
- You can use 32-bit registers for calculations. For instance, you can add and subtract doubleword integers without using multiple registers, and you can do some multiplication and division operations on 64-bit integers.
- You can use 32-bit registers to point into 16-bit segments. In previous processors, only **BX**, **BP**, **DI**, and **SI** could be used as pointers in indirect memory operands. The 80386 has the same limitations on 16-bit registers, but allows any general-purpose 32-bit register to be a pointer in an indirect memory operand. If you use this technique, you must make sure that 32-bit registers used as pointers actually contain valid 16-bit addresses.

- If a program that uses 32-bit registers needs to execute while another program is running, it should save 32-bit registers at entry and restore them when finished. Under DOS, this applies only to device drivers and terminate-and-stay-resident programs that interrupt other programs. Use **PUSHAD** to save and **POPAD** to restore. Without these instructions, the interrupting program may change the upper half of 32-bit registers, causing errors when the interrupted program regains control.

Although significant, these new features fall short of using the full power that will be available under multiprocessing 80386 operating systems.

# CHAPTER

14

## USING ADDRESSING MODES

14.1	Using Immediate Operands.....	273
14.2	Using Register Operands.....	274
14.3	Using Memory Operands.....	276
14.3.1	Direct Memory Operands.....	276
14.3.2	Indirect Memory Operands .....	278
14.3.3	80386 Indirect Memory Operands.....	282



Instruction operands can be given in different forms called addressing modes. Addressing modes tell the processor how to calculate the actual value of an operand at run time.

The three kinds of addressing modes are immediate, register, and memory operands. Memory operands are further broken into two groups, direct and indirect memory operands.

The value of operands is calculated at assembly time for immediate operands, at load time for direct memory operands, and at run time for register operands and indirect memory operands.

Although two statements may be similar and their instruction mnemonic the same, **MASM** may actually assemble different code for an instruction when it is used with different addressing modes. For example, the statements

```
mov    ax,1
```

and

```
mov    ax,place[bx][di]
```

use the same instruction, but have different encoding, timing, and size. See the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference* for more information on the encoding, timing, and size of instructions.

Instructions that take two or more operands always work right to left. The right operand is the source operand. It specifies data that will be used, but not changed, in the operation. The left operand is the destination operand. It specifies the data that will be operated on and possibly changed by the instruction.

## 14.1 Using Immediate Operands

Immediate operands consist of constant numeric data that are known or calculated at assembly time. Immediate values are coded into the executable program and processed the same way each time the program is run.

Some instructions have limits on the size of immediate values (usually 8-, 16-, or 32-bit). String constants longer than two characters (four characters on the 80386) cannot be immediate data. They must be stored in memory before they can be processed by instructions.

Many instructions permit immediate data in the source (right) operand and either memory or register data in the destination (left) operand. The instruction combines or replaces the register or memory data with the immediate data in some way defined by the instruction. Examples of this type of instruction include **MOV**, **ADD**, **CMP**, and **XOR**.

A few instructions, such as **RET** and **INT**, take a single immediate operand.

Immediate data is never permitted in the destination operand. If the source operand is immediate, the destination operand must be either register or direct memory so that there will be a place to store the result of the operation.

## ■ Examples

```

.DATA
five      DB      5          ; Memory data
nine      EQU     9          ; Constant data

.CODE
.
.
.
; Source operand is immediate
mov       bx,nine+3
add       five,3
or        bx,00100100b
in        al,43h
cmp       cx,200

; Only operand is immediate
ret       6
int       21h

```

## 14.2 Using Register Operands

Register operands consist of data stored in registers. Register-direct mode refers to using the actual value inside the register at the time the instruction is used. Registers can also be used indirectly to point to memory locations, as described in Section 14.3.2, “Indirect Memory Operands.”

Most instructions allow register values in one or more operands. Some instructions can only be used with certain registers. Often instructions have shorter encoding (and faster operation) if the accumulator register

(**AX** or **AL**) is specified. Use of segment registers in operands is limited to a few instructions and special circumstances.

The registers shown in Table 14.1 can be used in register-direct mode.

**Table 14.1**  
**Register Operands**

Register-Operand Type	Register Name			
8-bit high registers	<b>AH</b>	<b>BH</b>	<b>CH</b>	<b>DH</b>
8-bit low registers	<b>AL</b>	<b>BL</b>	<b>CL</b>	<b>DL</b>
16-bit general purpose	<b>AX</b>	<b>BX</b>	<b>CX</b>	<b>DX</b>
32-bit general, pointer, and index <sup>1</sup>	<b>EAX</b>	<b>EBX</b>	<b>ECX</b>	<b>EDX</b>
16-bit pointer and index	<b>SP</b>	<b>BP</b>	<b>SI</b>	<b>DI</b>
32-bit general, pointer, and index <sup>1</sup>	<b>ESP</b>	<b>EBP</b>	<b>ESI</b>	<b>EDI</b>
16-bit segment	<b>CS</b>	<b>DS</b>	<b>SS</b>	<b>ES</b>
Additional 80386 segment <sup>1</sup>	<b>FS</b>	<b>GS</b>		

<sup>1</sup> Available only if the 80386 processor is enabled

Registers are discussed in more detail in Section 13.3. Limitations on register use for specific instructions are discussed in sections on the specific instructions throughout Part 3, “Using Instructions.”

### ■ Examples

```

; Source and destination operands are register direct
    add    ax,bx
    mov    ds,ax
    xor    eax,ebx           ; 80386 only
    cmp    ah,bh

; Source operand is register direct
    and    stuff,dx
    sub    array[bx][si],ax

; Destination operand is register direct
    shl   ax,1
    cmp   cx,counter

; Only operand is register direct
    mul   bx
    pop   cx
    inc   ah

```

## 14.3 Using Memory Operands

Many instructions can work on data in memory. When a memory operand is given, the processor must calculate the address of the data to be processed. This address is called the “effective address.” Calculation of the effective address depends on how the operand is specified, as explained below.

---

### *Note*

Memory-to-memory operations are never allowed. These operations must be done indirectly by moving one of the memory values into a register before processing it.

---

### 14.3.1 Direct Memory Operands

A direct memory operand is a symbol that represents the address (segment and offset) of an instruction or data. The offset address represented by a direct memory operand is calculated at assembly time. The address of each operand relative to the start of the program is calculated at link time. The actual (or effective) address is calculated at load time.

Direct memory operands can be any constant or symbol representing an address. This includes labels, procedure names, variables, structure variables, record variables, or the value of the location counter.

The effective address is always relative to a segment register. The default segment register is **DS** for direct memory operands, but the default segment can be overridden with the segment-override operator (:), as explained in Section 9.2.3.

Direct memory operands are often specified as constant expressions by using the index operator. For example, the operand `table[4]` refers to the byte having an offset four bytes from the address of `table`. This expression is equivalent to `table+4`.

## ■ Example

```

stuff      .DATA
           DW      here
           .CODE
           .
           .
           mov     ax,stuff      ; Load value at address "stuff"
                                   ; (address of "here") into AX
           mov     bx,OFFSET stuff ; Load address of "stuff"
                                   ; into BX
           jmp     stuff        ; Jump to value of "stuff"
                                   ; (which is address of "here")
           jmp     here         ; Jump to the address of "here"

           jmp     ax           ; Jump to AX (value of "stuff")
           jmp     [bx]        ; Jump to [BX] (value at address
                                   ; of "stuff")
           .
           .
here:      .

```

This example illustrates the difference between memory operands that represent addresses and memory operands that represent the value at an address. Labels and variable names in the data segment (such as `stuff`) represent the value at an address. Code labels (such as `here`) represent the address itself. The four jump statements at the end of the example use different kinds of operands to transfer control to the same address.

---

### Note

If the label is omitted from a direct memory operand used with a constant index, a segment must be specified. The offset of the operand is assumed to be the start of the specified segment plus the indexed offset. For example,

```
mov     ax,ds:[100h]
```

moves the value at address 100h in the data segment into the **AX** register. It is equivalent to

```
mov     ax,ds:100h
```

If the segment override is omitted, the constant (immediate) value of the operand is used rather than the value it points to. For example,

```
mov    ax, [100h]
```

moves the value 100h into the **AX** register. It is equivalent to the statement

```
mov    ax, 100h
```

---

### 14.3.2 Indirect Memory Operands

Indirect memory operands enable you to use registers to point to values in memory. Since values in the registers can change at run time, you can use indirect memory operands to operate on data dynamically.

On all processors except the 80386, only four registers can be used in indirect mode (see Section 14.3.3, "80386 Indirect Memory Operands," for information on 80386 enhancements). **BX** and **BP** are called base registers; **DI** and **SI** are called index registers. The distinction between base and index registers is not always important. In many contexts, any of these registers can be thought of as the base or the index. In any case, an attempt to use any register other than these four in a statement that accesses memory indirectly results in an error.

You can use the base and index registers separately or in pairs, with or without specifying a displacement. A displacement can be either a constant or a direct memory. Several displacements can be given, but they are all added into a single displacement at assembly time. For example, in the statement

```
mov    ax, table[bx] [di]+6
```

both `table` and `6` are displacements. **MASM** calculates the actual offset of `table` and `at 6` to get the total displacement.

The modes in which registers can be used to specify indirect memory operands are shown in Table 14.2.

**Table 14.2**  
**Indirect Addressing Modes**

Mode	Syntax	Description
Register indirect	[BX] [BP] [DI]	Effective address is contents of register
Based or indexed	[BX] <i>disp</i> <i>displacement</i> [BP] <i>displacement</i> [DI] <i>displacement</i> [SI]	Effective address is contents of register and <i>displacement</i>
Based indexed	[BX][DI] [BP][DI] [BX][SI] [BP][SI]	Effective address is contents of base register and contents of index register
Based indexed with displacement	<i>displacement</i> [BX][DI] <i>displacement</i> [BP][DI] <i>displacement</i> [BP][SI]	Effective address is contents of base register and contents of index registers and <i>displacement</i>

Register-indirect operands are typically used to point to a memory address within a segment. Based and indexed operands are used to point to a memory address relative to a table, a one-dimensional array, or a structure. Operands with multiple indexes are useful for pointing to memory locations in complex data structures such as multidimensional arrays.

The choice of which registers to use depends on the context of the statement. String instructions require that specific registers are used in specific situations, as explained in Chapter 18, “Processing Strings.” With other instructions, base and index registers can often be used interchangeably, depending on which registers are available.

When calculating the effective address of an indirect operand, the processor uses **DS** as the default segment register if **BX** is used as a base register, or if no base register is specified. If **BP** is used anywhere in the operand, the default segment register is **SS**. The default segment can be overridden with the segment-override operator (:), as explained in Section 9.2.3 on the segment-override operator.

A common syntax for indirect memory operands is each register put within index operators ([ ]). The register or registers must always be within brackets, but a variety of alternate syntaxes is possible. Any operator that indicates addition can be used to combine the displacement and multiple registers. For example, the following statements are equivalent:

```

mov     ax,table[bx][di]
mov     ax,table[bx+di]
mov     ax,[table+bx+di]
mov     ax,[bx][di].table
mov     ax,[bx][di]+table
mov     ax,table[di][bx]

```

When using based-indexed modes, one of the registers must be a base register and the other an index register. The following statements are illegal:

```

mov     ax,table[bx][bp]    ; Illegal - two base registers
mov     ax,table[di][si]    ; Illegal - two index registers

```

Use of the index operator is explained in more detail in Section 9.2.1.3.

When an index or displacement points into an array, it must be scaled for the size of elements in the array. On all processors except the 80386, scaling must be done in separate statements (see Section 14.3.3, "80386 Indirect Memory Operands," for information on 80386 scaling). The scaling factor is 1 for bytes (no scaling necessary), 2 for words, 4 for doublewords, and 8 for quadwords. Since scaling factors (other than for bytes) are multiples of 2, they can usually be calculated quickly with the **SHL** instruction, as shown below:

```

shl     di,1                ; Scale DI for words (DI *2)

shl     di,1                ; Scale DI for doublewords (DI*4)
shl     di,1

shl     di,1                ; Scale DI for quadwords (DI*8)
shl     di,1
shl     di,1

```

Use of the **SHL** instruction for multiplication is described in more detail in Section 16.8.1, "Multiplying and Dividing by Constants."

### ■ Example 1

```

add    dx, [bx]           ; Add the word contents of DS:BX
                        ; to the contents of DX
mov    dl, [bp+6]        ; Load the byte contents
                        ; of SS:BP+6 into DL
sub    dx, 12[bx]        ; Subtract the word contents of
                        ; DS:12+BX from the contents of DX
xor    red[bx], dx       ; XOR the contents of DX with
                        ; the contents of DS:red+BX
and    dx, red[si]+3     ; AND the contents of DS:red+SI+3
                        ; with the contents of DX
dec    BYTE PTR [bx][si] ; Decrement the byte
                        ; at DS:BX+SI
cmp    cx, here[bp][si] ; Compare the contents of CX
                        ; to the contents of SS:here+BP+SI
push   place[bx][di]+2  ; Save the contents of
                        ; DS:place+BX+DI+2 on the stack
call   cs:table[bx]     ; Call the routine pointed to
                        ; by the contents of CS:table+bx

```

The statements in Example 1 illustrate how the various instructions can be used with indirect memory operands.

### ■ Example 2

```

scrnbuff EQU    OB800h           ; CGA screen buffer (actual
                                ; value is hardware dependent)
mov    ax, scrnbuff             ; Load address of screen buffer
mov    es, ax                   ; into ES

mov    ax, 4                    ; Push column 4 as third argument
push  ax
mov    ax, 6                    ; Push row 6 as second argument
push  ax
mov    ax, "z"                  ; Push "z" as first argument
push  ax
call  show
add    sp, 6                    ; Restore stack
.
.
show PROC NEAR
push  bp                       ; Save BP
mov   bp, sp                   ; and set up stack frame
push  si                       ; Save SI (so procedure could
                                ; be called from C)

mov   si, [bp+8]               ; Load column
dec   si                       ; Adjust for zero
shl   si, 1                    ; Scale for 2 bytes per character
mov   bx, [bp+6]               ; Load row
dec   bx                       ; Adjust for zero
mov   ax, 160                  ; Multiply 160 bytes per line
mul   bx                       ; times current row
mov   bx, ax                   ; Put result in index

mov   dl, BYTE PTR [bp+4]      ; Load character
mov   es:[bx][si], dl         ; Put character in buffer

pop   si                       ; Restore SI and BP
pop   bp
ret                                ; Return
show ENDP

```

Example 2 illustrates two uses of indirect memory operands. Arguments are pushed onto the stack before calling a procedure. When the procedure is called, the arguments are removed using indirect memory operands.

The procedure writes a character to a screen buffer (a common technique with many computers and display adapters). The **BX** register points to the column position in the buffer; the **SI** register points to the row position. In this example, the **ES** register must contain the address of the screen buffer (this address varies for different hardware).

The procedure follows the calling conventions of Microsoft C and could be called directly from that language. Note that **SI** is saved and restored because the C compiler requires that it not be changed by a procedure.

Example 2 works on any processor. Section 14.3.3, "80386 Indirect Memory Operands," shows an enhanced version that uses 80386 instructions and addressing modes.

### 14.3.3 80386 Indirect Memory Operands

Instructions for the 80386 can be given in two modes, 16 bit and 32 bit. Understanding these modes is important, since indirect memory operands are different in each mode.

The 80386 instruction modes are controlled by the use type of the code segment in which the instructions are located. The mode is 16 bit if the use type is **USE16** or 32 bit if the use type is **USE32**. In 32-bit mode, an offset address can be up to four gigabytes. In 16-bit mode, an offset address can be up to 64K. The 16-bit mode of the 80386 is the same as the mode used by all the other 8086-family processors.

If the 80386 processor is enabled (with the **.386** directive), 32-bit general-purpose registers are always available. They can be used from 16-bit or 32-bit segments. When 32-bit registers are used, many of the limitations of 16-bit indirect memory modes do not apply. The following extensions are available when 32-bit registers are used in indirect memory operands:

- There are fewer limitations on the registers that can be used as base and index registers. With other 8086-family processors, only **BX**, **BP**, **DI**, and **SI** registers can be used in indirect memory operands. With the 80386, any general-purpose 32-bit register can be used. The same register can even be used as both the base and the index. Several examples are shown below:

```
add    edx, [eax]           ; Add double
mov    dl, [esp+10]        ; Add byte from stack
dec    WORD PTR [edx][eax] ; Decrement word
cmp    cx, array[eax][eax] ; Compare word from array
jmp    table[ecx]          ; Jump into pointer table
```

- The index register can have a scaling factor of 1, 2, 4, or 8. Any register except **ESP** can be the index register and can have a scaling factor. The scaling factor is specified by using the multiplication operator (\*) adjacent to the register.

Scaling can be used to index into arrays with different sizes of elements. For example, the scaling factor is 1 for byte arrays (no scaling needed), 2 for word arrays, 4 for doubleword arrays, and 8 for quadword arrays. There is no performance penalty for using a scaling factor. Scaling is illustrated in the following examples:

```
mov    eax,darray[edx*4]    ; Load double of double array
mov    eax,[esi*8][edi]    ; Load double of quad array
mov    ax,wtbl[ecx*2][edx*2] ; Load word of word array
```

- The default segment register is **SS** if the base register is **EBP** or **ESP**; it is **DS** for all other the base registers. If two registers are used, only one can have a scaling factor and it is defined to be the index register. The other register is the base. If scaling is not used, the first register is the base. If one register is used, it is the base, regardless of scaling. The following examples illustrate how to determine the base register:

```
mov    eax,[edx][ebp*4] ; EDX base (not scaled) - DS segment
mov    eax,[edx*1][ebp] ; EBP base (not scaled) - SS segment
mov    eax,[edx][ebp]   ; EDX base (first) - DS segment
mov    eax,[ebp][edx]   ; EBP base (first) - SS segment
mov    eax,[ebp*2]     ; EBP base (only) - SS segment
```

Statements can mix 16- and 32-bit registers. However, it is important to understand the implications of these statements. For example, the following statement is legal for either 16- or 32-bit segments:

```
mov    eax,[bx]
```

This moves the 32-bit value pointed to by **BX** into the **EAX** register. Although **BX** is a 16-bit pointer, it may still point into a 32-bit segment. However, the following statement is never legal:

```
mov    eax,[cx]
```

The **CX** register may not be used as a 16-bit pointer (although **ECX** may be used as a 32-bit pointer).

The following statement is also legal in either mode:

```
mov    bx,[eax]
```

This moves the 16-bit value pointed to by **EAX** into the **BX** register. This works fine in 32-bit mode; but in 16-bit mode, a 32-bit pointer moved into a 16-bit segment may cause problems. If **EAX** contains a 16-bit value (the

top half of the 32-bit register is 0), then the statement works. However, if the top half of the **EAX** register is not 0, the processor may generate an error.

---

### Warning

It is possible to use both 16-bit and 32-bit modes in the same program by defining separate code segments for the two modes. However, this is a complex technique that involves special calculations to account for the differences between the two modes. Combining modes is generally done only in systems programming and is beyond the scope of this manual.

---

### ■ Example

```

.MODEL small                ; .MODEL precedes .386
.386                        ; to make 16-bit segments

scrnbuff EQU OB800h         ; CGA screen buffer (actual
                             ; value is hardware dependent)

.CODE
.
.
mov ax,scrnbuff             ; Load address of screen buffer
mov es,ax                   ; into ES

push 4                      ; Push column 4 as third argument
push 6                      ; Push line 6 as second argument
push "z"                    ; Push "z" as first argument
call show                   ; Call the procedure
add sp,6                    ; Restore stack
.
.
show PROC NEAR

movzx ebx,WORD PTR [esp+6] ; Load column
dec ebx                    ; Adjust for zero
movzx eax,WORD PTR [esp+4] ; Load row
dec eax                    ; Adjust for zero
imul eax,160               ; Multiply 160 bytes per line

mov dl,[esp+2]             ; Load character
mov es:[eax][ebx*2],dl     ; Put character in buffer

ret                         ; Return
show ENDP

```

This example is the same as the one in Section 14.3.2, “Indirect Memory Operands,” except that it uses enhanced 80386 instructions and addressing modes to make the code shorter and more efficient. Note the following differences:

- Since **ESP** can be used as a base register, stack registers can be accessed directly without the stack setup required by previous processors. This assumes that **ESP** does not change inside the procedure.
- Values are loaded and zero-extended in one step by using the **MOVZX** instruction (see Section 15.2.3, “Moving and Extending Values”).
- **EBX** is used with scaling. In the previous example, scaling had to be done with a separate instruction.
- **EAX** and **EBX** are used instead of **BX** and **SI**. This saves some register swapping, since **EAX** can be used both for the result of the multiplication operation and as a base register.
- Immediate operands are used with the **PUSH** and **IMUL** instructions (described in Sections 15.4.1, “Pushing and Popping,” and 16.3, “Multiplying,” respectively). These enhancements were implemented with the 80186 processor, but they are rarely used since most programs have to be able to run on the 8088 and 8086. Since 80836 programs can never run on the earlier processors, there is no reason not to use enhanced 80186 instructions.



# CHAPTER

# 15

## LOADING, STORING, AND MOVING DATA

15.1	Transferring Data .....	289
15.1.1	Copying Data .....	289
15.1.2	Exchanging Data .....	290
15.1.3	Looking Up Data .....	290
15.1.4	Transferring Flags .....	291
15.2	Converting between Data Sizes .....	292
15.2.1	Extending Signed Values .....	292
15.2.2	Extending Unsigned Values .....	294
15.2.3	Moving and Extending Values .....	294
15.3	Loading Pointers .....	295
15.3.1	Loading Near Pointers .....	295
15.3.2	Loading Far Pointers .....	296
15.4	Transferring Data to and from the Stack .....	298
15.4.1	Pushing and Popping .....	298
15.4.2	Using the Stack .....	301
15.4.3	Saving Flags on the Stack .....	301
15.4.4	Saving All Registers on the Stack .....	302
15.5	Transferring Data to and from Ports .....	303



The 8086-family processors provide several instructions for loading, storing, or moving various kinds of data. Among the types of transferable data are variables, pointers, and flags. Data can be moved to and from registers, memory, ports, and the stack. This chapter explains the instructions for moving data from one location to another.

## 15.1 Transferring Data

Moving data is one of the most common tasks in assembly-language programming. Data can be moved between registers or between memory and registers. Immediate data can be loaded into registers or into memory.

### 15.1.1 Copying Data

The **MOV** instruction is the most common method of moving data. This instruction can be thought of as a “copy” instruction, since it always copies the source operand to the destination operand. Immediately after a **MOV** instruction, the source and destination operands both contain the same value. The old value in the destination operand is destroyed.

#### ■ Syntax

**MOV** { *register* | *memory* }, { *register* | *memory* | *immediate* }

#### ■ Example 1

```

mov    ax,7        ; Immediate to register
mov    mem,7       ; Immediate to memory direct
mov    mem[bx],7   ; Immediate to memory indirect

mov    mem,ds      ; Segment register to memory
mov    mem,ax      ; Register to memory direct
mov    mem[bx],ax  ; Register to memory indirect

mov    ax,mem      ; Memory direct to register
mov    ax,mem[bx]  ; Memory indirect to register
mov    ds,mem      ; Memory to segment register

mov    ax,bx       ; Register to register
mov    ds,ax       ; General register to segment register
mov    ax,ds       ; Segment register to general register

```

The statements in Example 1 illustrate each type of memory move that can be done with a single instruction. Example 2 illustrates several common types of moves that require two instructions.

## ■ Example 2

```

; Move immediate to segment register
    mov     ax,DGROUP ; Load immediate to general register
    mov     ds,ax      ; Store general register to segment register

; Move memory to memory
    mov     ax,mem1    ; Load memory to general register
    mov     mem2,ax    ; Store general register to memory

; Move segment register to segment register
    mov     ax,ds      ; Load segment register to general register
    mov     es,ax      ; Store general register to segment register

```

## 15.1.2 Exchanging Data

The **XCHG** (Exchange) instruction exchanges the data in the source and destination operands. Data can be exchanged between registers or between registers and memory.

### ■ Syntax

**XCHG** { *register* | *memory* }, { *register* | *memory* }

### ■ Examples

```

xchg     ax,bx        ; Put AX in BX and BX in AX
xchg     memory,ax    ; Put "memory" in AX and AX in "memory"

```

## 15.1.3 Looking Up Data

The **XLAT** (Translate) instruction is used to load data from a table in memory. The instruction is useful for translating bytes from one coding system to another.

### ■ Syntax

**XLAT**[**B**] [[*segment:*]*memory*]

The **BX** register must contain the address of the start of the table. By default the **DS** register contains the segment of the table, but a segment override can be used to specify a different segment. The operand need not be given except when specifying a segment override.

Before the **XLAT** instruction is called, the **AL** register should contain a value that points into the table (the start of the table is considered 0). After the instruction is called, **AL** will contain the table value pointed to. For example, if **AL** contains 7, the 8th byte of the table will be placed in **AL** register.

---

### Note

For compatibility with Intel 80386 mnemonics, **MASM** recognizes **XLATB** as a synonym for **XLAT**. In the Intel syntax, **XLAT** requires an operand; **XLATB** does not allow one. **MASM** never requires an operand, but always allows one.

---

### ■ Example

```

                                ; Table of Hexadecimal digits
hex      DB "0123456789ABCDEF"
convert  DB "You pressed the key with ASCII code "
key      DB "?,"h",13,10,"$"
                                .CODE
                                .
                                .
                                .
mov      ah,8                    ; Get a key in AL
int      21h                    ; Call DOS
mov      bx,OFFSET hex          ; Load table address
mov      ah,al                  ; Save a copy in high byte
and      al,00001111b          ; Mask out top character
xlat                                ; Translate
mov      key[1],al              ; Store the character
mov      cl,12                  ; Load shift count
shr      ax,cl                  ; Shift high character into position
xlat                                ; Translate
mov      key,al                 ; Store the character
mov      dx,OFFSET convert      ; Load message
mov      ah,9                   ; Display it
int      21h                    ; Call DOS

```

This example looks up hexadecimal characters in a table in order to convert an 8-bit binary number to a string representing a hexadecimal number.

## 15.1.4 Transferring Flags

The 8086-family processors provide instructions for loading and storing flags in the **AH** register.

## ■ Syntax

**LAHF**

**SAHF**

The status of the lower byte of the flags register can be saved to the **AH** register with **LAHF** and then later restored with **SAHF**. If you need to save and restore the entire flags register, use **PUSHF** and **POPF**, as described in Section 15.4.3, "Saving Flags on the Stack."

**SAHF** is often used with a coprocessor to transfer coprocessor control flags to processor control flags. Section 19.6, "Controlling Program Flow," explains and illustrates this technique.

## 15.2 Converting between Data Sizes

Since moving data between registers of different sizes is illegal, you must take special steps if you need to extend a register value to a larger register or register pair.

The procedure is different for signed and unsigned values. The processor cannot tell the difference between signed and unsigned numbers; the programmer has to understand this difference and program accordingly.

### 15.2.1 Extending Signed Values

The **CBW** (Convert Byte to Word) and **CWD** (Convert Word to Doubleword) instructions are provided to sign-extend values. Sign-extending means copying the sign bit of the unextended operand to all bits of the extended operand.

## ■ Syntax

**CBW**

**CWD**

The **CBW** instruction converts an 8-bit signed value in **AL** to a 16-bit signed value in **AX**. The **CWD** instruction is similar except that it sign-extends a 16-bit value in **AX** to a 32-bit value in the **DX:AX** register pair. Both instructions work only on values in the accumulator register.

### ■ Example 1

```

.DATA
mem8      DB      -5
mem16    DW      -5
.CODE
.
.
mov      ax,mem8  ; Load 8-bit -5 (FBh)
cbw     ; Convert to 16-bit -5 (FFFBh) in AX

mov      ax,mem16 ; Load 16-bit -5 (FFFBh)
cwd     ; Convert to 32-bit -5 (FFFF:FFFBh)
        ; in DX:AX

```

### ■ 80386 Only

The 80386 processor provides additional conversion instructions for 32-bit signed values.

### ■ Syntax

**CWDE**

**CDQ**

The **CWDE** (Convert Word to Doubleword Extended) instruction converts a signed 16-bit value in **AX** to a signed 32-bit signed value in **EAX**. The **CDQ** (Convert Doubleword to Quadword) instruction converts a 32-bit signed value in **EAX** to a signed 64-bit value in the **EDX:EAX** register pair.

### ■ Example 2

```

.DATA
mem16    DW      -5
mem32    DD      -5
.CODE
.
.
mov      ax,mem16 ; Load 16-bit -5 (FFFBh)
cwde   ; Convert to 32-bit -5 (FFFFFFFBh) in EAX
mov     eax,mem32 ; Load 32-bit -5 (FFFFFFFBh)
cdq    ; Convert to 64-bit -5
        ; (FFFFFFFF:FFFFFFFBh) in EDX:EAX

```

## 15.2.2 Extending Unsigned Values

To extend unsigned numbers, set the value of the upper register to 0.

### ■ Example

```

mem8      .DATA
          DB      251
mem16     DB      251
          .CODE
          .
          .
          mov     al,mem8      ; Load 251 (FBh) from 8-bit memory
          xor     ah,ah        ; Zero upper half (AH)

          mov     ax,mem16     ; Load 251 (FBh) from 16-bit memory
          xor     dx,dx        ; Zero upper half (DX)

```

## 15.2.3 Moving and Extending Values

### ■ 80386 Only

The 80386 processor provides instructions that move and extend a value to a larger data size in a single step. The same thing can be done in two steps with earlier processors, but the new 80386 instructions are faster.

### ■ Syntax

```

MOVSBX register, { register | memory }
MOVZBX register, { register | memory }

```

**MOVSBX** moves a signed value into a register and sign-extends it.

**MOVZBX** moves an unsigned value into a register and zero-extends it.

## ■ Example

```

; Enhanced 80386 instructions
        movzx    dx,bl        ; Load unsigned 8-bit value into
                               ; 16-bit register and zero extend

; Equivalent to these 80286 instructions
        mov     dl,bl        ; Load 8-bit unsigned value
        xor     dh,dh        ; Clear the top of register

; Enhanced 80386 instructions
        movsx   dx,bl        ; Load unsigned 8-bit value into
                               ; 16-bit register and sign extend

; Equivalent to these 80286 instructions
        mov     al,bl        ; Load 8-bit unsigned value to AL
        cbw    ; Sign extend to AX
        mov     dx,ax        ; Copy to 16-bit register

```

## 15.3 Loading Pointers

The 8086-family processors provide several instructions for loading pointer values into registers or register pairs. They can be used to load either near or far pointers.

### 15.3.1 Loading Near Pointers

The **LEA** instruction loads a near pointer into a specified register.

#### ■ Syntax

**LEA** *register,memory*

The destination register may be any general-purpose register. The source operand may be any memory operand. The effective address of the source operand is placed in the destination register.

The **LEA** instruction can be used to calculate the effective address of a direct memory operand, but this is usually not efficient, since the address of a direct memory operand is a constant known at assembly time. For example, the following statements have the same effect, but the second version is faster:

```
lea    dx,string      ; Load effective address - slow
mov    dx,OFFSET string ; Load offset - fast
```

The **LEA** instruction is more useful for calculating the address of indirect memory operands:

```
lea    dx,string[si]  ; Load effective address
```

### ■ 80386 Only

Scaling of indirect memory operands gives the **LEA** instruction some interesting side effects with the 80386 processor. (Scaling is explained in Section 14.3.3, “80386 Indirect Memory Operands.” By using a 32-bit value as both the index and the base register in an indirect memory operand, you can multiply by the constants 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, and 9 more quickly than you could by using the **MUL** instruction.

```
lea    ebx, [eax*2]      ; EBX = 2 * EAX
lea    ebx, [eax*2+eax]  ; EBX = 3 * EAX
lea    ebx, [eax*4]      ; EBX = 4 * EAX
lea    ebx, [eax*4+eax]  ; EBX = 5 * EAX
lea    ebx, [eax*8]      ; EBX = 8 * EAX
lea    ebx, [eax*8+eax]  ; EBX = 9 * EAX
```

Multiplication by constants can also sometimes be made faster by using shift instructions, as described in Section 16.8.1, “Multiplying and Dividing by Constants.”

## 15.3.2 Loading Far Pointers

The **LDS** and **LES** instructions load far pointers.

### ■ Syntax

**LDS** *register,memory*

**LES** *register,memory*

The memory address being pointed to is specified in the source operand, and the register where the offset will be stored is specified in the destination operand.

The address must be stored in memory with the offset in the upper word and the segment in the lower word. The segment register where the segment will be stored is specified in the instruction name. For example, **LDS** puts the segment in **DS**, and **LES** puts the segment in **ES**. These instructions are often used with string instructions, as explained in Chapter 18, "Processing Strings."

### ■ Example

```

        .DATA
string  DB      "This is a string."
fpstring DD     string      ; Far pointer to string
pointers DD     100 DUP (?)
        .CODE
        .
        .
        les     di,fpstring   ; Put address in ES:DI pair
        lds     si,pointers[bx] ; Put address in DS:SI pair

```

### ■ 80386 Only

The 80386 processor has additional instructions for loading far pointers. These instructions are exactly like **LDS** and **LES**, except for the segment register in which they put the segment address.

### ■ Syntax

**LSS** *register,memory*

**LFS** *register,memory*

**LGS** *register,memory*

The **LSS**, **LFS**, and **LGS** instructions load the segment address into **SS**, **FS**, and **GS** respectively.

### ■ Example

```

        .386                      ; .386 first for 32-bit mode
        .MODEL large
        .DATA
string  DB      "This is a string."
fpstring DF     string      ; Far pointer to string
        .CODE
        .
        .
        lgs     edi,fpstring   ; Put address in GS:EDI pair

```

## 15.4 Transferring Data to and from the Stack

A stack is an area of memory for storing temporary data. Unlike other segments in which data is stored starting from low memory, data on the stack is stored in reverse order starting from high memory.

Initially, the stack is an uninitialized segment of a finite size. As data is added to the stack at run time, the stack grows downward from high memory to low memory. When items are removed from the stack, it shrinks upward from low memory to high memory.

The stack has several purposes in the 8086-family processors. The **CALL**, **INT**, **RET**, and **IRET** instructions automatically use the stack to store the calling addresses of procedures and interrupts (see Sections 17.4, “Using Procedures,” and 17.5, “Using Interrupts”). You can also use the **PUSH** and **POP** instructions and their variations to store values on the stack.

### 15.4.1 Pushing and Popping

In 8086-family processors, the **SP** (stack pointer) register always points to the current location in the stack. The **PUSH** and **POP** instructions use the **SP** register to keep track of the current position in the stack.

The values pointed to by the **BP** and **SP** registers are relative to the stack segment (**SS** register). The **BP** register is often used to point to the base of a frame of reference (a stack frame) within the stack.

#### ■ Syntax

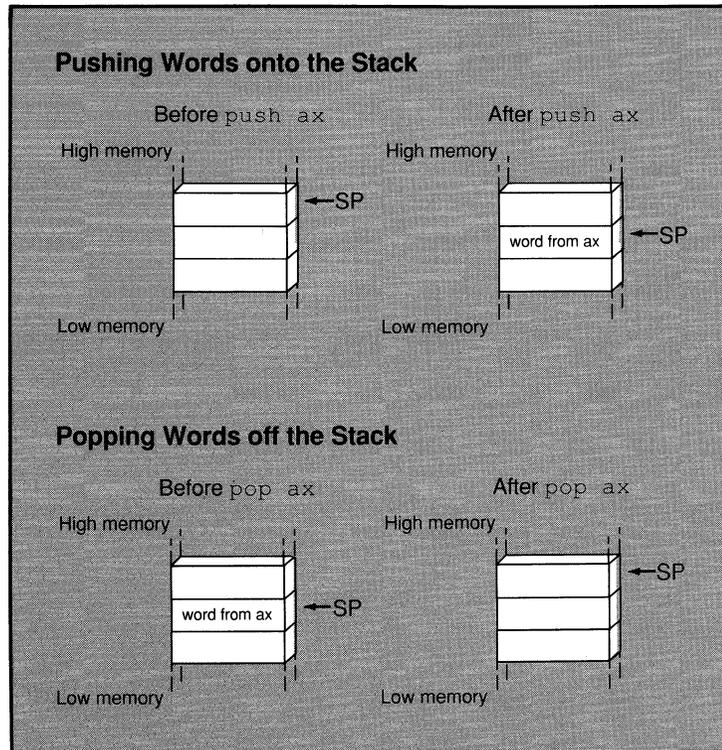
```
PUSH { register | memory }  
POP { register | memory }  
PUSH immediate (80186–80386 only)
```

The **PUSH** instruction is used to store a two-byte operand on the stack. The **POP** instruction is used to retrieve a previously pushed value. When a value is pushed onto the stack, the **SP** register is decreased by two. When a value is popped off the stack, the **SP** register is increased by two. Although the stack always contains word values, the **SP** register points to bytes. Thus **SP** changes in multiples of two. (In 80386 32-bit segments, four-byte values are pushed and **SP** changes in multiples of four.)

*Note*

The 8088 and 8086 processors differ from later Intel processors in how they push and pop the **SP** register. If you give the statement `push sp` with the 8088 or 8086, the word pushed will be the word in **SP** after the push operation. The same statement under the 80186, 80286, or 80386 processor pushes the word in **SP** before the push operation.

Figure 15.1 illustrates how pushes and pops change the **SP** register. Notice that the value pushed onto the stack remains in stack memory even after it has been popped. However, since the stack pointer is above it, the value is now unknown and may be overwritten the next time the stack is used.



**Figure 15.1** Stack Status after Pushes and Pops

The **PUSH** and **POP** instructions are almost always used in pairs. Words are popped off the stack in reverse order from the order in which they are pushed onto the stack. You should normally do the same number of pops as pushes to return the stack to its original status. However, it is possible to return the stack to its original status by subtracting the correct number of words from the **SP** register.

Values on the stack can be accessed by using indirect memory operands with **BP** as the base register.

### ■ Example

```

mov     bp,sp           ; Set stack frame
push   ax              ; Push first; SP = BP + 2
push   bx              ; Push second; SP = BP + 4
push   cx              ; Push third; SP = BP + 6
.
.
.
mov     ax,[bp+6]      ; Put third in AX
mov     bx,[bp+4]      ; Put second in BX
mov     cx,[bp+2]      ; Put first in CX
.
.
.
sub     sp,6           ; Restore stack pointer
                        ;   two bytes per push

```

### ■ 80186/286/386 Only

Starting with the 80186, the **PUSH** instruction can be given with an immediate operand. For example, the following statement is legal on the 80186, 80286, and 80386 processors:

```

push   7               ; 3 clocks on 80286

```

This statement is faster than the following equivalent statements, which are required on the 8088 or 8086:

```

mov     ax,7           ; 2 clocks on 80286
push   ax              ; 3 clocks on 80286

```

### ■ 80386 Processor Only

When a **PUSH** or **POP** instruction is used in a 32-bit code segment (one with **USE32** use type), the value transferred is a four-byte value. A warning message will be generated if you try to push a 16-bit value in a 32-bit segment or a 32-bit value in a 16-bit segment.

## 15.4.2 Using the Stack

The stack can be used to store temporary data. For example, in the Microsoft calling convention, the stack is used to pass arguments to a procedure. The arguments are pushed onto the stack before the call. The procedure retrieves and uses them. Then the stack is restored to its original position at the end of the procedure. The stack can also be used to store variables that are local to a procedure. Both these techniques are discussed in Section 17.4.3, “Passing Arguments on the Stack.”

Another common use of the stack is to store temporary data when there are no free registers available or when a particular register must hold more than one value. For example, the **CX** register usually holds the count for loops. If two loops are nested, the outer count is loaded into **CX** at the start. When the inner loop starts, the outer count is pushed onto the stack and the inner count loaded into **CX**. When the inner loop finishes, the original count is popped back into **CX**.

### ■ Example

```

outer:      mov     cx,10      ; Load outer loop counter
           .
           .                ; Start outer loop task
           .
           push   cx        ; Save outer loop value
inner:      mov     cx,20     ; Load inner loop counter
           .
           .                ; Do inner loop task
           .
           loop   inner     ; Loop inner loop
           pop    cx        ; Restore outer loop counter
           .
           .                ; Continue outer loop task
           .
           loop   outer

```

## 15.4.3 Saving Flags on the Stack

Flags can be pushed and popped onto the stack using the **PUSHF** and **POPF** instructions.

### ■ Syntax

**PUSHF**  
**POPF**

These instructions are sometimes used to save the status of flags before a procedure call and then to restore the same status after the procedure. They can also be used within a procedure to save and restore the flag status of the caller.

■ **Example**

```
pushf
call   systask
popf
```

■ **80386 Only**

When used from a 32-bit code segment, the **PUSHF** and **POPF** instructions do not automatically transfer 32-bit values. You must append the letter **D** (for doubleword) to the instruction name. Thus the 32-bit versions of these instructions are **PUSHFD** and **POPFD**.

### 15.4.4 Saving All Registers on the Stack

■ **80186/286/386 Only**

Starting with the 80186 processor, the **PUSHA** and **POPA** instructions were implemented to push or pop all the general-purpose registers with one instruction.

■ **Syntax**

**PUSHA**  
**POPA**

These instructions can be used to save the status of all registers before a procedure call and then to restore them after the return. Using **PUSHA** and **POPA** instructions is significantly faster and takes fewer bytes of code than pushing and popping each register individually.

The registers are pushed in the following order: **AX**, **CX**, **DX**, **BX**, **SP**, **BP**, **SI**, and **DI**. The **SP** word pushed is the value before the first register is pushed. The registers are popped in the opposite order.

■ **Example**

```
pusha
call   systask
popa
```

**■ 80386 Only**

When used from a 32-bit code segment, the **PUSHA** and **POPA** instructions do not automatically transfer 32-bit values. You must append the letter **D** (for doubleword) to the instruction name. Thus the 32-bit versions of these instructions are **PUSHAD** and **POPAD**.

## 15.5 Transferring Data to and from Ports

Ports are the gateways between hardware devices and the processor. Each port has a unique number through which it can be accessed. Ports can be used for low-level communication with devices such as disks, the video display, or the keyboard. The **OUT** instruction is used to send data to a port; the **IN** instruction receives data from a port.

**■ Syntax**

**IN** *accumulator*, { *portnumber* | **DX** }  
**OUT** { *portnumber* | **DX** }, *accumulator*

When using the **IN** and **OUT** instructions, the number of the port can either be an 8-bit immediate value or the **DX** register. You must use **DX** for ports with a number higher than 256. The value to be received from the port must be in the accumulator register (**AX** for word values or **AL** for byte values).

When using the **IN** instruction, the number of the port is given as the source operand and the value to be sent to the port is the destination operand. When using the **OUT** instruction, the number of the port is given as the destination operand and the value to be sent to the port is the source operand.

In applications programming, most communication with hardware is done with DOS or BIOS calls. Ports are more often used in systems programming. Since systems programming is beyond the scope of this manual and since ports differ greatly depending on hardware, the **IN** and **OUT** instructions are not explained in detail here.

---

*Note*

Under protected-mode operating systems, **IN** and **OUT** are privileged instructions and can only be used in privileged mode.

---

## ■ Example

```

sound      EQU      61h      ; Actual values are hardware dependent
timer     EQU      42h      ; Port to chip that controls speaker
on        EQU      00000011b ; Bits 0 and 1 turn on speaker

          in      al,sound   ; Get current port setting
          or      al,on     ; Turn on speaker and connect timer
          out     sound,al   ; Put value back in port

          mov     al,50     ; Start at 50
sounder:  out     timer,al   ; Send byte to timer port...

          mov     cx,2000   ; Loop 2000 times to delay
hold:    loop    hold

          dec     al        ; Go down one step
          jnz    sounder    ; Repeat for each step

          in     al,sound   ; Get port value
          and    al,NOT on  ; Turn it back off
          out    sound,al   ; Put it back in port

```

This example creates a sound of ascending frequency on the IBM PC and IBM-compatible computers. The technique of making sound or the port values used may be different on other hardware.

## ■ 80186/286/386 Only

Starting with the 80186 processor, instructions were implemented to send strings of data to and from ports. The instructions are **INS**, **INSB**, **INSW**, **OUTS**, **OUTSB**, and **OUTSW**. The operation of these instructions is much like the operation of other string instructions. They are discussed in Section 18.7, "Transferring Strings to and from Ports."

# CHAPTER

# 16

## DOING ARITHMETIC AND BIT MANIPULATIONS

16.1	Adding.....	307
16.1.1	Adding Values Directly .....	307
16.1.2	Adding Values in Multiple Registers.....	309
16.2	Subtracting.....	309
16.2.1	Subtracting Values Directly .....	310
16.2.2	Subtracting with Values in Multiple Registers .....	311
16.3	Multiplying.....	312
16.4	Dividing.....	314
16.5	Calculating with Binary Coded Decimals.....	316
16.5.1	Unpacked BCD Numbers.....	317
16.5.2	Packed BCD Numbers.....	319
16.6	Doing Logical Bit Manipulations.....	320
16.6.1	AND Operations.....	321
16.6.2	OR Operations .....	322
16.6.3	XOR Operations.....	322
16.6.4	NOT Operations.....	323
16.7	Scanning for Set Bits .....	324
16.8	Shifting and Rotating Bits.....	325
16.8.1	Multiplying and Dividing by Constants .....	327
16.8.2	Moving Bits to the Least-Significant Position .....	329
16.8.3	Adjusting Masks.....	329
16.8.4	Shifting Multiword Values.....	329
16.8.5	Shifting Multiple Bits.....	330



The 8086-family processors provide instructions for doing calculations on byte, word, and doubleword values. Operations include addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. You can also do calculations at the bit level. This includes the AND, OR, XOR, and NOT logical operations. Bits can also be shifted or rotated to the right or left.

This chapter tells you how to use the instructions that do calculations on numbers and bits.

## 16.1 Adding

The **ADD**, **ADC**, and **INC** instructions are used for adding and incrementing values.

### ■ Syntax

```
ADD { register | memory }, { register | memory | immediate }  
ADC { register | memory }, { register | memory | immediate }  
INC { register | memory }
```

These instructions can work directly on 8-bit or 16-bit values (32-bit values on the 80386). They can also be used in combination to do calculations on values that are too large to be held in a single register (such as 32-bit values on the 80286 or 64-bit values on the 80386). When used with **AAA** and **DAA**, they can be used to do calculations on BCD numbers, as described in Section 16.5.

### 16.1.1 Adding Values Directly

The **ADD** and **INC** instructions are used for adding to values in registers or memory.

The **INC** instruction takes a single register or memory operand. The value of the operand is incremented. The value is treated as an unsigned integer, so the carry flag is not updated for signed carries.

The **ADD** instruction adds values given in source and destination operands. The destination can be either a register or a memory operand. Its contents will be destroyed by the operation. The source operand can be an immediate, memory, or register operand. Since memory-to-memory operations are never allowed, the source and destination operands can never both be memory operands.

The result of the operation is stored in the source operand. The operands can be either 8 bit or 16 bit (32 bit on the 80386), but both must be the same size.

An addition operation can be interpreted as addition of either signed numbers or unsigned numbers. It is the programmer's responsibility to decide how the addition should be interpreted and to take appropriate action if the sum is too large for the destination operand. When an addition overflows the possible range for signed numbers, the overflow flag is set. When an addition overflows the range for unsigned numbers, the carry flag is set.

There are two ways to take action on an overflow: you can use the **JO** or **JNO** instruction to direct program flow to or around instructions that handle the overflow (see Section 17.1.2.3, "Testing Bits and Jumping"). You can also use the **INTO** instruction to trigger the overflow interrupt (interrupt 4) if the overflow flag is set. This requires writing an interrupt handler for interrupt 4, since the DOS overflow routine simply returns without taking any action. Section 17.5.2, "Defining and Redefining Interrupt Routines," gives a sample of an overflow interrupt handler.

## ■ Examples

```

mem8      .DATA
          DB      39
          .CODE
          .
          .
          mov     al,26      ; Start with register      unsigned  signed
          inc     al        ; Increment                26      26
          add     al,76     ; Add immediate           + 76    1
          ;                                         -----
          ;                                         103   103
          add     al,mem8   ; Add memory              + 39    39
          ;                                         -----
          mov     ah,al     ; Copy to AH                142   -114+overflow
          add     al,ah     ; Add register              142
          ;                                         -----
          ;                                         28+carry

```

This example shows 8-bit addition. When the sum exceeds 127, the overflow flag is set. A **JO** (Jump on Overflow) or **INTO** (Interrupt on Overflow) instruction at this point could transfer control to error-recovery statements. When the sum exceeds 255, the carry flag is set. A **JC** (Jump on Carry) instruction at this point could transfer control to error-recovery statements.

## 16.1.2 Adding Values in Multiple Registers

The **ADC** (Add with Carry) instruction makes it possible to add numbers larger than can be held in a single register.

The **ADC** instruction adds two numbers in the same fashion as the **ADD** instruction, except that the value of the carry flag is included in the addition. If a previous calculation has set the carry flag, then 1 will be added to the sum of the numbers. If the carry flag is not set, the **ADC** instruction has the same effect as the **ADD** instruction.

When adding numbers in multiple registers, the carry flag should be ignored for the least-significant portion, but taken into account for the more-significant portion. This can be done by using the **ADD** instruction for the least-significant portion and the **ADC** instruction for more-significant portions.

You can add and carry repeatedly inside a loop for calculations that require more than two registers. Use the **ADC** instruction in each iteration, but turn off the carry flag with the **CLC** (Clear Carry Flag) instruction before entering the loop so that it will not be used for the first iteration. You could also do the first add outside the loop.

### ■ Example

```

mem32      .DATA
           DD      316423
           .CODE
           .
           .
           mov     ax,43981           ; Load immediate    43981
           xor     dx,dx             ; into DX:AX
           add     ax,WORD PTR mem32[0] ; Add to both      + 316423
           adc     dx,WORD PTR mem32[2] ; memory words    -----
                                           ; Result in DX:AX  360404

```

## 16.2 Subtracting

The **SUB**, **SBB**, **DEC**, and **NEG** instructions are used for subtracting and decrementing values.

## ■ Syntax

```
SUB { register | memory }, { register | memory | immediate }  
SBB { register | memory }, { register | memory | immediate }  
DEC { register | memory }  
NEG { register | memory }
```

These instructions can work directly on 8-bit or 16-bit values (32-bit values on the 80386). They can be also be used in combination to do calculations on values too large to be held in a single register (such as 32-bit values on the 80286 or 64-bit values on the 80386). When used with **AAA** and **DAA**, they can be used to do calculations on BCD numbers, as described in Section 16.5.

### 16.2.1 Subtracting Values Directly

The **SUB** and **DEC** instructions are used for subtracting from values in registers or memory. A related instruction, **NEG** (Negate), reverses the sign of a number.

The **DEC** instruction takes a single register or memory operand. The value of the operand is decremented. The value is treated as an unsigned integer, so the carry flag is not updated for signed borrows.

The **NEG** instruction takes a single register or memory operand. The sign of the value of the operand is reversed. The **NEG** instruction should only be used on signed numbers.

The **SUB** instruction subtracts the values given in the source operand from the value of the destination operand. The destination can be either a register or a memory operand. It will be destroyed by the operation. The source operand can be an immediate, memory, or register operand. It will not be destroyed by the operation. Since memory-to-memory operations are never allowed, the source and destination operands cannot both be memory operands.

The result of the operation is stored in the source operand. The operands can be either 8 bit or 16 bit (32 bit on the 80386), but both must be the same size.

A subtraction operation can be interpreted as subtraction of either signed numbers or of unsigned numbers. It is the programmer's responsibility to decide how the subtraction should be interpreted and to take appropriate action if the result is too small for the destination operand. When a subtraction overflows the possible range for signed numbers, the carry flag is set. When a subtraction underflows the range for unsigned numbers (becomes negative), the sign flag is set.



## ■ Example

```

        .DATA
mem32a  DD      316423
mem32b  DD      156739
        .CODE
        .
        .
        mov     ax,WORD PTR mem32a[0] ; Load mem32      316423
        mov     dx,WORD PTR mem32a[2] ; into DX:AX
        sub     ax,WORD PTR mem32b[0] ; Subtract low    156739
        sbb    dx,WORD PTR mem32b[2] ; then high     -----
                                     ; Result in DX:AX    159684

```

## 16.3 Multiplying

The **MUL** and **IMUL** instructions are used to multiply numbers. The **MUL** instruction should be used for unsigned numbers; the **IMUL** instruction should be used for signed numbers. This is the only difference between the two.

### ■ Syntax

**MUL** {*register* | *memory*}

**IMUL** {*register* | *memory*}

The multiply instructions require that one of the factors be in the accumulator register (**AL** for 8-bit numbers, **AX** for 16-bit numbers, or **EAX** for 32-bit numbers). This register is implied; it should not be specified in the source code. Its contents will be destroyed by the operation.

The other factor to be multiplied must be specified in a single register or memory operand. The operand will not be destroyed by the operation, unless it is **DX**, **AH**, or **AL**.

Note that multiplying two 8-bit numbers will produce a 16-bit number in **AX**. If the product is a 16-bit number, it will be placed in **AX** and the overflow and carry flags will be set.

Similarly, multiplying two 16-bit numbers will produce a 32-bit number in the **DX:AX** register pair. If the product is a 32-bit number, the most-significant bits will be in **AX**, the least-significant bits will be in **DX**, and the overflow and carry flags will be set. (The 80386 handles 64-bit products in the same way in the **EDX:EAX** register pair.)

*Note*

Multiplication is one of the slower operations on 8086-family processors (especially the 8086 and 8088). Multiplying by certain common constants is often faster when done by shifting bits (see Section 16.8.1, “Multiplying and Dividing by Constants”) or by using 80386 scaling (see Section 15.3.1, “Loading Near Pointers”).

■ **Examples**

```

mem16      .DATA
           DW      -30000
           .CODE
           .
           .
           .      ; 8-bit unsigned multiply
mov        al,23  ; Load AL          23
mov        bl,24  ; Load BL          * 24
mul        bl     ; Multiply BL       -----
           ; Product in AX          552
           ; overflow and carry set

           .      ; 16-bit signed multiply
mov        ax,50  ; Load AX          50
           ;                               -30000
imul       mem16 ; Multiply memory   -----
           ; Product in DX:AX      -1500000
           ; overflow and carry set

```

■ **80186/286/386 Only**

Starting with the 80186, the **IMUL** instruction has two additional syntaxes that allow for 16-bit multiples that produce a 16-bit product. (These instructions can be extended to 32 bits on the 80386.)

■ **Syntax**

**IMUL** *register16,immediate*

**IMUL** *register16,memory16,immediate*

You can specify a 16-bit immediate value as the source instruction and a word register as the destination operand. The product appears in the destination operand. The 16-bit result will be placed in the destination operand. If the product is too large to fit in 16 bits, the carry and overflow flags will be set. In this context, **IMUL** can be used for either signed or unsigned multiplication, since the 16-bit product is the same.

You can also specify three operands for **IMUL**. The first operand must be a 16-bit register operand, the second a 16-bit memory operand, and the third a 16-bit immediate operand. The second and third operands are multiplied and the product stored in the first operand.

With both these syntaxes, the carry and overflow flags will be set if the product is too large to fit in 16 bits. The **IMUL** instruction with multiple operands can be used for either signed or unsigned multiplication, since the 16-bit product is the same in either case. If you need to get a 32-bit result, you must use the single-operand version of **MUL** or **IMUL**.

### ■ Examples

```
imul    dx,456      ; Multiply DX times 456
imul    ax,[bx],6   ; Multiply the value pointed to by BX
                        ; times 6 and put the result in AX
```

### ■ 80386 Only

On the 80386, the **IMUL** instruction has an additional instruction that allows multiplication of a register value by a register or memory value.

### ■ Syntax

**IMUL** *register*,{ *register* | *memory* }

The destination can be any 16-bit or 32-bit register. The source must be the same size as the destination.

### ■ Examples

```
imul    dx,ax       ; Multiply DX times AX
imul    ax,[bx]     ; Multiply AX by the value pointed to by BX
```

## 16.4 Dividing

The **DIV** and **IDIV** instructions are used to divide integers. Both a quotient and a remainder are returned. The **DIV** instruction should be used

for unsigned integers; the **IDIV** instruction should be used for signed integers. This is the only difference between the two.

### ■ Syntax

**DIV** { *register* | *memory* }

**IDIV** { *register* | *memory* }

To divide a 16-bit number by an 8-bit number, put the number to be divided (the dividend) in the **AX** register. The contents of this register will be destroyed by the operation. Specify the dividing number (the divisor) in any 8-bit memory or register operand (except **AL** or **AH**). This operand will not be changed by the operation. After the multiplication, the result (quotient) will be in **AL** and the remainder will be in **AH**.

To divide a 32-bit number by a 16-bit number, put the dividend in the **DX:AX** register pair. The most significant bits go in **AX**. The contents of these registers will be destroyed by the operation. Specify the divisor in any 16-bit memory or register operand (except **AX** or **DX**). This operand will not be changed by the operation. After the division, the quotient will be in **AX** and the remainder will be in **DX**. (The 80386 handles 64-bit division in the same way by using the **EDX:EAX** register pair.)

To divide a 16-bit number by a 16-bit number, you must first sign-extend or zero-extend (see Section 15.2, “Converting between Data Sizes”) the dividend to 32 bits; then divide as described above. You cannot divide a 32-bit number by another 32-bit number (except on the 80386).

If division by zero is specified, or if the quotient exceeds the capacity of its register (**AL** or **AX**), the processor automatically generates an interrupt 0. By default, the program terminates and returns to DOS. This problem can be handled in two ways: you can check the divisor before division and go to an error routine if you can determine it to be invalid, or you can write your own interrupt routine to replace the processor’s interrupt 0 routine. See Section 17.5 for more information in interrupts.

---

### Note

Division is one of the slower operations on 8086-family processors (especially the 8086 and 8088). Dividing by common constants that are powers of two is often faster when done by shifting bits, as described in Section 16.8.1, “Multiplying and Dividing by Constants.”

---

## ■ Examples

```

        .DATA
mem16   DW      -2000
mem32   DD      500000
        .CODE
        .
        .
        ; Divide 16-bit unsigned by 8-bit
        mov     ax,700           ; Load dividend      700
        mov     bl,36           ; Load divisor     DIV 36
        div     bl              ; Divide BL         -----
        ; Quotient in AL      19
        ; Remainder in AH    16
        ; Divide 32-bit signed by 16-bit
        mov     ax,WORD PTR mem32[0] ; Load into DX:AX
        mov     dx,WORD PTR mem32[2] ;
        idiv    mem16           ; Divide memory     DIV -2000
        ; Quotient in AX     -250
        ; Remainder in DX    0
        ; Divide 16-bit signed by 16-bit
        mov     ax,WORD PTR mem16   ; Load into AX     -2000
        cwd                    ; Extend to DX:AX
        mov     bx,-421            ;
        idiv    bx               ; Divide by BX      DIV -421
        ; Quotient in AX     4
        ; Remainder in DX   -316

```

## 16.5 Calculating with Binary Coded Decimals

The 8086-family processors provide several instructions for adjusting BCD numbers. The BCD format is seldom used for applications programming in assembly language. Programmers who wish to use BCD numbers usually use a high-level language. However, BCD instructions are used to develop compilers, function libraries, and other systems tools.

Since systems programming is beyond the scope of this manual, this section provides only a brief overview of calculations on the two kinds of BCD numbers, unpacked and packed.

---

### Note

Intel mnemonics use the term “ASCII” to refer to unpacked BCD numbers and “decimal” to refer to packed BCD numbers. Thus **AAA**

(ASCII Adjust for Addition) adjusts unpacked numbers, while **DAA** (Decimal Adjust for Addition) adjusts packed numbers.

### 16.5.1 Unpacked BCD Numbers

Unpacked BCD numbers are made up of bytes containing a single decimal digit in the lower four bits of each byte. The 8086-family processors provide instructions for adjusting unpacked values with the four arithmetic operations—addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division.

To do arithmetic on unpacked BCD numbers, you must do the 8-bit arithmetic calculations on each digit separately. The result should always be in the **AL** register. After each operation, use the corresponding BCD instruction to adjust the result. The ASCII adjust instructions do not take an operand. They always work on the value in the **AL** register.

When a calculation using two one-digit values produces a two-digit result, the ASCII adjust instructions put the first digit in **AL** and the second in **AH**. If the digit in **AL** needs to carry to or borrow from the digit in **AH**, the carry and auxiliary carry flags are set.

The four ASCII adjust instructions are described below:

Instruction	Description
<b>AAA</b>	Adjusts after an addition operation. For example, to add 9 and 3, put 9 in <b>AL</b> and 3 in <b>BL</b> . Then use the following lines to add them: <pre> mov     ax,9      ; Load 9 mov     bx,3      ; and 3 as unpacked BCD add     al,bl     ; Add 09h and 03h to get 0Ch aaa     ; Adjust 0Ch in AL to 02h,         ; increment AH to 01h, set carry         ; Result 12 unpacked BCD in AX </pre>
<b>AAS</b>	Adjusts after a subtraction operation. For example, to subtract 4 from 3, put 3 in <b>AL</b> and 4 in <b>BL</b> . Then use the following lines to subtract them: <pre> mov     ax,103h  ; Load 13 mov     bx,4     ; and 4 as unpacked BCD sub     al,bl    ; Subtract 4 from 3 to get FFh (-1) aas     ; Adjust 0FFh in AL to 9,         ; decrement AH to 0, set carry         ; Result 9 unpacked BCD in AX </pre>
<b>AAM</b>	Adjusts after a multiplication operation. Always use <b>MUL</b> , not <b>IMUL</b> . For example, to multiply 9 times

3, put 9 in **AL** and 3 in **BL**. Then use the following lines to multiply them:

```

mov    ax,903h ; Load 9 and 3 as unpacked BCD
mul    ah      ; Multiply 9 and 3 to get 1Bh
aam    ; Adjust 1Bh in AL
        ; to get 27 unpacked BCD in AX

```

## AAD

Adjusts before a division operation. Unlike other BCD instructions, this one converts a BCD value to a binary value before the operation. After the operation, the quotient must still be adjusted by using **AAM**. For example, to divide 25 by 2, put 25 in **AX** in unpacked BCD format: 2 in **AH** and 5 in **AL**. Put 2 in **BL**. Then use the following lines to divide them:

```

mov    ax,205h ; Load 25
mov    bl,2    ; and 2 as unpacked BCD
aad    ; Adjust 0205h in AX
        ; to get 19h in AX
div    bl      ; Divide by 2 to get
        ; quotient 0Ch in AL
        ; remainder 1 in AH
aam    ; Adjust 0Ch in AL
        ; to 12 unpacked BCD in AX
        ; (remainder destroyed)

```

Notice that the remainder is lost. If you need the remainder, save it in another register before adjusting the quotient. Then move it back to **AL** and adjust if necessary.

Multidigit BCD numbers are usually processed in loops. Each digit is processed and adjusted in turn.

In addition to their use for processing unpacked BCD numbers, the ASCII adjust instructions can be used in routines that convert between different number bases.

## ■ Example

```

mov    al,79    ; Load 79 (04Fh)
aam    ; Adjust to BCD (0709h)
add    ah,48    ; Adjust to ASCII characters
add    al,48    ; (3739h)
mov    dx,ax    ; Copy to DX
xchg   dl,dh    ; Trade for most significant digit
mov    ah,2     ; DOS display character function
int    21h     ; Call DOS
mov    dl,dh    ; Load least significant digit
int    21h     ; Call DOS

```

The example converts an 8-bit binary number to hexadecimal and displays it on the screen. The routine could be enhanced to handle large numbers.

## 16.5.2 Packed BCD Numbers

Packed BCD numbers are made up of bytes containing two decimal digits: one in the upper four bits and one in the lower four bits. The 8086-family processors provide instructions for adjusting packed BCD numbers after addition and subtraction. You must write your own routines to adjust for multiplication and division.

To do arithmetic on packed BCD numbers, you must do the eight-bit arithmetic calculations on each byte separately. The result should always be in the **AL** register. After each operation, use the corresponding BCD instruction to adjust the result. The decimal adjust instructions do not take an operand. They always work on the value in the **AL** register.

Unlike the ASCII adjust instructions, the decimal adjust instructions never affect **AH**. The auxiliary carry flag is set if the digit in the lower four bits carries to or borrows from the digit in the upper four bits. The carry flag is set if the digit in the upper four bits needs to carry to or borrow from another byte.

The decimal adjust instructions are described below:

Instruction	Description
<b>DAA</b>	Adjusts after an addition operation. For example, to add 88 and 33, put 88 in <b>AL</b> and 33 in <b>BL</b> in packed BCD format. Then use the following lines to add them:  <pre> mov     ax,8833h;Load 88 and 33 as packed BCD add     al,ah   ; Add 88 and 33 to get 0BBh daa     ; Adjust 0BBh to 121 packed BCD:            ; 1 in carry and 21 in AL </pre>
<b>DAS</b>	Adjusts after a subtraction operation. For example, to subtract 38 from 83, put 83 in <b>AL</b> and 38 in <b>BL</b> in packed BCD format. Then use the following lines to subtract them:  <pre> mov     ax,3883h;Load 83 and 38 as packed BCD sub     al,ah   ; Subtract 38 from 83 to get 04Bh das     ; Adjust 04Bh to 45 packed BCD:            ; 0 in carry and 45 in AL </pre>

Multidigit BCD numbers are usually processed in loops. Each byte is processed and adjusted in turn.

## 16.6 Doing Logical Bit Manipulations

The logical instructions do Boolean operations on individual bits. The AND, OR, XOR, and NOT operations are supported by the 8086-family instructions.

AND compares two bits and sets the result if both bits are set. OR compares two bits and sets the result if either bit is set. XOR compares two bits and sets the result if the bits are different. NOT reverses a single bit. Table 16.1 shows a truth table for the logical operations.

**Table 16.1**  
**Values Returned by Logical Operations**

X	Y	NOT X	X AND Y	X OR Y	X XOR Y
1	1	0	1	1	0
1	0	0	0	1	1
0	1	1	0	1	1
0	0	1	0	0	0

The syntax of the AND, OR, and XOR instructions are the same. The only difference is the operation performed. For all instructions, the target value to be changed by the operation is placed in one operand. A mask showing the positions of bits to be changed is placed in the other operand. The format of the mask differs for each logical instruction. The destination operand can be register or memory. The source operand can be register, memory, or immediate. However, the source and destination operands cannot both be memory.

Either of the values can be in either operand. However, the source operand will be unchanged by the operation, while the destination operand will be destroyed by it. Your choice of operands depends on whether you want to save a copy of the mask or of the target value.

---

### *Note*

The logical instructions should not be confused with the logical operators. They specify completely different behavior. The instructions control run-time bit calculations. The operators control assembly-time bit

calculations. Although the instructions and operators have the same name, the assembler can distinguish them from context.

## 16.6.1 AND Operations

The **AND** instruction does an AND operation on the bits of the source and destination operands. The original destination operand is replaced by the resulting bits.

### ■ Syntax

**AND** { *register* | *memory* }, { *register* | *memory* | *immediate* }

The **AND** instruction can be used to clear the value of specific bits regardless of their current settings. To do this, put the target value in one operand and a mask of the bits you want to clear in the other. The bits of the mask should be 0 for any bit positions you want to clear and 1 for any bit positions you want to remain unchanged.

### ■ Example 1

```

mov     ax,035h      ; Load value           00110101
and     ax,0FBh      ; Mask off bit 2       AND 11111011
;                                     ;
;                                     ; Value is now 31h     00110001
and     ax,0F8h      ; Mask off bits 2,1,0  AND 11111000
;                                     ;
;                                     ; Value is now 30h     00110000

```

### ■ Example 2

```

mov     ah,7         ; Get character without echo
int     21h
and     al,11011111b ; Convert to uppercase by clearing bit 5
cmp     al,'Y'       ; Is it Y?
je      yes         ; If so, do Yes stuff
.       .           ; else do No stuff
.       .
yes:    .

```

Example 2 illustrates how to use the **AND** instruction to convert a character to uppercase. If the character is already uppercase, the **AND** instruction has no effect, since bit 5 is always clear in uppercase letters. If the character is lowercase, clearing bit 5 converts it to uppercase.

## 16.6.2 OR Operations

The **OR** instruction does an OR operation on the bits of the source and destination operands. The original destination operand is replaced by the resulting bits.

### ■ Syntax

```
OR { register | memory }, { register | memory | immediate }
```

The **OR** instruction can be used to set the value of specific bits regardless of their current settings. To do this, put the target value in one operand and a mask of the bits you want to clear in the other. The bits of the mask should be 1 for any bit positions you want to set and 0 for any bit positions you want to remain unchanged.

### ■ Example

```

mov     ax,035h    ; Move value to register      00110101
mov     ax,035h    ; Move value to register      00110101
or      ax,08h     ; Mask on bit 3                OR 00001000
;
; Value is now 3Dh                                00111101
or      ax,07h     ; Mask on bits 2,1,0          OR 00000111
;
; Value is now 3Fh                                00111111

```

Another common use for **OR** is to compare an operand to 0. For example:

```

or      bx,bx     ; Compare to 0
;               ; 2 bytes, 2 clocks on 8088
jg      positive  ; BX is positive
jl      negative  ; BX is negative
;               ; BX is zero

```

The first statement has the same effect as the following statement, but is faster and smaller:

```

cmp     bx,0      ; 3 bytes, 3 clocks on 8088

```

## 16.6.3 XOR Operations

The **XOR** (Exclusive OR) instruction does an XOR operation on the bits of the source and destination operands. The original destination operand is replaced by the resulting bits.

## ■ Syntax

**XOR** {*register* | *memory*},{*register* | *memory* | *immediate*}

The **XOR** instruction can be used to toggle the value of specific bits (reverse them from their current settings). To do this, put the target value in one operand and a mask of the bits you want to toggle in the other. The bits of the mask should be 1 for any bit positions you want to toggle and 0 for any bit positions you want to remain unchanged.

## ■ Example

```

mov     ax,035h    ; Move value to register      00110101
xor     ax,08h     ; Mask on bit 3              XOR 00001000
;
; Value is now 3Dh                               00111101
xor     ax,07h     ; Mask on bits 2,1,0        XOR 00000111
;
; Value is now 3Ah                               00111010

```

Another common use for the **XOR** instruction is to set a register to 0. For example:

```
xor     cx,cx      ; 2 bytes, 3 clocks on 8088
```

This sets the **CX** register to 0. When the identical operands are XORed, each bit cancels itself, producing 0. The statement

```
mov     cx,0       ; 3 bytes, 4 clocks on 8088
```

is the obvious way of doing this, but it is larger and slower. The statement

```
sub     cx,cx      ; 2 bytes, 3 clocks on 8088
```

is also smaller than the **MOV** version. The only advantage of using **MOV** is that it does not affect any flags.

## 16.6.4 NOT Operations

The **NOT** instruction does a **NOT** operation on the bits of a single operand. It is used to toggle the value of all bits at once.

## ■ Syntax

**NOT** {*register* | *memory*}

The **NOT** instruction is often used to reverse the sense of a bit mask from masking certain bits on to masking them off. Use the **NOT** instruction if

the value of the mask is not known until run time; use the NOT operator (see Section 9.2.1.5, "Bitwise Logical Operators") if the mask is a constant.

### ■ Example

```

masker      .DATA
            DB      00010000b ; Value may change at run time
            .CODE
            .
            .
            mov     ax,OD743h ; Load OD7h to AH; 43h to AL  01000011
            or      al,masker ; Turn on bit 4 in AL      OR  00010000
                                     ;                      -----
                                     ; Result is 53h      01010011

            not     masker      ; Reverse sense of mask      11101111
            and     ah,masker    ; Turn off bit 4 in AH      AND 11010111
                                     ;                      -----
                                     ; Result is 0C7h      11000111

```

## 16.7 Scanning for Set Bits

### ■ 80386 Only

The 80386 processor has instructions for scanning bits to find the first or last set bit in a register value. These instructions can be used to find the position of a set bit in a mask or other value. They can also check to see if a register value is 0.

### ■ Syntax

```

BSF register,{ register | memory }
BSR register,{ register | memory }

```

The bit scan instructions work only on 16-bit or 32-bit registers. They cannot be used on memory operands or 8-bit registers. The source register contains the value to be scanned. The destination register should be the register where you want to store the position of the first or last set bit.

The **BSF** (Bit Scan Forward) instruction scans the bits of the source register starting with the 0 bit and working toward the most-significant bit. The **BSR** (Bit Scan Reverse) instruction scans the bits of the source register starting with the most-significant bit and working toward the 0 bit.

## ■ Example

```

        .DATA
widfield EQU 200
bitfield DD widfield DUP (?)
        .CODE
        .
        .
        .
        cld
        push ds ; Load segment of bitfield
        pop es ; into ES
        mov cx,widfield ; Load maximum count
        xor eax,eax ; Set search value to 0
        mov di,OFFSET bitfield ; Load bitfield address
        repe scasd ; Find first nonzero bit
        jecxz none ; If none found, get out
        sub di,4 ; Point back to doubleword
        mov eax,[di] ; Else load first nonzero
        bsr ecx,eax ; Find first set bit
        . ; ECX now contains bit position
        . ; DI points to doubleword
none:

```

This example scans a large bit field. Starting at the beginning of the field, it finds the first nonzero doubleword. Then it finds the first set bit within the doubleword. See Chapter 18, “Processing Strings,” for more information on the string instructions used in this example.

## 16.8 Shifting and Rotating Bits

The 8086-family processors provide a complete set of instructions for shifting and rotating bits. Bits can be moved right (toward the most-significant bits) or left (toward the 0 bit). Values shifted off the end of the operand go into the carry flag.

Shift instructions move bits a specified number of places to the right or left. The last bit in the direction of the shift goes into the carry flag, and the first bit is filled with 0 or with the previous value of the first bit.

Rotate instructions move bits a specified number of places to the right or left. For each bit rotated, the last bit in the direction of the rotate is moved into the first bit position at the other end of the operand. With some variations, the carry bit is used as an additional bit of the operand.

Figure 16.1 illustrates the eight variations of shift and rotate instructions for 8-bit operands. Notice that **SHL** and **SAL** are exactly the same.

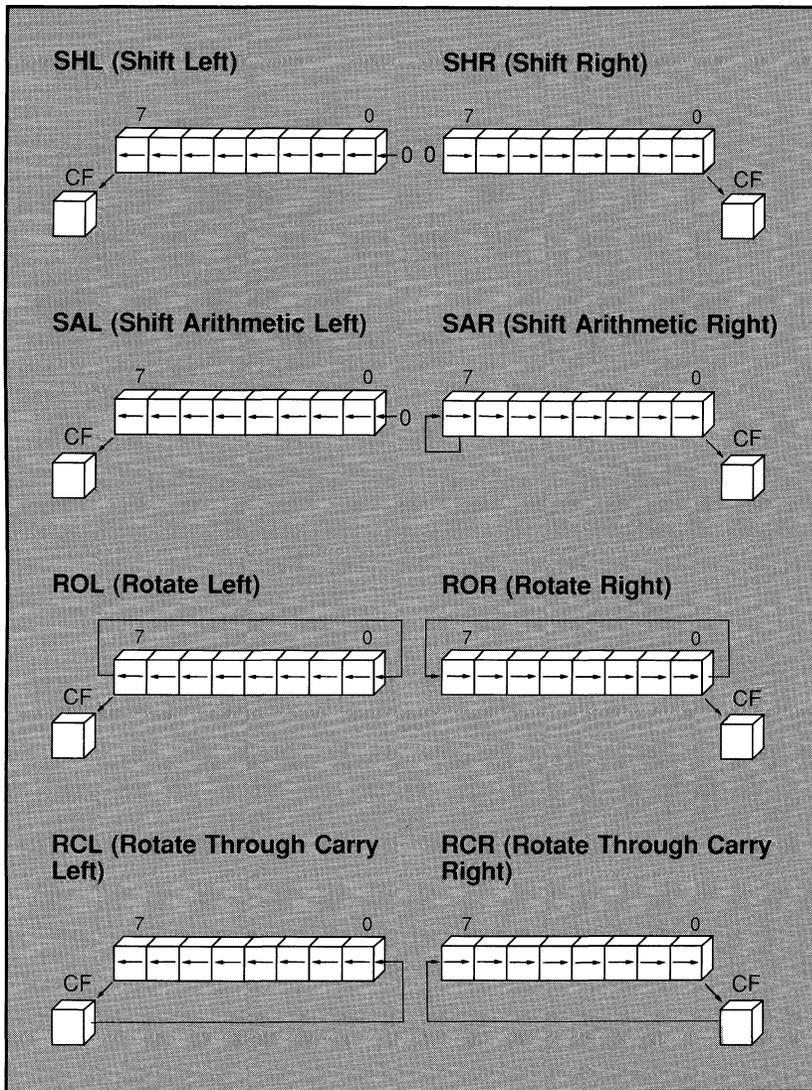


Figure 16.1 Shifts and Rotates

## ■ Syntax

```
SHL { register | memory }, { CL | 1 }
SHR { register | memory }, { CL | 1 }
SAL { register | memory }, { CL | 1 }
SAR { register | memory }, { CL | 1 }
ROL { register | memory }, { CL | 1 }
ROR { register | memory }, { CL | 1 }
RCL { register | memory }, { CL | 1 }
RCR { register | memory }, { CL | 1 }
```

The format of all the shift instructions is the same. The destination operand should contain the value to be shifted. It will contain the shifted operand after the instruction. The source operand should contain the number of bits to shift or rotate. It can be the immediate value 1 or the **CL** register. No other value or register is accepted on the 8088 and 8086 processors.

---

### *80186/286/386 Only*

Starting with the 80186 processor, 8-bit immediate values larger than 1 can be given as the source operand for shift or rotate instructions, as shown below:

```
shr    bx,4    ; 9 clocks, 3 bytes on 80286
```

The following statements are equivalent if the program must run the 8088 or 8086:

```
mov    cl,4    ; 2 clocks, 3 bytes on 80286
shr    bx,cl   ; 9 clocks, 2 bytes on 80286
                    ;11 clocks, 5 bytes
```

---

## 16.8.1 Multiplying and Dividing by Constants

Shifting right by one has the effect of dividing by two; shifting left by one has the effect of multiplying by two. You can take advantage of this to do fast multiplication and division by common constants. The easiest constants are the powers of two. Shifting left twice multiplies by four, shifting left three times multiplies by eight, and so on.

**SHR** is used to divide unsigned numbers. **SAR** can be used to divide signed numbers, but **SAR** rounds negative numbers down—**IDIV** always rounds up. Code that divides by using **SAR** must adjust for this difference. Multiplication by shifting is the same for signed and unsigned

numbers, so either **SAL** or **SHL** can be used. Both instructions do the same operation.

Since the multiply and divide instructions are the slowest on the 8088 and 8086 processors, using shifts instead can often speed operations by a factor of 10 or more. For example, on the 8088 or 8086 processor, the following statements take 4 clocks:

```
xor    ah,ah    ; Clear AH
shl    ax,1     ; Multiply byte in AL by 2
```

The following statements have the same effect, but take between 74 and 81 clocks on the 8088 or 8086:

```
mov    bl,2     ; Multiply byte in AL by 2
mul    bl
```

The same statements take 15 clocks on the 80286 or between 11 and 16 clocks on the 80386. See the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference* for complete information on timing of instructions.

Shift instructions can be combined with add or subtract instructions to do multiplication by common constants. These operations are best put in macros so that they can be changed if the constants in a program change.

### ■ Example 1

```
mul_10    MACRO    factor    ; Factor must be unsigned
mov       ax,factor    ; Load into AX
shl       ax,1         ; AX = factor * 2
mov       bx,ax        ; Save copy in BX
shl       ax,1         ; AX = factor * 4
shl       ax,1         ; AX = factor * 8
add       ax,bx        ; AX = (factor * 8) + (factor * 2)
ENDM      ; AX = factor * 10
```

### ■ Example 2

```
div_u512  MACRO    dividend ; Dividend must be unsigned
mov       ax,dividend ; Load into AX
shr       ax,1         ; AX = dividend / 2 (unsigned)
xchg     al,ah        ; xchg is like rotate right 8
; AL = (dividend / 2) / 256
cbw      ; Clear upper byte
ENDM      ; AX = (dividend / 512)
```

## 16.8.2 Moving Bits to the Least-Significant Position

Sometimes a group of bits within an operand needs to be treated as a single unit—for example, to do an arithmetic operation on those bits without affecting other bits. This can be done by masking off the bits, and then shifting them into the least-significant positions. After the arithmetic operation is done, the bits are shifted back to the original position and merged with the original bits by using **OR**. See Section 17.2.5.2, “Defining and Redefining Interrupt Routines,” for an example of this operation.

## 16.8.3 Adjusting Masks

Masks for logical instructions can be shifted to new bit positions. For example, an operand that masks off a bit or group of bits can be shifted to move the mask to a different position.

### ■ Example

```

masker    .DATA
          DB      00000010b ; Mask that may change at run time
          .CODE
          .
          .
          mov     cl,2       ; Rotate two at a time
          mov     bl,57h     ; Load value to be changed      01010111b
          rol     masker,cl  ; Rotate two to left           00001000b
          or      bl,masker  ; Turn on masked values      -----
                                   ; New value is 05Fh      01011111b
          rol     masker,cl  ; Rotate two more             00100000b
          or      bl,masker  ; Turn on masked values      -----
                                   ; New value is 07Fh      01111111b

```

This technique is useful only if the mask value is unknown until runtime.

## 16.8.4 Shifting Multiword Values

Sometimes it is necessary to shift a value that is too large to fit in a register. In this case, you can shift each part separately, passing the shifted bits through the carry flag. The **RCR** or **RCL** instructions must be used to move the carry value from the first register to the second.

**RCR** and **RCL** can also be used to initialize the high or low bit of an operand. Since the carry flag is treated as part of the operand (like using a 9-bit operand), the flag value before the operation is crucial. The carry flag may be set by a previous instruction, or you can set it directly using the **CLC** (Clear Carry Flag), **CMC** (Complement Carry Flag), and **STC** (Set Carry Flag) instructions.

■ Example

```

mem32      .DATA
           DD      500000
           .CODE
           .
           ; Divide 32-bit unsigned by 16
           .
again:      mov     cx,4           ; Shift right 4      500000
           shr     WORD PTR mem32[2],1 ; Shift into carry DIV 16
           rcr     WORD PTR mem32[0],1 ; Rotate carry in  -----
           loop    again          ;                   31250

```

### 16.8.5 Shifting Multiple Bits

■ 80386 Only

The 80386 processor has new instructions for shifting multiple bits into an operand. The **SHLD** (Double Precision Shift Left) instruction shifts a specified group of bits left and into an operand. The **SHRD** (Double Precision Shift Right) instruction shifts a specified group of bits right and into an operand.

■ Syntax

**SHRD** { *register* | *memory* }, *register*, { **CL** | *immediate* }  
**SHLD** { *register* | *memory* }, *register*, { **CL** | *immediate* }

These instructions take three operands. The first (leftmost) contains the value to be shifted. It must be a 16-bit or 32-bit register or memory operand. The second operand contains the bits to be shifted into the value. It must be a register of the same size as the first operand. The third operand contains the number of bits to shift. It may be an immediate operand or the **CL** register.

■ Example

```

mov     ax,3AF2h ; Load  AX=00111010 11110010
mov     bx,9C00h ; Load  BX=          10011100 00000000
shld   ax,bx,7  ; Shift 7  01111001 0      <- 7
           ;                   10011110 <- 7
           ;                   -----
           ;                   AX=01111001 01001110 (794Eh)

```

# CHAPTER

# 17

## CONTROLLING PROGRAM FLOW

17.1	Jumping.....	333
17.1.1	Jumping Unconditionally .....	333
17.1.2	Jumping Conditionally.....	335
17.1.2.1	Comparing and Jumping.....	335
17.1.2.2	Jumping Based on Flag Status .....	338
17.1.2.3	Testing Bits and Jumping .....	340
17.1.2.4	Testing and Setting Bits .....	341
17.2	Looping.....	343
17.3	Setting Bytes Conditionally .....	345
17.4	Using Procedures .....	346
17.4.1	Calling Procedures.....	347
17.4.2	Defining Procedures .....	347
17.4.3	Passing Arguments on the Stack .....	349
17.4.4	Using Local Variables.....	351
17.4.5	Setting Up Stack Frames.....	354
17.5	Using Interrupts.....	355
17.5.1	Calling Interrupts .....	356
17.5.2	Defining and Redefining Interrupt Routines .....	358
17.6	Checking Memory Ranges.....	361



The 8086-family processors provide a variety of instructions for controlling the flow of a program. The four major types of program-flow instructions are jumps, loops, procedure calls, and interrupts.

This chapter tells you how to use these instructions and how to test conditions for the instructions that change program flow conditionally.

## 17.1 Jumping

Jumps are the most direct method of changing program control from one location to another. At the internal level, jumps work by changing the value of the **IP** (Instruction Pointer) register from the address of the current instruction to a target address.

Jumps can be short, near, or far. **MASM** automatically handles near and short jumps, though it may not always generate the most efficient code if the label being jumped to is a forward reference. The size and control of jumps is discussed in Section 9.4.1, “Forward References to Labels.”

### 17.1.1 Jumping Unconditionally

The **JMP** instruction is used to jump unconditionally to a specified address.

#### ■ Syntax

**JMP** { *register* | *memory* }

The operand should contain the address to be jumped to. Unlike conditional jumps, whose target address must be short (within 128 bytes), the target address for unconditional jumps can be short, near, or far. See Section 9.4.1, “Forward References to Labels,” for more information on specifying the distance for conditional jumps.

If a conditional jump must be greater than 128 bytes, the construction must be reorganized (except on the 80386). This can be done by reversing the sense of the conditional jump and adding an unconditional jump, as shown in Example 1.

## ■ Example 1

```

    cmp     ax,7       ; If AX is 7 and jump is short
    je     close      ; then jump close

    cmp     ax,6       ; If AX is 6 and jump is near
    jne    close      ; then test opposite and skip over
    jmp     distant    ; Now jump
    .
    .
close:                               ; Less than 128 bytes from jump
    .
    .
distant:                             ; More than 128 bytes from jump

```

An unconditional jump can be used as a form of conditional jump by specifying the address in a register or indirect memory operand. The value of the operand can be calculated at run time, based on user interaction or other factors. You can use indirect memory operands to construct jump tables that work like C `switch` statements, BASIC `ON GOTO` statements, or Pascal `case` statements.

## ■ Example 2

```

    .CODE
    .
    .
ctl1_tbl  jmp     process      ; Jump over data
          LABEL WORD         ; (required in overlay procedures)
          DW     extended     ; Null key (extended code)
          DW     ctrl1a       ; Address of CONTROL-A key routine
          DW     ctrl1b       ; Address of CONTROL-B key routine
process:  mov     ah,8h        ; Get a key
          int    21h
          cbw                    ; Convert AL to AX
          mov    bx,ax          ; Copy
          shl   bx,1           ; Convert to address

          jmp    ctl1_tbl[bx]   ; Jump to key routine

extended: mov     ah,8h        ; Get second key of extended
          int    21h
          .                    ; Use another jump table
          .                    ; for extended keys

ctrl1a:  .
          .                    ; CONTROL-A routine here
          .
          jmp    next

ctrl1b:  .
          .                    ; CONTROL-B routine here
          .
          jmp    next

next:    .
          .                    ; Continue

```

In Example 2, an indirect memory operand points to addresses of routines for handling different keystrokes. Notice that the jump table is placed in the code segment. This technique is optional in stand-alone assembler programs, but it may be required for procedures called from some languages.

## 17.1.2 Jumping Conditionally

The most common way of transferring control in assembly language is with conditional jumps. This is a two-step process: first test the condition, and then jump if the condition is true or continue if it is false.

### ■ Syntax

*Jcondition label*

Conditional-jump instructions take a single operand containing the address to be jumped to. The distance from the jump instruction to the specified address must be short (less than 128 bytes). If a longer distance is specified, an error will be generated telling the distance of the jump in bytes. See Section 17.1.1, “Jumping Unconditionally,” for information on arranging longer conditional jumps.

---

### *80386 Only*

Conditional jumps to forward references are near by default under the 80386 processor. But you can use the **SHORT** operator to specify short jumps. See Section 9.4.1, “Forward References to Labels,” for information specifying the size of jumps.

---

Conditional-jump instructions (except **JCXZ**) use the status of one or more flags as their condition. Thus any statement that sets a flag under specified conditions can be the test statement. The most common test statements use the **CMP** or **TEST** instructions. The jump statement can be any one of 31 conditional-jump instructions.

### 17.1.2.1 Comparing and Jumping

The **CMP** instruction is specifically designed to test for conditional jumps. It does not change the destination operand, so it can be used to compare two values without changing either of them. Instructions that change operands (such as **SUB** or **AND**) can also be used to test conditions.

The **CMP** instruction compares two operands and sets flags based on the result. It is used to test the following relationships: equal; not equal; greater than; less than; greater than or equal; or less than or equal.

## ■ Syntax

**CMP** { *register* | *memory* }, { *register* | *memory* | *immediate* }

The destination operand can be memory or register. The source operand can be immediate, memory, or register. However, they cannot both be memory operands.

The jump instructions that can be used with **CMP** are made up of mnemonic letters combined to indicate the type of jump. The letters are shown below:

Letter	Meaning
J	Jump
G	Greater than (for unsigned comparisons)
L	Less than (for unsigned comparisons)
A	Above (for signed comparisons)
B	Below (for signed comparisons)
E	Equal
N	Not

The mnemonic names always refer to the relationship that the first operand of the **CMP** instruction has to the second operand of the **CMP** instruction. For instance, **JG** tests whether the first operand is greater than the second. Several conditional instructions have two names. You can use whichever name seems more mnemonic in context.

Comparisons and conditional jumps can be thought of as statements in the following format:

**IF** (*value1 relationship value2*) **THEN GOTO** *truelabel*

Statements of this type can be coded in assembly language by using the following syntax:

```

CMP value1,value2
Jrelationship truelabel

```

*truelabel:*

Table 17.1 lists conditional-jump instructions for each *relationship* and shows the flags that are tested in order to see if *relationship* is true.

**Table 17.1**

**Conditional-Jump Instructions Used after Compare**

<b>Jump Condition</b>		<b>Signed Compare</b>	<b>Jump if:</b>	<b>Unsigned Compare</b>	<b>Jump if:</b>
Equal	=	<b>JE</b>	<b>ZF=1</b>	<b>JE</b>	<b>ZF=1</b>
Not equal	≠	<b>JNE</b>	<b>ZF=1</b>	<b>JNE</b>	<b>ZF=1</b>
Greater than	>	<b>JG</b> or <b>JNLE</b>	<b>ZF=0</b> and <b>SF=OF</b>	<b>JA</b> or <b>JNBE</b>	<b>CF=0</b> and <b>ZF=0</b>
Less than or equal	≤	<b>JLE</b> or <b>JNG</b>	<b>ZF=1</b> and <b>SF≠OF</b>	<b>JBE</b> or <b>JNA</b>	<b>CF=1</b> or <b>ZF=1</b>
Less than	<	<b>JL</b> or <b>JNGE</b>	<b>SF≠OF</b>	<b>JB</b> or <b>JNAE</b>	<b>CF=1</b>
Greater than or equal	≥	<b>JGE</b> or <b>JNL</b>	<b>SF=OF</b>	<b>JAE</b> or <b>JNB</b>	<b>CF=0</b>

Internally, the **CMP** instruction is exactly the same as the **SUB** instruction, except that the destination operand is not changed. The flags are set according to the result that would have been generated by a subtraction.

■ **Example 1**

```

; If CX is less than -20, then make DX 30, else make DX 20

                cmp     cx,-20      ; If signed CX is smaller than -20
                jl      less        ; Then do stuff at "less"
                mov     dx,20       ; Else set DX to 20
                jmp     further     ; Finished
less:          mov     dx,30       ; Then set DX to 30
further:

```

Example 1 shows the basic form of conditional jumps. Notice that in assembly language, if-then-else constructions are usually written in the form if-else-then.

This theme has many variations. For example, you may find it more mnemonic to code in the if-then-else format. However, you must then use the opposite jump condition, as shown in Example 2.

### ■ Example 2

```
; If CX is greater than or equal to -20, then make DX 20, else make DX 30
        cmp     cx,-20      ; If signed CX is smaller than -20
        jnl    notless     ; else do stuff at "notless"
        mov    dx,30       ; Then set DX to 30
        jmp    continue    ; Finished
notless: mov    dx,20      ; Else set DX to 20
continue:
```

The then-if-else format shown in Example 3 is often more efficient. Do the work for the most likely case, and then compare for the opposite condition. If the condition is true, you are finished.

### ■ Example 3

```
; DX is 20, unless CX is less than -20, then make DX 30
        mov    dx,20       ; DX is 20
        cmp    cx,-20     ; If signed CX is greater than -20
        jge    greatequ   ; Then done
        mov    dx,30      ; Else set DX to 30
greatequ:
```

This example avoids the unconditional jump used in Examples 1 and 2 and thus is faster even if the less likely condition is true.

#### 17.1.2.2 Jumping Based on Flag Status

The **CMP** instruction is the most mnemonic way to set the flags for conditional jumps, but any instruction that changes flags can be used as the test condition. The conditional-jump instructions listed below enable you to jump based on the condition of flags rather than on relationships of operands. Some of these instructions have the same effect as instructions listed in Table 17.1.

Instruction	Action
<b>JO</b>	Jumps if the overflow flag is set
<b>JNO</b>	Jumps if the overflow flag is clear
<b>JC</b>	Jumps if the carry flag is set (same as <b>JB</b> )
<b>JNC</b>	Jumps if the carry flag is clear (same as <b>JAE</b> )
<b>JZ</b>	Jumps if the zero flag is set (same as <b>JE</b> )
<b>JNZ</b>	Jumps if the zero flag is clear (same as <b>JNE</b> )
<b>JS</b>	Jumps if the sign flag is set
<b>JNS</b>	Jumps if the sign flag is clear
<b>JP</b>	Jumps if the parity flag is set
<b>JNP</b>	Jumps if the parity flag is clear
<b>JPE</b>	Jumps if parity is even (parity flag set)
<b>JPO</b>	Jumps if parity is odd (parity flag clear)
<b>JCXZ</b>	Jumps if <b>CX</b> is 0

Notice that the **JCXZ** is the only conditional jump based on the condition of a register (**CX**) rather than flags. Since **JCXZ** is usually used with loop instructions, it is discussed in more detail in Section 17.3, “Setting Bytes Conditionally.”

#### ■ Example 1

```

        add    ax,bx    ; Add two values
        jo    overflow  ; If value too large, adjust
        .
        .
overflow:                ; Adjustment routine here

```

#### ■ Example 2

```

        sub    ax,dx    ; Subtract
        jnz   go_on     ; If the result is not zero, continue
        call  zhandler  ;     else do special case
go_on:

```

### 17.1.2.3 Testing Bits and Jumping

Like the **CMP** instruction, the **TEST** instruction is designed to test for conditional jumps. However, specific bits are compared rather than entire operands.

#### ■ Syntax

**TEST** { *register* | *memory* }, { *register* | *memory* | *immediate* }

The destination operand can be memory or register. The source operand can be immediate, memory, or register. However, the operands cannot both be memory.

Normally, one of the operands is a mask in which the bits to be tested are the only bits set. The other operand contains the value to be tested. If all the bits set in the mask are clear in the operand being tested, the zero flag will be set. If any of the flags set in the mask are also set in the operand, the zero flag will be cleared.

The **TEST** instruction is actually the same as the **AND** instruction, except that neither operand is changed. If the result of the operation is 0, the zero flag is set, but the 0 is not actually written to the destination operand.

You can use the **JZ** and **JNZ** instructions to jump after the test. **JE** and **JNE** are the same and can be used if you find them more mnemonic.

#### ■ Example

```

bits      .DATA
          DB      ?
          .CODE
          .
          .
; If bit 2 or bit 4 is set, then call taska
          test    bits,10100b; Assume "bits" is OD3h      11010011
          jz     go_on; If 2 or 4 is set                AND 00010100
          call   taska; Else continue                  -----
          go_on: call   taska; Then call taska          00010000
          .
          .
; If bits 2 and 4 are clear, then call taskb
          test    bits,10100b; Assume "bits" is OE9h      11101001
          jnz   next; If 2 and 4 are clear              AND 00010100
          call   taskb; Else continue                  -----
          next:  call   taskb; Then call taskb          00000000
          .
          .

```

### 17.1.2.4 Testing and Setting Bits

#### ■ 80386 Only

The 80386 processor has bit test and set instructions. These instructions have two purposes. They can test the status of a bit to control program flow; some of them can also change the value of a specified bit.

#### ■ Syntax

```
BT { register | memory }, { register | immediate}
BTC { register | memory }, { register | immediate}
BTR { register | memory }, { register | immediate}
BTS { register | memory }, { register | immediate}
```

For each of the instructions, the memory or register destination operand is the target value that will be tested. The register or immediate source operand specifies the number of the bit to be tested in the destination operand. The four bit-testing instructions are described below:

Instruction	Description
-------------	-------------

BT	The Bit Test instruction examines the specified bit in the target value and puts a copy in the carry flag. The carry flag can then be used by another instruction such as a conditional jump. For example, assume <b>BX</b> points to a bit field and <b>CX</b> contains 4 in the following statements:
----	---

```
bt      [bx],cx      ; Put bit 4 of bit field
                    ;   pointed to by BX in carry
jc      somewhere   ; Jump if carry set
```

The same thing could be done less efficiently on other 8086-family processors with the following statements:

```
mov     ax,[bx]     ; Load value pointed to by BX
shr     ax,cl       ; Shift bit 4 to first position
test   ax,1        ; See if bit is set
jnz    somewhere   ; Jump if it is
```

This instruction is only useful if the source operand is not known until run time. If the source operand is a constant, the **TEST** instruction (see Section 17.1.2.3, “Testing Bits and Jumping”) is more efficient.

## BTC

The Bit Test and Complement instruction examines the specified bit in the target value and puts a copy in the carry flag. It then reverses the value of the bit. For example, assume **BX** points to a bit field and **CX** contains 4 in the following statements:

```

btc    [bx],cx    ; Put bit 4 of bit field in carry
                ; and toggle bit 4
jc     somewhere ; Jump if carry set

```

## BTR

The Bit Test and Reset instruction examines the specified bit in the target value and puts a copy in the carry flag. It then clears the bit. For example, assume **BX** points to a bit field and **CX** contains 4 in the following statements:

```

btr    [bx],cx    ; Put bit 4 of bit field in carry
                ; and clear bit 4
jc     somewhere ; Jump if carry set

```

## BTS

The Bit Test and Set instruction examines the specified bit in the target value and puts a copy in the carry flag. It then sets the bit. For example, assume **BX** points to a bit field and **CX** contains 4 in the following statements:

```

bts    [bx],cx    ; Put bit 4 of bit field in carry
                ; and set bit 4
jc     somewhere ; Jump if carry was set

```

## ■ Example

```

flag      .DATA
error     RECORD a:3=0,b:2=0,c:1=0,d:2=0,e:1=0,f:1=0
          flag  <>
          .CODE
          .
          .
          btr   error,c
          jc    fixc
          .
          .
fixa:     .

```

In this example, a bit field made up of error flags is tested. If the bit flag being tested is set, indicating an error, the flag is turned off and control is directed to a label where the error is corrected.

## 17.2 Looping

The 8086-family of processors has several instructions specifically designed for creating loops of repeated instructions. In addition, you can create loops using conditional jumps.

### ■ Syntax

**LOOP** *label*  
**LOOPE** *label*  
**LOOPZ** *label*  
**LOOPNE** *label*  
**LOOPNZ** *label*  
**JCXZ** *label*

The **LOOP** instruction is used for loops with a set number of iterations. For example, it can be used in constructions similar to the “for” loops of BASIC, C, and Pascal, and the “do” loops of FORTRAN.

A single operand specifies the address to jump to each time through the loop. The **CX** register is used as a counter for the number of times to loop. On each iteration, **CX** is decremented. When **CX** reaches 0, control passes to the instruction after the loop.

The **LOOPE**, **LOOPZ**, **LOOPNE**, and **LOOPNZ** instructions are used in loops that check for a condition. For example, they can be used in constructions similar to the “while” loops of BASIC, C, and Pascal; the “repeat” loops of Pascal; and the “do” loops of C.

The **LOOPE** (also called **LOOPZ**) instruction can be thought of as meaning “loop while equal.” Similarly, **LOOPNE** (also called **LOOPNZ**) instruction can be thought of as meaning “loop while not equal.” A single short memory operand specifies the address to loop to each time through. The **CX** register can specify a maximum number of times to go through the loop. The **CX** register can be set to a number that is out of range if you do not want a maximum count.

The **JCXZ** instruction (and its 32-bit 80386 extension, **JECXZ**) are often used in loop structures. For example, it may be used in loops that check a condition at the start of the loop rather than at the end. Unlike the loop instruction, **JCXZ** does not decrement **CX**, so the programmer must use another statement to decrement the count.

## ■ 80386 Only

Unlike conditional-jump instructions, which can jump to either a near or a short label under the 80386, the loop instructions, **JCXZ** instruction, and **JECXZ** instruction always jump to a short label.

### ■ Example 1

```
; For 0 to 200 do task

next:      mov     cx,200           ; Set counter
           .           ; Do the task here
           .
           loop   next           ; Do again
                                           ; Continue after loop
```

This loop has the same effect as the following statements:

```
; For 0 to 200, do task

next:      mov     cx,200           ; Set counter
           .           ; Do the task here
           .
           dec     cx
           cmp     cx,0
           jne     next           ; Do again
                                           ; Continue after loop
```

The first version is more efficient as well as easier to understand. However, there are situations in which you must use conditional-jump instructions rather than loop instructions. For example, conditional jumps are often required for loops that test several conditions.

If the counter in **CX** is variable because of previous instructions, you should use the **JCXZ** instruction to check for 0, as shown in Example 2. Otherwise, if **CX** is 0, it will be decremented to -1 in the first iteration and will continue through 65,535 iterations before it reaches 0 again.

### ■ Example 2

```
; For 0 to CX do task

next:      jcxz    done           ; CX counter set previously
           .           ; Check for 0
           .           ; Do the task here
           .
           loop   next           ; Do again
done:      ; Continue after loop
```

### ■ Example 3

```

; While AX is not 128, do task

wend:      mov     cx,0FFFFh      ; Set count too high to interfere
          .           ; Do the task here
          .
          .
          cmp     ax,128         ; Is it 128?
          loopne wend          ; No? Repeat
          ; Yes? Continue

```

## 17.3 Setting Bytes Conditionally

### ■ 80386 Only

The 80386 processor has a new group of instructions for setting bytes conditionally. These instructions test the condition of specified flags, and depending on the result, set a memory operand either to 1 or to 0. They can be used to set byte variables that are used as Boolean flags.

### ■ Syntax

**SET***condition* { *register* | *memory* }

Conditional-set instructions test conditions in the same way as conditional-jump instructions, except that instead of jumping if the condition is met, they set a specified byte. For example, **SETZ** is similar to **JZ**, **SETNE** is similar to **JNE**, and so on. See Section 17.1.1, “Jumping Unconditionally,” for more information on how flags are tested for conditional jumps.

Conditional-set instructions require one 8-bit operand, which can be either a register or a memory operand. If the condition tested by the instruction is true, the operand is set to 1. Otherwise the operand is set to 0.

Conditional-set instructions are usually preceded by a **CMP** or **TEST** instruction, although any instruction that sets flags can be used to test for the condition.

## ■ Example

```

.DATA
bigflag    DB    ?           ; Boolean flag
amount    DW    ?           ; Size variable to be set at run time
.CODE
.
.           ; Size is set
.
; bigflag = amount > 1000

    cmp     size,1000      ; Is "size" greater than 1000?
    setg   bigflag        ; If greater, "bigflag" = 1
                                ; else "bigflag" = 0

```

In the example, the Boolean variable `bigflag` is set according to a comparison of two other values. Some languages (such as BASIC) set the result of true relational statements to `-1` rather than `1`. To make the code compatible with such compilers, you should negate the value after setting it. For example, add the following line to the previous example:

```

    neg     bigflag        ; Negate result

```

This statement would be necessary for BASIC, since the expression `BIGFLAG=SIZE>1000` evaluates to `-1`. It would not be necessary for C, since the expression `bigflag=size>1000` evaluates to `1`.

## 17.4 Using Procedures

Procedures are units of code that do a specific task. They provide a way of modularizing code so that a task can be accomplished from any point in a program without using the same code in each place. Assembly-language procedures are comparable to functions in C; subprograms, functions, and subroutines in BASIC; procedures and functions in Pascal; or routines and functions in FORTRAN.

Two instructions and two directives are usually used in combination to define and use assembly-language procedures. The **CALL** instruction is used to call procedures defined elsewhere. The **RET** instruction is used to return control from a called procedure to the code that called it. The **PROC** and **ENDP** directives normally mark the beginning and end of a procedure definition, as described in Section 17.4.2, "Defining Procedures."

The **CALL** and **RET** instructions use the stack to keep track of the location of the procedure. The **CALL** instruction pushes the calling address onto the stack and then jumps to the starting address of the procedure.

The **RET** instruction pops the address pushed by the **CALL** instruction and returns control to the instruction following the call.

Every **CALL** must have a **RET** to restore the stack to its status before the **CALL**. Calls may be nested.

### 17.4.1 Calling Procedures

The **CALL** instruction saves the address following the instruction on the stack and passes control to a specified address.

#### ■ Syntax

**CALL** { *register* | *memory* }

The address is usually specified as a direct memory operand. However, the operand can also be a register or indirect memory operand containing a value calculated at run time. This enables you to write call tables similar to the jump table illustrated in Section 17.1.2.1, “Comparing and Jumping.”

Calls can be near or far. Near calls push only the offset portion of the calling address. Far calls push both the segment and offset. You must give the type of far calls to forward-referenced labels using the **FAR** type specifier and the **PTR** operator. For example, use the following statement to make a far call to a label that has not been earlier defined or declared external in the source code:

```
call    FAR PTR task
```

### 17.4.2 Defining Procedures

Procedures are defined by labeling the start of the procedure and placing a **RET** instruction at the end. There are several variations on this syntax.

#### ■ Syntax 1

```
label PROC [[NEAR | FAR]  
statements  
RET [[constant]  
label ENDP
```

Procedures are normally defined by using the **PROC** directive at the start of the procedure and the **ENDP** directive at the end. The **RET** instruction is normally placed immediately before the **ENDP** directive. The size of the **RET** instruction automatically matches the size defined by the **PROC** directive.

### ■ Syntax 2

```
label:
statements
RETN [constant]
```

### ■ Syntax 3

```
label LABEL FAR
statements
RETF [constant]
```

Starting with Version 5.0 of the Macro Assembler, the **RET** instruction can be extended to **RETN** (Return Near) to override the default size. This enables you to define and use procedures without the **PROC** and **ENDP** directives, as shown in Syntax 2 and Syntax 3 above. However, with this method, the programmer is responsible for making sure the size of the **CALL** matches the size of the **RET**.

The **RET** instruction (and its **RETF** and **RETN** variations) allows a constant operand that specifies a number of bytes to be added to the value of the **SP** register after the return. This operand can be used to adjust for arguments passed to the procedure before the call, as shown in the example in Section 17.4.4, "Using Local Variables."

### ■ Example 1

```

                call    task          ; Call is near because procedure is near
                .
                .
task            PROC    NEAR         ; Define "task" to be near
                .
                .                   ; Instructions of "task" go here
                .
                ret     ; Return to instruction after call
task            ENDP   ; End "task" definition
```

Example 1 shows the recommended way of making calls with MASM. Example 2 shows another method that programmers who are used to other assemblers may find more familiar.

### ■ Example 2

```

        call    NEAR PTR task ; Call is declared near
        .      ; Return comes to here
        .
task:   .      ; Procedure begins with near label
        .      ; Instructions go here
        .
        retn   ; Return declared near

```

This method gives more direct control over procedures, but the programmer must make sure that calls have the same size as corresponding returns.

For example, if a call is made with the statement

```
call NEAR PTR task
```

the assembler does a near call. This means that one word (the offset following the calling address) is pushed onto the stack. If the return is made with the statement

```
retf
```

two words are popped off the stack. The first will be the offset, but the second will be whatever happened to be on the stack before the call. Not only will the popped value be meaningless, but the stack status will be incorrect, causing the program to fail.

## 17.4.3 Passing Arguments on the Stack

Procedure arguments can be passed in various ways. For example, values can be passed to a procedure in registers or in variables. However, the most common method of passing arguments is to use the stack. Microsoft languages have a specific convention for doing this.

The arguments are pushed onto the stack before the call. After the call, the procedure retrieves and processes them. At the end of the procedure, the stack is adjusted to account for the arguments.

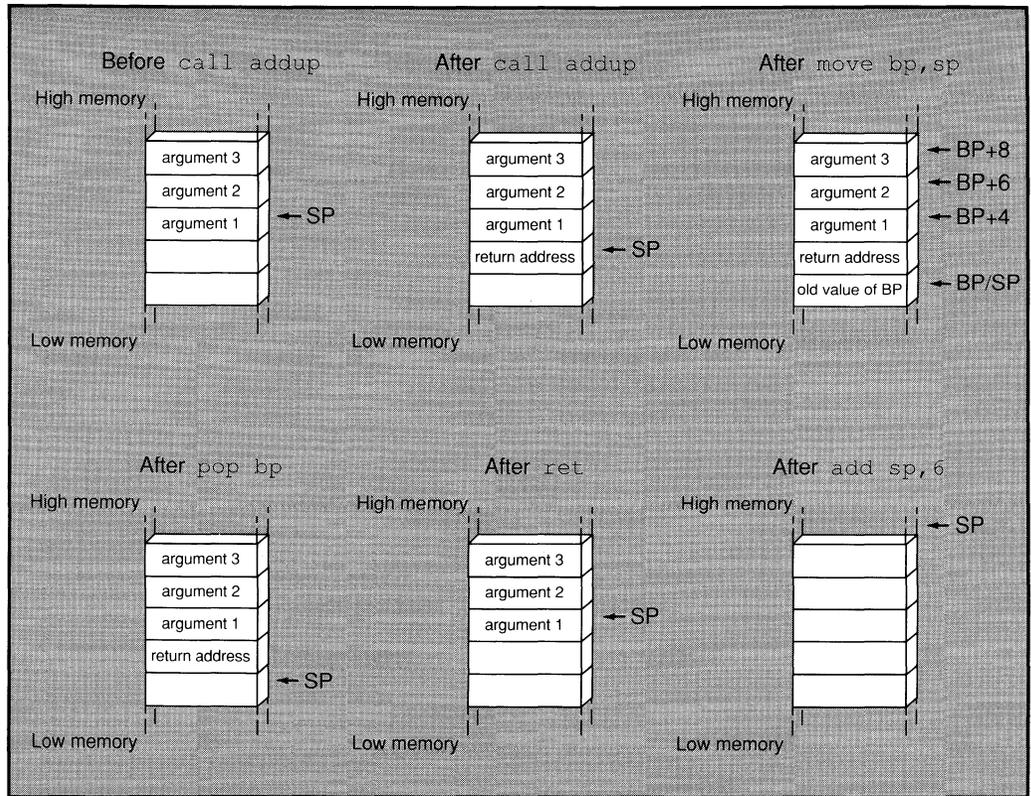
Although the same basic method is used for all Microsoft high-level languages, the details vary. For instance, in some languages, pointers to the arguments are passed to the procedure; in others the arguments themselves are passed. The order in which arguments are passed (whether the first argument is pushed first or last) also varies according to the language. Finally, in some languages, the stack is adjusted by the **RET** instruction in the called procedure; in others the code immediately following the **CALL** instruction adjusts the stack. See the *Microsoft Mixed-Language Programming Guide* for details on calling conventions for each Microsoft language.

### ■ Example

```
; C-style procedure call and definition

        mov     ax,10      ; Load and
        push   ax         ;   push constant as third argument
        push   arg2       ; Push memory as second argument
        push   cx         ; Push register as first argument
        call  addup       ; Call the procedure
        add   sp,6        ; Destroy the pushed arguments
        .               ;   (equivalent to three pops)
        .
addup   PROC   NEAR      ; Return address for near call
        .               ;   takes two bytes
        push  bp         ; Save base pointer - takes two bytes
        .               ;   so arguments start at 4th byte
        mov   bp,sp      ; Load stack into base pointer
        mov   ax,[bp+4]  ; Get first argument from
        .               ;   4th byte above pointer
        add  ax,[bp+6]   ; Add second argument from
        .               ;   6th byte above pointer
        add  ax,[bp+8]   ; Add third argument from
        .               ;   8th byte above pointer
        pop   bp         ; Restore BP
        ret                    ; Return result in AX
addup   ENDP
```

The example shows one method of passing arguments to a procedure. This method is similar to the way procedures are called in C. Figure 17.1 shows the stack condition at key points in the process.



**Figure 17.1 Procedure Arguments on the Stack**

*Note*

Arguments passed on the stack in assembler routines cannot be accessed by name with the CodeView debugger. They can be accessed by an expression that specifies their stack position.

## 17.4.4 Using Local Variables

In high-level languages, local variables are variables known only within a procedure. In Microsoft languages, these variables are usually stored on

the stack. Assembly-language programs can use the same concept. These variables should not be confused with labels or variable names that are local to a module, as described in Chapter 8, "Creating Programs from Multiple Modules."

Local variables are created by saving stack space for the variable at the start of the procedure. The variable can then be accessed by its position in the stack. At the end of the procedure, the stack pointer is restored to restore the memory used by local variables.

### ■ Example

```

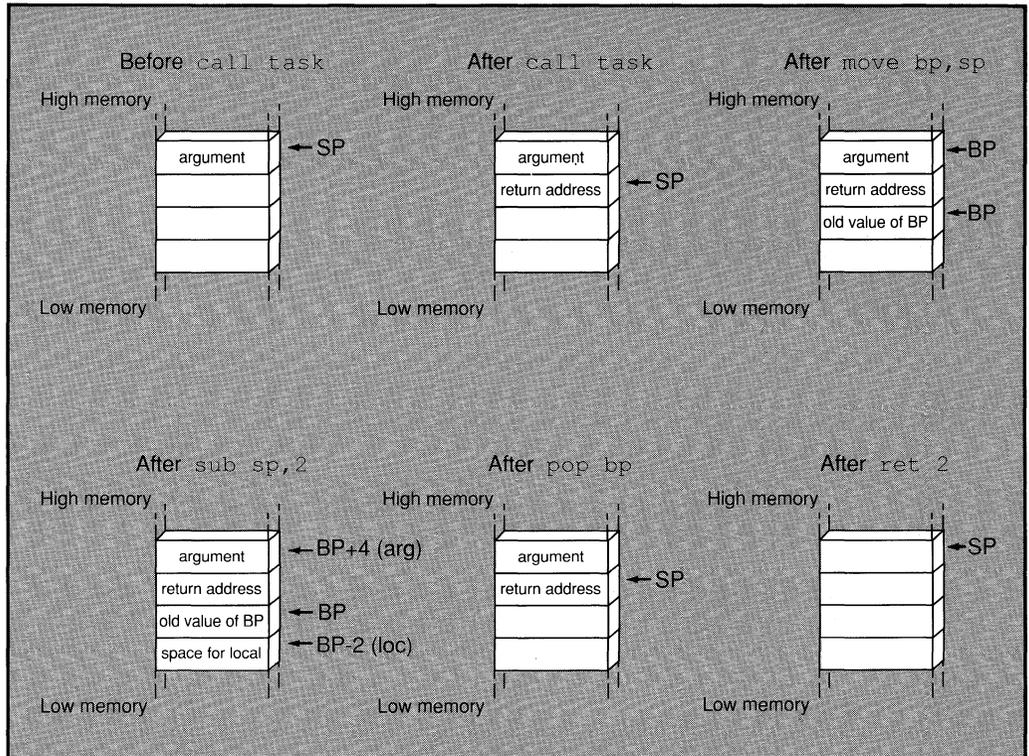
        push    ax           ; Push one argument
        call   task         ; Call
        .
        .
arg     EQU     <[bp+4]>    ; Name for argument
loc     EQU     <[bp-2]>    ; Name for local variable

task    PROC     NEAR
        push   bp           ; Save base pointer
        mov   bp,sp        ; Load stack into base pointer
        sub   sp,2         ; Save two bytes for local variable
        .
        .
        mov   loc,3        ; Initialize local variable
        add   ax,loc       ; Add local variable to AX
        sub   arg,ax       ; Subtract local from argument
        .                 ; Use "loc" and "arg" in other operations
        .
        mov   sp,bp       ; Adjust for stack variable
        pop   bp          ; Restore base
        ret   2           ; Return result in AX and pop
                             ; two bytes to adjust stack
task    ENDP

```

In this example, two bytes are subtracted from the **SP** register to make room for a local word variable. This variable can then be accessed as `[bp-2]`. In the example, this value is given the name `loc` with a text equate. Notice that the instruction `mov sp, bp` is given at the end to restore the original value of **SP**. The statement is only required if the value of **SP** is changed inside the procedure (usually by allocating local variables).

The argument passed to the procedure is returned with the **RET** instruction. Contrast this to the example in Section 17.4.3, "Passing Arguments on the Stack," in which the calling code adjusts for the argument. Figure 17.2 shows the state of the stack at key points in the process.



**Figure 17.2 Local Variables on the Stack**

### Note

Local variables created in assembler routines cannot be accessed by name with the CodeView debugger. They can be accessed by an expression that specifies their stack position.

## 17.4.5 Setting Up Stack Frames

### ■ 80186/286/386 Only

Starting with the 80186 processor, the **ENTER** and **LEAVE** instructions are provided for setting up a stack frame. These instructions do the same thing as the multiple instructions at the start and end of procedures in the Microsoft calling conventions (see the examples in Section 17.4.3, "Passing Arguments on the Stack").

### ■ Syntax

```
ENTER framesize, nestinglevel
statements
LEAVE
```

The **ENTER** instruction takes two constant operands. The *framesize* (a 16-bit constant) specifies how many bytes to reserve for local variables. The *nestinglevel* (an 8-bit constant) specifies the level at which the procedure is nested. This operand should always be 0 when writing procedures for BASIC, C, and FORTRAN. The *nestinglevel* can be greater than 0 with Pascal and other languages that enable procedures to access the local variables of calling procedures.

The **LEAVE** instruction reverses the effect of the last **ENTER** instruction by restoring **BP** and **SP** to their values before the procedure call.

### ■ Example 1

```
task      PROC      NEAR
          enter    6,0      ; Set stack frame and reserve 6
          .        ; bytes for local variables
          .        ; Do task here
          .
          leave   ; Restore stack frame
          ret     ; Return
task      ENDP
```

Example 1 has the same effect as the code in Example 2.

## ■ Example 2

```

task      PROC      NEAR
          push      bp          ; Save base pointer
          mov       bp,sp      ; Load stack into base pointer
          sub       sp,6       ; Reserve 6 bytes for local variables
          .
          .                   ; Do task here
          .
          mov       sp,bp      ; Restore stack pointer
          pop       bp         ; Restore base
          ret       ; Return
task      ENDP

```

The code in Example 1 takes fewer bytes, but is slightly slower. See the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference* for exact comparisons of size and timing.

## 17.5 Using Interrupts

Interrupts are a special form of routines that are called by number instead of by address. They can be initiated by hardware devices as well as by software. Hardware interrupts are called automatically whenever certain events occur in the hardware.

Interrupts can have any number from 0 to 255. Most of the interrupts with lower numbers are reserved for use by the processor, DOS, or the BIOS.

The programmer can call existing interrupts with the **INT** instruction. Interrupt routines can also be defined or redefined to be called later. For example, an interrupt routine that is called automatically by a hardware device can be redefined so that its action is different.

DOS defines several interrupt handlers. Two that are sometimes used by applications programmers are listed below:

Interrupt	Description
0	Divides overflow. Called automatically when the quotient of a divide operation is too large for the source operand or when a divide by zero is attempted.
4	Overflows. Called by the <b>INTO</b> instruction if the overflow flag is set.

Interrupt 21h is the current method of using DOS functions. To call a function, place the function number in **AH**, put arguments in registers as appropriate, then call the interrupt. For complete documentation of DOS functions, see the *Microsoft MS-DOS Programmer's Reference* or one of the many other books on DOS functions.

DOS has several other interrupts, but they should not normally be called. Some (such as 20h and 27h) have been replaced by DOS functions. Others are used internally by DOS.

---

*Note*

OS/2, the planned multitasking versions of DOS, will not use interrupt 21h. The Application Program Interface (API) will be used instead. This is the method currently used for Microsoft Windows applications.

---

The BIOS of most computers that use DOS can also be accessed by interrupts. BIOS interrupts are not documented here, since they vary for different computers. See the technical reference documents for your hardware.

## 17.5.1 Calling Interrupts

Interrupts are called with the **INT** instruction.

### ■ Syntax

**INT** *interruptnumber*  
**INTO**

The **INT** instruction takes an immediate operand with a value between 0 and 255.

When calling DOS and BIOS interrupts, a function number is usually placed in the **AH** register. Other registers may be used to pass arguments to functions. Some interrupts and functions return values in certain registers. Register use varies for each interrupt.

When the instruction is called, the processor takes the following six steps:

1. Looks up the address of the interrupt routine in the interrupt descriptor table. In real mode, this table starts at the lowest point in memory (segment 0, offset 0) and consists of four bytes (two segment and two offset) for each interrupt. Thus the address of an

interrupt routine can be found by multiplying the number of the interrupt by four.

2. Pushes the flags register, the current code segment (CS), and the current instruction pointer (IP).
3. Clears the trap (TF) and interrupt enable (IF) flags.
4. Jumps to the address of the interrupt routine, as specified in the interrupt description table.
5. Executes the code of the interrupt routine until it encounters an **IRET** instruction.
6. Pops the instruction pointer, code segment, and flags.

Figure 17.3 shows the status of the stack immediately after the **INT** instruction has been executed.

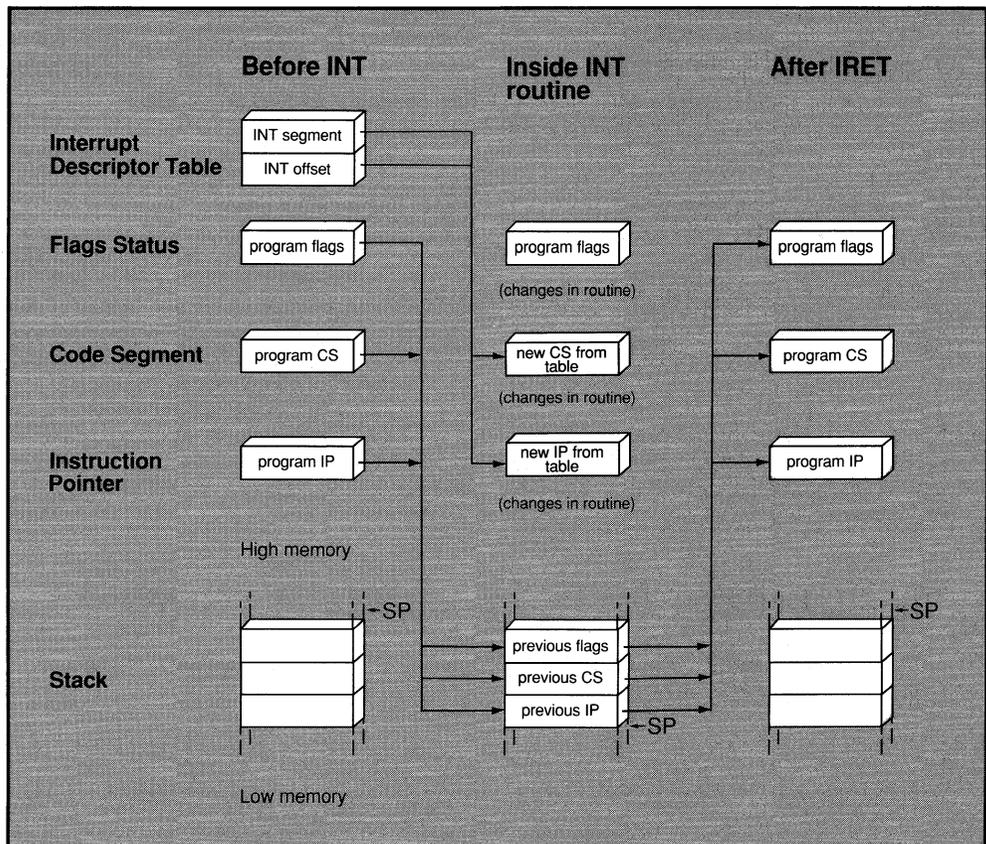


Figure 17.3 Operation of Interrupts

The **INTO** (Interrupt on Overflow) instruction is a variation of the **INT** instruction. It calls interrupt 04h if called when the overflow flag is set. By default, the routine for interrupt 4 simply consists of an **IRET** so that it returns without doing anything. However, you can write your own overflow interrupt routine. Using **INTO** is an alternative to using **JO** (Jump on Overflow) to jump to an overflow routine. Section 17.5.2, "Defining and Redefining Interrupt Routines," gives an example of this.

The **CLI** (Clear Interrupt Flag) and **STI** (Set Interrupt Flag) instructions can be used to turn interrupts on or off. You can use **CLI** to turn interrupt processing off so that an important routine cannot be stopped by a hardware interrupt. After the routine has finished, use **STI** to turn interrupt processing back on. Interrupts received while interrupt processing was turned off by **CLI** are saved and executed when **STI** turns interrupts back on.

### ■ Example 1

```
; DOS call (Display String)

      mov     ah,09h           ; Load function number
      mov     dx,OFFSET string ; Load argument
      int     21h             ; Call DOS
```

### ■ Example 2

```
; BIOS call (Read Character from Keyboard)

      xor     ah,ah           ; Load function number 0 in AH
      int     16h             ; Call BIOS
                                   ; Return scan code in AH
                                   ; Return ascii code in AL
```

Example 2 is a BIOS call that works on IBM Personal Computers and IBM-compatible computers. See the reference manuals for your hardware for complete information on BIOS calls.

## 17.5.2 Defining and Redefining Interrupt Routines

You can write your own interrupt routines, either to replace an existing routine or to use an undefined interrupt number.

## ■ Syntax

*label* **PROC FAR**

*statements*

**IRET**

*label* **ENDP**

An interrupt routine can be written like a procedure by using the **PROC** and **ENDP** directives. The only differences are that the routine should always be defined as far and the routine should be terminated by an **IRET** instruction instead of a **RET** instruction.

Your program should replace the address in the interrupt descriptor table with the address of your routine. DOS calls are provided for this task. Another common technique is to jump to the old interrupt routine and let it do the **IRET** instruction. It is usually a good idea to save the old address and restore it before your program ends.

Interrupt routines you may want to replace include the processor's divide-overflow (0h) and overflow (04h) interrupts. You can also replace DOS interrupts such as the critical-error (24h) and CONTROL-C (23h) handlers. Interrupt routines can be part of device drivers. Writing interrupt routines is usually a systems task. The example below illustrates a simple routine. For complete information see the *Microsoft MS-DOS Programmer's Guide* or one of the other reference books on DOS.

---

### *80386 Only*

The **INT** instruction automatically pushes a 32-bit instruction pointer for 32-bit segments or a 16-bit instruction pointer for 16-bit segments. However, the **IRET** instruction always pops a 16-bit instruction pointer before returning. To pop a 32-bit instruction pointer, you must append the letter **D** (for doubleword) to the instruction to form **IRETD**.

---

## ■ Example

```

        .DATA
message  DB "Overflow - result set to 0",13,10,"$"
vector   DD ?
        .CODE
start:   mov     ax,@data           ; Load segment location
        mov     ds,ax             ; into DS register

        mov     ax,3504h          ; Load interrupt 4 and call DOS
        int     21h               ; get interrupt vector function
        mov     WORD PTR vector[2],es ; Save segment
        mov     WORD PTR vector[0],bx ; and offset

        push    ds                ; Save DS
        mov     ax,cs             ; Load segment of new routine
        mov     ds,ax
        mov     dx,OFFSET overflow ; Load offset of new routine
        mov     ax,2504h          ; Load interrupt 4 and call DOS
        int     21h               ; set interrupt vector function
        pop     ds                ; Restore

        .
        .
        add     ax,bx             ; Do addition (or multiplication)
        into    ; Call interrupt 4 if overflow

        .
        .
        lds     dx,vector         ; Load original interrupt address
        mov     ax,2504h          ; Restore interrupt number 4
        int     21h               ; with DOS set vector function
        mov     ax,4C00h          ; Terminate function
        int     21h

overflow PROC FAR
        sti                ; Enable interrupts
                        ; (turned off by INT)
        mov     ah,09h           ; Display string function
        mov     dx,OFFSET message ; Load address
        int     21h               ; Call DOS
        xor     ax,ax            ; Set AX to 0
        xor     dx,dx            ; Set DX to 0
        iret                    ; Return
overflow ENDP

        END     start

```

In this example, DOS functions are used to save the address of the initial interrupt routine in a variable and to put the address of the new interrupt routine in the interrupt table. Once the new address has been set, the new routine is called any time the interrupt is called. The sample interrupt handler sets the result of a calculation that causes an overflow (either in **AX** or **AX:DX**) to 0. It is good practice to restore the original interrupt address before terminating the program.

## 17.6 Checking Memory Ranges

### ■ 80186/286/386 Only

Starting with the 80186 processor, the **BOUND** instruction can check to see if a value is within a specified range. This instruction is usually used to check a signed index value to see if it is within the range of an array. **BOUND** is a conditional interrupt instruction like **INTO**. If the condition is not met (the index is out of range), an interrupt 5 is executed.

### ■ Syntax

**BOUND** *register16,memory32*

**BOUND** *register32,memory64* (80386 Only)

To use it for this purpose, the starting and ending values of the array must be stored as 16-bit values in the low and high words of a doubleword memory operand. This operand is given as the source operand. The index value to be checked is given as the destination operand. If the index value is out of range, the instruction issues interrupt 5. This means that the operating system or the program must provide an interrupt routine for interrupt 5. DOS does not provide such a routine, so you must write your own. See Section 17.5, “Using Interrupts,” for more information.

### ■ Example

```

        .DATA
bottom  EQU      0
top     EQU      19
dbounds LABEL   DWORD      ; Allocate boundaries
wbounds DW       bottom,top ; initialized to bounds
array   DB       top+1 DUP (?) ; Allocate array
        .CODE
        .
        .
        bound   di,dbounds ; Assume index in DI
                ; Check to see if it is in range
                ; if out of range, interrupt 5
        mov     dx,array[di] ; If in range, use it

```

### ■ 80386 Only

The 80386 can optionally check larger arrays. The destination operand can be a 32-bit register and the source can be a 64-bit memory operand containing 32-bit starting and ending values.



# CHAPTER

# 18

## PROCESSING STRINGS

18.1	Setting Up String Operations.....	365
18.2	Moving Strings.....	368
18.3	Searching Strings.....	370
18.4	Comparing Strings.....	371
18.5	Filling Strings.....	373
18.6	Loading Values from Strings.....	374
18.7	Transferring Strings to and from Ports.....	375



The 8086-family processors have a full set of instructions for manipulating strings. In the discussion of these instructions, the term “string” refers not only to the common definition of a string—a sequence of bytes containing characters—but to any sequence of bytes or words (or doublewords on the 80386).

The following instructions are provided for 8086-family string functions:

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>MOVS</b>	Moves string from one location to another
<b>SCAS</b>	Scans string for specified values
<b>CMPS</b>	Compares values in one string with values in another
<b>LODS</b>	Loads values from a string to accumulator register
<b>STOS</b>	Stores values from accumulator register to a string
<b>INS</b>	Transfers values from a port to memory
<b>OUTS</b>	Transfers values from memory to a port

All these instructions use registers in the same way and have a similar syntax. Most are used with the repeat instruction prefixes: **REP**, **REPE**, **REPNE**, **REPZ**, and **REPNZ**.

This chapter first explains the general format for string instructions and then tells you how to use each instruction.

## 18.1 Setting Up String Operations

The string instructions all work in a similar way. Once you understand the general procedure, it is easy to adapt the format for a particular string operation. The five steps are listed below:

1. Make sure the direction flag indicates the direction in which you want the string to be processed. If the direction flag (**DF**) is clear, the string will be processed up (from low addresses to high addresses). If the direction flag is set, the string will be processed down (from high addresses to low addresses). The **CLD** instruction clears the flag, while **STD** sets it. Under DOS, the direction flag will normally be cleared if your program has not changed it.
2. Load the number of iterations for the string instruction into the **CX** register. For instance, if you want to process a 100-byte string, load 100. If a string instruction will be terminated conditionally,

load the maximum number of iterations that can be done without an error.

3. Load the starting offset address of the source string into **DS:SI** and the starting address of the destination string into **ES:DI**. Some string instructions take only a destination or source (shown in Table 18.1 below). Normally the segment address of the source string should be **DS**, but you can use a segment override with the string instruction to specify a different segment. You cannot override the segment address for the destination string. Therefore you may need to change the value of **ES**.
4. Choose the appropriate repeat-prefix instruction. Table 18.1 shows the repeat prefixes that can be used with each instruction.
5. Put the appropriate string instruction immediately after the repeat prefix (on the same line).

String instructions have two basic forms, as shown below:

### ■ Syntax 1

```
[[repeatprefix] stringinstruction [[ES:][destination,]] [[segmentregister:]source]
```

The string instruction can be given with the source and/or destination as operands. The size of the operand or operands indicates the size of the objects to be processed by the string. Note that the operands only specify the size. The actual values to be worked on are the ones pointed to by **DS:SI** and/or **ES:DI**. No error is generated if the operand is not the same as the actual source or destination. One important advantage of this syntax is that the source operand can have a segment override. The destination operand is always relative to **ES** and cannot be overridden.

### ■ Syntax 2

```
[[repeatprefix] stringinstructionB  
[[repeatprefix] stringinstructionW  
[[repeatprefix] stringinstructionD           (80386 only)
```

The letter **B** or **W** appended to the string instruction indicates bytes or words; the letter **D** indicates doublewords on the 80386. With a letter appended to a string instruction, no operand is allowed.

For instance, **MOVS** can be given with byte operands to move bytes or with word operands to move words. As an alternative, **MOVSB** can be given with no operands to move bytes or **MOVSW** can be given with no operands to move words.

*Note*

Instructions that specify the size in the name never accept operands. Therefore, the following statement is illegal:

```
lods    es:0                ; Illegal - no operand allowed
```

Instead, the statement must be coded as shown below:

```
lods    BYTE PTR es:0      ; Legal - use type specifier
```

If a repeat prefix is used, it can be one of the following instructions:

Instruction	Description
<b>REP</b>	Repeats for a specified number of iterations. The number is given in <b>CX</b> .
<b>REPE</b> or <b>REPZ</b>	Repeats while equal. The maximum number of iterations should be specified in <b>CX</b> .
<b>REPNE</b> or <b>REPNZ</b>	Repeats while not equal. The maximum number of iterations should be specified in <b>CX</b> .

**REPE** is the same as **REPZ**, and **REPNE** is the same as **REPZ**. You can use whichever name you find more mnemonic. The prefixes ending with **E** are used in syntax listings and tables in the rest of this chapter.

Table 18.1 lists each string instruction with the type of repeat prefix it uses and whether the instruction works on a source, a destination, or both.

**Table 18.1**  
**Requirements for String Instructions**

Instruction	Repeat Prefix	Source/Destination	Register Pair
<b>MOVS</b>	<b>REP</b>	Both	<b>DS:SI, ES:DI</b>
<b>SCAS</b>	<b>REPE/REPNE</b>	Destination	<b>ES:DI</b>
<b>CMPS</b>	<b>REPE/REPNE</b>	Both	<b>ES:DI, DS:SI</b>
<b>LODS</b>	None	Source	<b>DS:SI</b>
<b>STOS</b>	<b>REP</b>	Destination	<b>ES:DI</b>
<b>INS</b>	<b>REP</b>	Destination	<b>ES:DI</b>
<b>OUTS</b>	<b>REP</b>	Source	<b>DS:SI</b>

At run time, a string instruction preceded by a repeat sequence causes the processor to take the following steps:

1. Checks the **CX** registers and exits from the string instruction if **CX** is 0.
2. Performs the string operation once.
3. Increases **SI** and/or **DI** if the direction flag is cleared. Decreases **SI** and/or **DI** if the direction flag is set. The amount of increase or decrease is one for byte operations, two for word operations, or four for doubleword operations (80386 only).
4. Decrements **CX** (no flags are modified).
5. If the string instruction is **SCAS** or **CMPS**, checks the zero flag and exits if the repeat condition is false—that is, if the flag is set with **REPE** or **REPZ** or if it is clear with **REPNE** or **REPNZ**.
6. Goes to the next iteration (step 1).

Although string instructions (except **LODS**) are most often used with repeat prefixes, they can also be used by themselves. In this case, the **SI** and/or **DI** registers are adjusted as specified by the direction flag and the size of operands. However, you must decrement the **CX** register and set up a loop for the repeated action.

---

*Note*

Although you can use a segment override on the source operand, a segment override combined with a repeat prefix can cause problems in certain situations on all processors except the 80386. If an interrupt occurs during the string operation, the segment override is lost and the rest of the string operation processes incorrectly. Segment overrides can be used safely when interrupts are turned off, when a string instruction is used without a segment override, or when a 80386 processor is used.

---

## 18.2 Moving Strings

The **MOVS** instruction is used to move data from one area of memory to another.

## ■ Syntax

```
[[REP]] MOVS [[ES:]] destination, [[segmentregister:]] source
[[REP]] MOVSB
[[REP]] MOVSW
[[REP]] MOVSD (80386 only)
```

To move the data, load the count and the source and destination addresses into the appropriate registers, as discussed in Section 18.1, “Setting Up String Operations.” Then use the **REP** instruction with the **MOVS** instruction.

## ■ Example 1

```

                .MODEL small
                .DATA
source          DB 10 DUP ('0123456789')
destin         DB 100 DUP (?)
                .CODE
                mov ax,@data          ; Load same segment
                mov ds,ax             ; to both DS
                mov es,ax             ; and ES
                .
                .
                cld                   ; Work upward
                mov cx,100            ; Set iteration count to 100
                mov si,OFFSET source ; Load address of source
                mov di,OFFSET destin ; Load address of destination
                rep movsb             ; Move 100 bytes
```

Example 1 shows how to move a string by using string instructions. For comparison, Example 2 shows a much less efficient way of doing the same operation without string instructions.

## ■ Example 2

```

                .MODEL small
                .DATA
source          DB 10 DUP ('0123456789')
destin         DB 100 DUP (?)
                .CODE
                .                   ; Assume ES = DS
                .
                .
                mov cx,100           ; Set iteration count to 100
                mov si,OFFSET source ; Load offset of source
                mov di,OFFSET destin ; Load offset of destination
repeat:        mov al,es:[si]       ; Get a byte from source
                mov [di],al         ; Put it in destination
                inc si              ; Increment source pointer
                inc di              ; Increment destination pointer
                loop repeat         ; Do it again
```

Both examples illustrate how to move byte strings in a small-model program in which **DS** already points to the segment containing the variables. In such programs, **ES** can be set to the same value as **DS**.

There are several variations on this. If the source string was not in the current data segment, you could load the starting address of its segment into **ES**. Another option would be to use the **MOVS** instruction with operands and give a segment override on the source operand. For example, you could use the following statement if **ES** pointed to both the source and the destination strings:

```
rep    movs  destin,es:source
```

It is sometimes faster to move a string of bytes as words (or as doublewords on the 80386). You must adjust for any odd bytes, as shown in Example 3. Assume the source and destination are already loaded.

### ■ Example 3

```
mov    cx,count           ; Load count
shr    cx,1               ; Divide by 2 (carry will be set
                        ; if count is odd)
rep    movsw              ; Move words
rcl    cx,1               ; If odd, make CX 1
rep    movsb              ; Move odd byte if there is one
```

## 18.3 Searching Strings

The **SCAS** instruction is used to scan a string for a specified value.

### ■ Syntax

```
[[REPE | REPNE] SCAS [[ES:]destination
[[REPE | REPNE] SCASB
[[REPE | REPNE] SCASW
[[REPE | REPNE] SCASD      (80386 only)
```

**SCAS** and its variations work only on a destination string, which must be pointed to by **ES:DI**. The value to scan for must be in the accumulator register—**AL** for bytes, **AX** for words, or **EAX** (80386 only) for doublewords.

The **SCAS** instruction works by comparing the value pointed to by **DI** with the value in the accumulator. If the values are the same, the zero flag is set. Thus the instruction only makes sense when used with one of the repeat prefixes that checks the zero flag.

If you want to search for the first occurrence of a specified value, use the **REPNE** or **REPZ** instruction. If the value is found, **ES:DI** will point to the value immediately after the first occurrence. You can decrement **DI** to make it point to the first matching value.

If you want to search for the first value that does not have a specified value, use **REPE** or **REPZ**. If the value is found, **ES:DI** will point to the position after the first nonmatching value. You can decrement **DI** to make it point to the first nonmatching value.

If the value is not found, the **CX** register will contain 0. You can use the **JCXZ** instruction to handle cases where the value is not found.

### ■ Example

```

                .DATA
string         DB      "The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog"
lstring        EQU      $-string          ; Length of string
pstring        DD      string             ; Far pointer to string
                .CODE
                .
                .
                .
                cld                        ; Work upward
                mov     cx,lstring         ; Load length of string
                les     di,pstring        ; Load address of string
                mov     al,'z'            ; Load character to find
                repne   scasb             ; Search
                jcxz    notfound          ; CX is 0 if not found
                .                          ; ES:DI points to character
                .                          ; after first 'z'
                .
notfound:      .                          ; Special case for not found

```

This example assumes that **ES** is not the same as **DS**, but that the address of the string is stored in a pointer variable. The **LES** instruction is used to load the far address of the string into **ES:DI**.

## 18.4 Comparing Strings

The **CMPS** instruction is used to compare two strings and point to the address where a match or nonmatch occurs.

### ■ Syntax

```

[[REPE | REPNE] CMPS [[segment register:]source,[[ES:],destination
[[REPE | REPNE] CMPSB
[[REPE | REPNE] CMPSW
[[REPE | REPNE] CMPSD          (80386 only)

```

The count and the addresses of the strings are loaded into registers, as described in Section 18.1, "Setting Up String Operations." Either string can be considered the destination or source string unless a segment override is used. Notice that unlike other instructions, **CMPS** requires the source be on the left.

The **CMPS** instruction works by comparing in turn each value pointed to by **DI** with the value pointed to by **SI**. If the values are the same, the zero flag is set. Thus the instruction makes sense only when used with one of the repeat prefixes that checks the zero flag.

If you want to search for the first match between the strings, use the **REPNE** or **REPZ** instruction. If a match is found, **ES:DI** and **DS:SI** will point to the position after the first match in the respective strings. You can decrement **DI** or **SI** to point to the match.

If you want to search for a nonmatch, use **REPE** or **REPZ**. If a nonmatch is found, **ES:DI** and **DS:SI** will point to the position after the first nonmatch in the respective strings. You can decrement **DI** or **SI** to point to the nonmatch.

If the specified condition (match or nonmatch) never occurs, the **CX** register will contain zero. You can use the **JCXZ** instruction to handle cases in which the entire string is processed.

## ■ Example

```

.MODEL    large
.DATA
string1  DB    "The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog"
          .FARDATA
string2  DB    "The quick brown dog jumps over the lazy fox"
lstring  EQU    $-string2
.CODE
mov     ax,@data           ; Load data segment
mov     ds,ax              ; into DS
mov     ax,@fardata        ; Load far data segment
mov     es,ax              ; into ES
.
.
cld                    ; Work upward
mov     cx,lstring         ; Load length of string
mov     si,OFFSET string1 ; Load offset of string1
mov     di,OFFSET string2 ; Load offset of string2
repe   cmpsb              ; Compare
jcxz   allmatch           ; CX is 0 if no nonmatch
dec     si                 ; Adjust to point to nonmatch
dec     di                 ; in each string
.
.
allmatch: .                ; Special case for all match

```

This example assumes that the strings are in different segments. Both segments must be initialized to the appropriate segment register.

## 18.5 Filling Strings

The **STOS** instruction is used to store a specified value in each position of a string.

### ■ Syntax

```

[[REP] STOS [ES:]destination
[[REP] STOSB
[[REP] STOSW
[[REP] STOSD           (80386 only)

```

The string is considered the destination, so it must be pointed to by **ES:DI**. The length and address of the string must be loaded into registers, as described in Section 18.1, “Setting Up String Operations.” The value to store must be in the accumulator register—**AL** for bytes, **AX** for words, or **EAX** (80386 only) for doublewords.

For each iteration specified by the **REP** instruction prefix, the value in the accumulator is loaded into the string.

### ■ Example

```

                .MODEL    small
                .DATA
destin         DB        100 DUP ?
                .CODE
                .          ; Assume ES = DS
                .
                .
                cld        ; Work upward
                mov     ax,'aa' ; Load character to fill
                mov     cx,50   ; Load length of string
                mov     di,OFFSET destin ; Load address of destination
                rep     stosw   ; Store 'a' into array

```

This example loads 100 bytes containing the character “a.” Notice that this is done by storing 50 words rather than 100 bytes. This makes the code faster by reducing the number of iterations. You would have to adjust for the last byte if you wanted to fill an odd number of bytes.

## 18.6 Loading Values from Strings

The **LODS** instruction is used to load a value from a string into a register.

### ■ Syntax

```
LODS [segmentregister:]source
LODSB
LODSW
LODSD          (80386 only)
```

The string is considered the source, so it must be pointed to by **DS:SI**. The value is always loaded from the string into the accumulator register—**AL** for bytes, **AX** for words, or **EAX** (80386 only) for double-words.

Unlike other string instructions, **LODS** is not normally used with a repeat prefix since there is no reason to move a value repeatedly to a register. However, **LODS** does adjust the **DI** register as specified by the direction flag and the size of operands. The programmer must code the instructions to use the value after it is loaded.

### ■ Example 1

```
stuff      .DATA
           DB      0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9
           .CODE
           .
           .
           cld          ; Work upward
           mov     cx,10 ; Load length
           mov     si,OFFSET stuff ; Load offset of source
           mov     ah,2  ; Display character function
get:       lodsb      ; Get a character
           add     al,48 ; Convert to ASCII
           mov     dl,al ; Move to DL
           int     21h  ; Call DOS to display character
           loop   get   ; Repeat
```

Example 1 loads, processes, and displays each byte in a string of bytes.

## ■ Example 2

```

buffer      .DATA
            DB      80 DUP (?)          ; Create buffer for argument string
            .CODE
start:      mov     ax,@data            ; Initialize DS
            mov     ds,ax

            cld                          ; On start-up ES points to PSP
            mov     cl,BYTE PTR es:[80h]; Load length of arguments
            xor     ch,ch                ; Work upward
            mov     di,OFFSET buffer    ; Load offset of buffer
            mov     si,82h              ; Load position of argument string
            mov     dx,es                ; Exchange ES and DS
            mov     ax,ds
            mov     es,ax
            mov     ds,dx

another:    lodsb                       ; Get a character
            cmp     al,'a'               ; Is it high enough to be upper?
            jb     noway                 ; No? Check
            cmp     al,'z'               ; Is it low enough to be letter?
            ja     noway
            sub     al,32                 ; Yes? Convert to uppercase

noway:     stosb
            loop   another               ; Repeat
            mov     dx,es                ; Restore ES and DS
            mov     ax,ds
            mov     es,ax
            mov     ds,dx

```

Example 2 copies the command arguments from position 82h in the DOS Program Segment Prefix (PSP) while converting them to uppercase. See the *Microsoft MS-DOS Programmer's Reference* or one of the many other books on DOS for information about the PSP. Notice that both **LODSB** and **STOSB** are used without repeat prefixes.

## 18.7 Transferring Strings to and from Ports

### ■ 80186/286/386 Only

The **INS** instruction reads a string from a port to memory, and the **OUTS** instruction writes a string from memory to a port.

## ■ Syntax

```
OUTS DX,[[segmentregister:]source
OUTSB
OUTSW
OUTSD          (80386 only)
```

```
INS [ES:]destination,DX
INSB
INSW
INSD          (80386 only)
```

The **INS** and **OUTS** instructions require that the number of the port be in **DX**. The port cannot be specified as an immediate value, as it can be with **IN** and **OUT**.

To move the data, load the count into **CX**. The string to be transferred by **INS** is considered the destination string, so it must be pointed to by **ES:DI**. The string to be transferred by **OUTS** is considered the source string, so it must be pointed to by **DS:SI**.

If you specify the source or destination as an operand, **DX** must be specified. Otherwise **DX** is assumed and should be omitted.

If you need to process the string as it is transferred (for instance, to check for the end of a null-terminated string), you must set up the loop yourself instead of using the **REP** instruction prefix.

## ■ Example

```
count      .DATA
buffer     EQU      100
inport     DB      count DUP (?)
           DW      ?
           .CODE
           .        ; Assume ES = DS
           .
           .
           cld      ; Work upward
           mov     cx,count      ; Load length to transfer
           mov     di,OFFSET buffer ; Load address of destination
           mov     dx,inport     ; Load port number
           rep     insb          ; Transfer the string
           .        ; from port to buffer
```

# CHAPTER

# 19

## CALCULATING WITH A MATH COPROCESSOR

19.1	Coprocessor Architecture.....	379
19.1.1	Coprocessor Data Registers.....	380
19.1.2	Coprocessor Control Registers.....	381
19.2	Emulation .....	382
19.3	Using Coprocessor Instructions.....	382
19.3.1	Using Implied Operands in the Classical-Stack Form .....	383
19.3.2	Using Memory Operands .....	384
19.3.3	Specifying Operands in the Register Form ..	385
19.3.4	Specifying Operands in the Register-Pop Form .....	386
19.4	Coordinating Memory Access.....	387
19.5	Transferring Data .....	388
19.5.1	Transferring Data to and from Registers .....	388
19.5.2	Loading Constants.....	391
19.5.3	Transferring Control Data .....	392
19.6	Doing Arithmetic Calculations.....	393
19.7	Controlling Program Flow .....	399
19.7.1	Comparing Operands to Control Program Flow.....	401
19.7.2	Testing Control Flags after Other Instructions.....	404
19.8	Using Transcendental Instructions.....	404
19.9	Controlling the Coprocessor.....	406



The 8087-family coprocessors are used to do fast mathematical calculations. When used with real numbers, packed BCD numbers, or long integers, they do calculations many times faster than the same operations done with 8086-family processors.

This chapter explains how to use the 8087-family processors to transfer and process data. The approach taken is from an applications standpoint. Features that would be used by systems programmers (such the flags used when writing exception handlers) are not explained. This chapter is intended as a reference, not a tutorial.

---

*Note*

This manual does not attempt to explain the mathematical concepts involved in using certain coprocessor features. It assumes that you will not need to use a feature unless you understand the mathematics involved. For example, you need to understand logarithms to use the **FYL2X** and **FYL2XP1** instructions.

---

## 19.1 Coprocessor Architecture

The math coprocessor works simultaneously with the main processor. However, since the coprocessor cannot handle device input or output, most data originates in the main processor.

The main processor and the coprocessor each have their own registers, which are completely separate and inaccessible to the other. They exchange data through memory, since memory is available to both.

Ordinarily you follow these three steps when using the coprocessor:

1. Load data from memory to coprocessor registers
2. Process the data
3. Store the data from coprocessor registers back to memory

Step 2, processing the data, can occur while the main processor is handling other tasks. Steps 1 and 3 must be coordinated with the main processor so that the processor and coprocessor do not try to access the same memory at the same time, as is explained in Section 19.4, "Transferring Data."

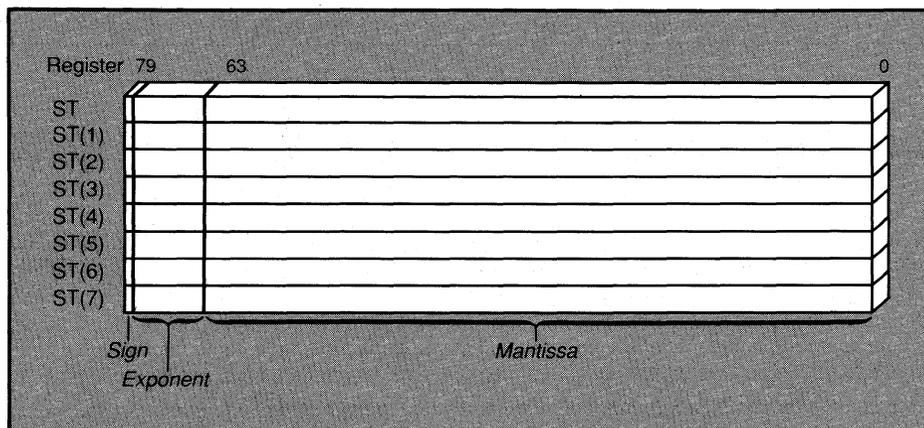
## 19.1.1 Coprocessor Data Registers

The 8087-family coprocessors have eight 80-bit data registers. Unlike 8086-family registers, the coprocessor data registers are organized as a stack. As data is pushed into the top register, previous data items move into higher-numbered registers. Register 0 is the top of the stack; register 7 is the bottom. The syntax for specifying registers is shown below:

`ST[(number)]`

The *number* must be a digit between 0 and 7. If *number* is omitted, register 0 (top of stack) is assumed.

All coprocessor data are stored in registers in the temporary-real format. This is the 10-byte IEEE format described in Section 6.3.1.5, "Real-Number Variables." The registers and the register format are shown in Figure 19.1.



**Figure 19.1 Coprocessor Data Registers**

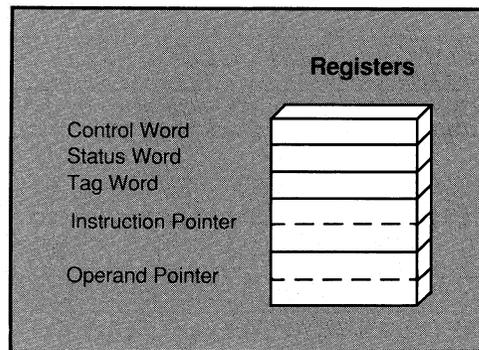
Internally, all calculations are done on numbers of the same type. Since temporary-real numbers have the greatest precision, lower-precision numbers are guaranteed not to lose precision as a result of calculations. The instructions that transfer values between the main processor and the coprocessor automatically convert numbers to and from the temporary-real format.

## 19.1.2 Coprocessor Control Registers

The 8087-family coprocessors have seven 16-bit control registers. The most useful control registers are made up of bit fields or flags. Some flags control coprocessor operations, while others maintain the current status of the coprocessor. In this sense, they are much like the 8086-family flags registers.

You do not need to understand these registers to do most coprocessor operations. Control flags are set by default to the values appropriate for most programs. Errors and exceptions are reported in the status-word register. However, the coprocessor already has a default system for handling exceptions. Applications programmers can usually accept the defaults. Systems programmers may want to use the status-word and control-word registers when writing exception handlers, but such problems are beyond the scope of this manual.

Figure 19.2 shows the overall layout of the control registers including the control word, status word, tag word, instruction pointer, and operand pointer. The format of each of the registers is not shown, since these registers are generally of use only to systems programmers. The exception is the condition-code bits of the status-word register. These bits are explained in Section 19.7, "Controlling Program Flow."



**Figure 19.2 Coprocessor Control Registers**

The control registers are explained in more detail in the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference*.

## 19.2 Emulation

If you have a Microsoft high-level language that supports floating-point emulation, you can write assembly-language procedures that use the emulator library when called from the high-level language. First write the procedure by using coprocessor instructions, then assemble it using the `/E` option, and finally link it with your high-level language modules. When compiling modules, use the compiler options that specify emulation.

Some coprocessor instructions are not emulated by Microsoft emulation libraries. How unemulated instructions vary depends on the language and version. If you use a coprocessor instruction that is not emulated, the program will generate a run-time error when it tries to execute the unemulated instruction. You cannot use a Microsoft emulation library with stand-alone assembler programs, since the library depends on the compiler start-up code.

See Section 2.4.5, "Creating Code for a Floating-Point Emulator," for information on the `/E` option. See the *Microsoft Mixed-Language Programming Guide* for information on writing assembly-language procedures for high-level languages.

## 19.3 Using Coprocessor Instructions

Coprocessor instructions are readily recognizable because, unlike all 8086-family instruction mnemonics, they start with the letter **F**.

Most coprocessor instructions have two operands, but in many cases one or both operands are implied. Often, one operand can be a memory operand; in this case, the other operand is always implied as the stack-top register. Coprocessor instructions can never have immediate operands, and with the exception of the **FSTSW** instruction (see Section 19.5.2, "Loading Constants"), they cannot have processor registers as operands. As with 8086-family instructions, memory-to-memory operations are never allowed. One operand must be a coprocessor register.

Instructions usually have a source and a destination operand. The source specifies one of the values to be processed. It is never changed by the operation. The destination specifies the value to be operated on and replaced with the result of the operation. If operands are specified, the first is the destination and the second is the source.

The stack organization of registers gives the programmer flexibility to think of registers either as elements on a stack or as registers much like 8086-family registers. Table 19.1 lists the variations of coprocessor instructions along with the syntax for each.

**Table 19.1**  
**Coprocessor Operand Forms**

<b>Instruction Form</b>	<b>Syntax</b>	<b>Implied Operands</b>	<b>Example</b>
Classical-stack	<i>F</i> <i>action</i>	<b>ST(1),ST</b>	fadd
Memory	<i>F</i> <i>action</i> <i>memory</i>	<b>ST</b>	fadd memloc
Register	<i>F</i> <i>action</i> <b>ST(num),ST</b> <i>F</i> <i>action</i> <b>ST,ST(num)</b>		fadd st(5),st fadd st,st(3)
Register pop	<i>F</i> <i>action</i> <b>P ST(num),ST</b>		faddp st(4),st

Not all instructions accept all operand variations. For example, load and store instructions always require the memory form. Load-constant instructions always take the classical-stack form. Arithmetic instructions can usually take any form.

Some instructions that accept the memory form can have the letter **I** (integer) or **B** (BCD) following the initial **F** to specify how a memory operand is to be interpreted. For example, **FILD** interprets its operand as an integer and **FBLD** interprets its operand as a BCD number. If no type letter is included in the instruction name, the instruction works on real numbers.

### 19.3.1 Using Implied Operands in the Classical-Stack Form

The classical-stack form treats coprocessor registers like items on a stack. Items are pushed onto or popped off the top elements of the stack. Since only the top item can be accessed on a traditional stack, there is no need to specify operands. The first register (and the second if there are two operands) is always assumed.

In arithmetic operations (see Section 19.6), the top of the stack (**ST**) is the source operand, and the second register (**ST(1)**) is the destination. The result of the operation goes into the destination operand, and the source is popped off the stack. The effect is that both of the values used in the operation are destroyed and the result is left at the top of the stack.

Instructions that load constants always use the stack form (see Section 19.5.1, “Transferring Data to and from Registers”). In this case the constant created by the instruction is the implied source, and the top of the stack (**ST**) is the destination. The source is pushed into the destination.

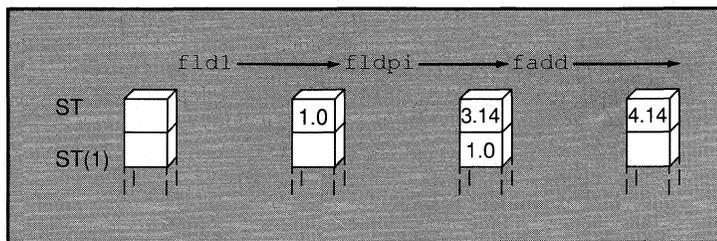
*Note*

The classical-stack form with its implied operands is similar to the register-pop form, not to the register form. For example, `fadd`, with the implied operands `ST(1),ST`, is equivalent to `faddp st(1),st`, rather than to `fadd st(1),st`.

### ■ Example

```
fldl           ; Push 1 into first position
fldpi         ; Push pi into first position
fadd          ; Add pi and 1 and pop
```

The status of the register stack after each instruction is shown below:



## 19.3.2 Using Memory Operands

The memory form treats coprocessor registers like items on a stack. Items are pushed from memory onto the top element of the stack, or popped from the top element to memory. Since only the top item can be accessed on a traditional stack, there is no need to specify the stack operand. The top register (`ST`) is always assumed. However, the memory operand must be specified.

Memory operands can be used in load and store instructions (see Section 19.5.1, “Transferring Data to and from Registers”). Load instructions push source values from memory to an implied destination register (`ST`). Store instructions pop source values from an implied source register (`ST`) to the destination in memory. Some versions of store instructions pop the register stack so that the source is destroyed. Others simply copy the source without changing the stack.

Memory operands can also be used in calculation instructions that operate on two values (see Section 19.6, “Doing Arithmetic Calculations”). The memory operand is always the source. The stack top (ST) is always the implied destination. The result of the operation replaces the destination without changing its stack position.

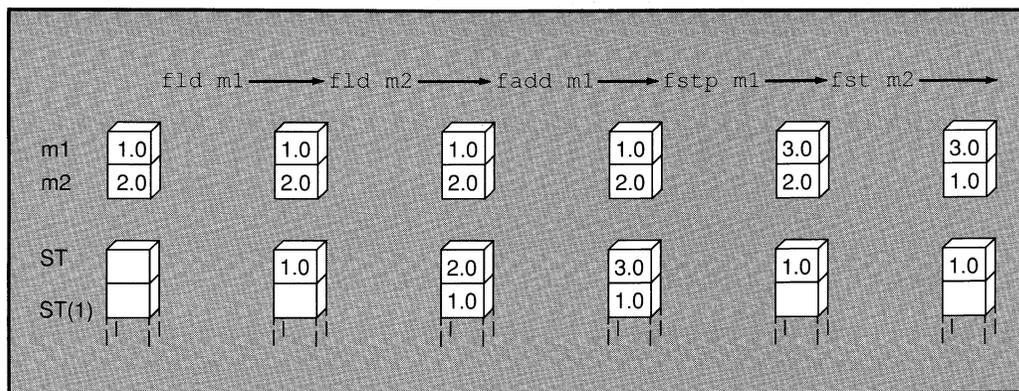
### ■ Example

```

.DATA
m1      DD      1.0
m2      DD      2.0
.CODE
.
.
.
fld     m1      ; Push m1 into first position
fld     m2      ; Push m2 into first position
fadd    m1      ; Add m2 to first position
fstp    m1      ; Pop first position into m1
fst     m2      ; Copy first position to m2

```

The status of the register stack and the memory locations used in the instructions is shown below:



### 19.3.3 Specifying Operands in the Register Form

The register form treats coprocessor registers as traditional registers. Registers are specified the same as 8086-family instructions with two register operands. The only limitation is that one of the two registers must be the stack top (ST).

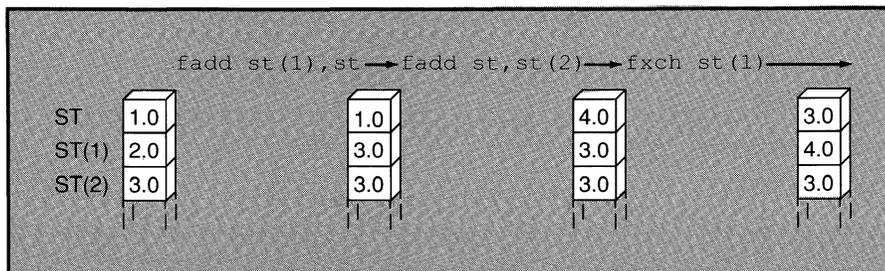
In the register form, operands are specified by name. The second operand is the source; it is not affected by the operation. The first operand is the destination; its value is replaced with the result of the operation. The stack position of the operands does not change.

The register form can only be used with the **FXCH** instruction and with arithmetic instructions that do calculations on two values. With the **FXCH** instruction, the stack top is implied and need not be specified.

### ■ Example

```
fadd    st(1),st    ; Add second position to first -
                    ; result goes in second position
fadd    st,st(2)    ; Add first position to second -
                    ; result goes in first position
fxch    st(1)       ; Exchange first and second positions
```

The status of the register stack if the registers were previously initialized to 1.0, 2.0, and 3.0 is shown below:



## 19.3.4 Specifying Operands in the Register-Pop Form

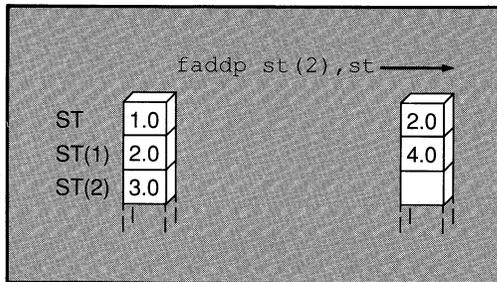
The register-pop form treats coprocessor registers as a modified stack. This form has some of the aspects of both a stack and registers. The destination register can be specified by name, but the source register must always be the stack top.

The result of the operation will be placed in the destination operand, and the stack top will be popped off the stack. The effect is that both values being operated on will be destroyed and the result of the operation will be saved in the specified destination register. The register-pop form is only used for instructions that do calculations on two values.

### ■ Example

```
faddp   st(2),st    ; Add first and third positions and pop -
                    ; first position destroyed
                    ; third moves to second and holds result
```

The status of the register stack if the registers were already initialized to 1.0, 2.0, and 3.0 is shown below:



## 19.4 Coordinating Memory Access

Problems of coordinating memory access can occur when the coprocessor and the main processor both try to access a memory location at the same time. Since the processor and coprocessor work independently, they may not finish working on memory in the order in which you give instructions. There are two separate cases, and they are handled in different ways.

In the first case, if a processor instruction is given and then followed by a coprocessor instruction, the coprocessor must wait until the processor is finished before it can start the next instruction. This is handled automatically by **MASM** for the 8088 and 8086 or by the processor for the 80186, 80286, and 80386.

---

### *Coprocessor Differences*

To synchronize operations between the 8088 or 8086 processor and the 8087 coprocessor, each 8087 instruction must be preceded by a **WAIT** instruction. This is not necessary for the 80287 or 80387. If you use the **.8087** directive, **MASM** inserts **WAIT** instructions automatically. However, if you use the **.286** or **.386** directive, **MASM** assumes the instructions are for the 80287 or 80387 and does not insert the **WAIT** instructions. If your code will never need to run on an 8086 or 8088 processor, you can make your programs shorter and more efficient by using the **.286** or **.386** directive.

---

In the second case, if a coprocessor instruction that accesses memory is followed by a processor instruction attempting to access the same memory location, memory access is not automatically synchronized. For instance, if you store a coprocessor register to a variable and then try to load that variable into a processor register, the coprocessor may not be finished. Thus the processor gets the value that was in memory before the coprocessor finished rather than the value stored by the coprocessor. Use the

**WAIT** or **FWAIT** instruction (they are mnemonics for the same instruction) to ensure that the coprocessor finishes before the processor begins.

### ■ Example

```
; Coprocessor instruction first - Wait needed
    fist    mem32                ; Store to memory
    fwait   WORD PTR mem32       ; Wait until coprocessor is done
    mov     ax,WORD PTR mem32    ; Move to register
    mov     dx,WORD PTR mem32[2]

; Processor instruction first - No wait needed
    mov     WORD PTR mem32,ax    ; Load memory
    mov     WORD PTR mem32[2],dx
    fiid   mem32                ; Load to register
```

## 19.5 Transferring Data

The 8087-family coprocessors have separate instructions for each of the following types of transfers:

- Transferring data between memory and registers, or between different registers
- Loading certain common constants into registers
- Transferring control data to and from memory

### 19.5.1 Transferring Data to and from Registers

Data-transfer instructions transfer data between main memory and the coprocessor registers, or between different coprocessor registers. Two basic principles govern data transfers:

- The instruction determines whether a value in memory will be considered an integer, a BCD number, or a real number. The value is always considered a temporary-real number once it is transferred to the coprocessor.
- The size of the operand determines the size of a value in memory. Values in the coprocessor always take up 10 bytes.

The adjustments between formats are made automatically. Notice that floating-point numbers must be stored in the IEEE format, not in the Microsoft Binary format. Data is automatically stored correctly by default. It is stored incorrectly and the coprocessor instructions disabled if

you use the **.MSFLOAT** directive. Data formats for real numbers are explained in Section 6.3.1.5, “Real-Number Variables.”

Data are transferred to stack registers by using load commands. These push data onto the stack from memory or coprocessor registers. Data are removed by using store commands. Some store commands pop data off the register stack into memory or coprocessor registers, whereas others simply copy the data without changing it on the stack.

## Real Transfers

The following instructions are available for transferring real numbers.

Syntax	Description
<b>FLD</b> <i>mem</i>	Pushes a copy of <i>mem</i> into <b>ST</b> . The source must be a 4-, 8-, or 10-byte memory operand. It is automatically converted to the temporary-real format.
<b>FLD</b> <b>ST</b> ( <i>num</i> )	Pushes a copy of the specified register into <b>ST</b> .
<b>FST</b> <i>mem</i>	Copies <b>ST</b> to <i>mem</i> without affecting the register stack. The destination can be a 4- or 8-byte memory operand. It is automatically converted from temporary-real format to short real or long real format, depending on the size of the operand. It cannot be converted to the 10-byte-real format.
<b>FST</b> <b>ST</b> ( <i>num</i> )	Copies <b>ST</b> to the specified register. The current value of the specified register is replaced.
<b>FSTP</b> <i>mem</i>	Pops a copy of <b>ST</b> into <i>mem</i> . The destination can be a 4-, 8-, or 10-byte memory operand. It is automatically converted from temporary-real format to the appropriate real-number format, depending on the size of the operand.
<b>FSTP</b> <b>ST</b> ( <i>num</i> )	Pops <b>ST</b> into the specified register. The current value of the specified register is replaced.
<b>FXCH</b> [ <b>ST</b> ( <i>num</i> )]	Exchanges the value in <b>ST</b> with the value in <b>ST</b> ( <i>num</i> ). If no operand is specified, <b>ST</b> (0) and <b>ST</b> (1) are exchanged.

## Integer Transfers

The following instructions are available for transferring binary integers.

Syntax	Description
<b>FILD</b> <i>mem</i>	Pushes a copy of <i>mem</i> into <b>ST</b> . The source must be a 2-, 4-, or 8-byte integer memory operand. It is interpreted as an integer and converted to temporary-real format.
<b>FIST</b> <i>mem</i>	Copies <b>ST</b> to <i>mem</i> . The destination must be a 2- or 4-byte memory operand. It is automatically converted from temporary-real format to a word or a doubleword, depending on the size of the operand. It cannot be converted to a quadword integer.
<b>FISTP</b> <i>mem</i>	Pops <b>ST</b> into <i>mem</i> . The destination must be a 2-, 4-, or 8-byte memory operand. It is automatically converted from temporary-real format to a word, doubleword, or quadword integer, depending on the size of the operand.

## Packed BCD Transfers

The following instructions are available for transferring BCD integers.

Syntax	Description
<b>FBLD</b> <i>mem</i>	Pushes a copy of <i>mem</i> into <b>ST</b> . The source must be a 10-byte memory operand. It should contain a packed BCD value, although no check is made to see that the data is valid.
<b>FBSTP</b> <i>mem</i>	Pops <b>ST</b> into <i>mem</i> . The destination must be a 10-byte memory operand. The value is rounded to an integer if necessary, and converted to a packed BCD value.

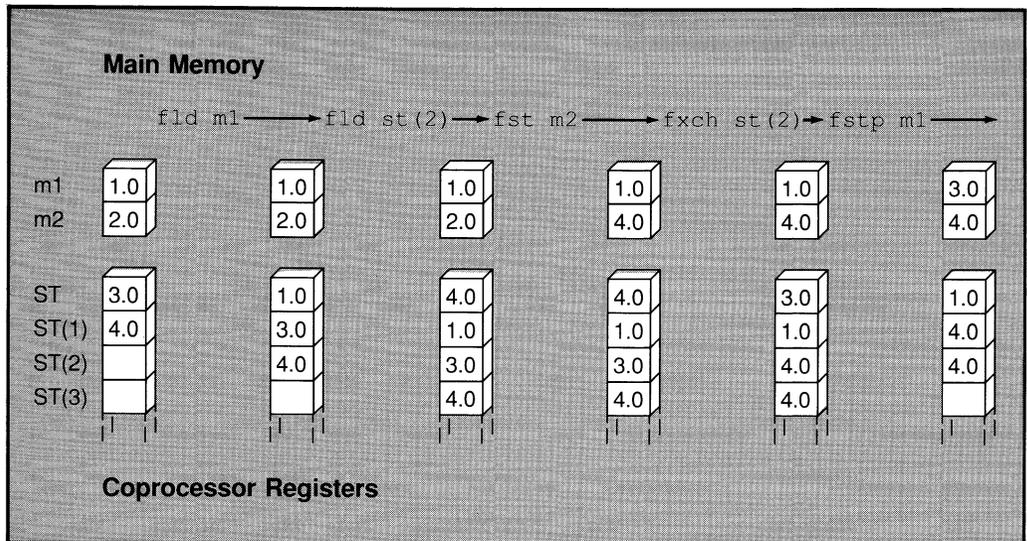
### ■ Example 1

```

fld     m1           ; Push m1 into first item
fld     st(2)       ; Push third item into first
fst     m2           ; Copy first item to m2
fxch   st(2)       ; Exchange first and third items
fstp   m1           ; Pop first item into m1

```

With the assumption that registers **ST** and **ST(1)** were previously initialized to 3.0 and 4.0, the status of the register stack is shown below:



## ■ Example 2

```

.DATA
shortreal DD 100 DUP (?)
longreal  DQ 100 DUP (?)
.CODE
.          ; Assume array shortreal has been
.          ; filled by previous code
.
mov       cx,100      ; Initialize loop
xor       si,si      ; Clear pointer into shortreal
xor       di,di      ; Clear pointer into longreal
again:    fld        shortreal[si] ; Push shortreal
          fstp       longreal[di] ; Pop longreal
          add       si,4          ; Increment source pointer
          add       di,8          ; Increment destination pointer
          loop      again        ; Do it again
    
```

Example 2 illustrates one way of doing run-time type conversions.

### 19.5.2 Loading Constants

Constants cannot be given as operands and loaded directly into coprocessor registers. You must allocate memory and initialize the variable to a constant value. The variable can then be loaded by using one of the load instructions described in Section 19.5.1, "Transferring Data to and from Registers."

However, special instructions are provided for loading certain constants. You can load 0, 1, pi, and several common logarithmic values directly. Using these instructions is faster and often more precise than loading the values from initialized variables.

The instructions that load constants all have the stack top as the implied destination operand. The constant to be loaded is the implied source operand. The instructions are listed below.

<b>Syntax</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>FLDZ</b>	Pushes 0 into <b>ST</b>
<b>FLD1</b>	Pushes 1 into <b>ST</b>
<b>FLDPI</b>	Pushes the value of pi into <b>ST</b>
<b>FLDL2E</b>	Pushes the value of $\log_2 e$ into <b>ST</b>
<b>FLDL2T</b>	Pushes $\log_2 10$ into <b>ST</b>
<b>FLDLG2</b>	Pushes $\log_{10} 2$ into <b>ST</b>
<b>FLDLN2</b>	Pushes $\log_e 2$ into <b>ST</b>

### 19.5.3 Transferring Control Data

The coprocessor data area, or parts of it, can be stored to memory and later loaded back. One reason for doing this is to save a snapshot of the coprocessor state before going into a procedure, and restore the same status after the procedure. Another reason is to modify coprocessor behavior by storing certain data to main memory, operating on the data with 8086-family instructions, and then loading it back to the coprocessor data area.

You can choose to transfer the entire coprocessor data area, the control registers, or just the status or control word. Applications programmers seldom need to load anything other than the status word.

All the control-transfer instructions take a single memory operand. Load instructions use the memory operand as the destination; store instructions use it as the source. The coprocessor data area is the implied source for load instructions and the implied destination for store instructions.

Each store instruction has two forms. The “wait form” checks for unmasked numeric-error exceptions and waits until they have been handled. The “no-wait” form (which always begins with **FN**) ignores unmasked exceptions. The instructions are listed below.

Syntax	Description
<b>FLDCW</b> <i>mem2byte</i>	Loads control word
<b>F[N]STCW</b> <i>mem2byte</i>	Stores control word
<b>F[N]STSW</b> <i>mem2byte</i>	Stores status word
<b>FLENV</b> <i>mem14byte</i>	Loads environment
<b>F[N]STENV</b> <i>mem14byte</i>	Stores environment
<b>FRSTOR</b> <i>mem94byte</i>	Restores state
<b>F[N]SAVE</b> <i>mem94byte</i>	Saves state

#### ■ 80287/387 Only

Starting with the 80287, the **FSTSW** and **FNSTSW** instructions can store data directly to the **AX** register. This is the only case in which data can be transferred directly between processor and coprocessor registers, as shown below:

```
fstsw ax
```

#### ■ 80387 Only

In 32-bit mode, the 80387 stores 32-bit addresses in the instruction and operand pointers. Therefore, the **FSAVE** instruction stores 98 bytes instead of 94, and the **FSTENV** instruction stores 18 bytes instead of 14.

## 19.6 Doing Arithmetic Calculations

The math coprocessors offer a rich set of instructions for doing arithmetic. Most arithmetic instructions accept operands in any of the formats discussed in Section 19.3, "Using Coprocessor Instructions."

When using memory operands with an arithmetic instruction, make sure you indicate in the name whether you want the memory operand to be treated as a real number or an integer. For example, use **FADD** to add a real number to the stack top or **FIADD** to add an integer to the stack top. You do not need to specify the operand type in the instruction if both operands are stack registers, since register values are always real numbers.

You cannot do arithmetic on BCD numbers in memory. You must use **FBLD** to load the numbers into stack registers.

The arithmetic instructions are listed below.

### Addition

The following instructions add the source and destination and put the result in the destination.

Syntax	Description
<b>FADD</b>	Classical-stack form. Adds <b>ST</b> and <b>ST(1)</b> and pops the result into <b>ST</b> . Both operands are destroyed.
<b>FADD ST(num),ST</b>	Register form with stack top as source. Adds the two register values and replaces <b>ST(num)</b> with the result.
<b>FADD ST,ST(num)</b>	Register form with stack top as destination. Adds the two register values and replaces <b>ST</b> with the result.
<b>FADD mem</b>	Real-memory form. Adds a real number in <i>mem</i> to <b>ST</b> . The result replaces <b>ST</b> .
<b>FIADD mem</b>	Integer-memory form. Adds an integer in <i>mem</i> to <b>ST</b> . The result replaces <b>ST</b> .
<b>FADDP ST(num),ST</b>	Register-pop form. Adds the two register values and pops the result into <b>ST(num)</b> . Both operands are destroyed.

### Normal Subtraction

The following instructions subtract the source from the destination and put the difference in the destination. Thus the number being subtracted from is replaced by the result.

Syntax	Description
<b>FSUB</b>	Classical-stack form. Subtracts <b>ST</b> from <b>ST(1)</b> and pops the result into <b>ST</b> . Both operands are destroyed.

<b>FSUB</b> $ST(num),ST$	Register form with stack top as source. Subtracts $ST$ from $ST(num)$ and replaces $ST(num)$ with the result.
<b>FSUB</b> $ST,ST(num)$	Register form with stack top as destination. Subtracts $ST(num)$ from $ST$ and replaces $ST$ with the result.
<b>FSUB</b> <i>mem</i>	Real-memory form. Subtracts the real number in <i>mem</i> from $ST$ . The result replaces $ST$ .
<b>FISUB</b> <i>mem</i>	Integer-memory form. Subtracts the integer in <i>mem</i> from $ST$ . The result replaces $ST$ .
<b>FSUBP</b> $ST(num),ST$	Register-pop form. Subtracts $ST$ from $ST(num)$ and pops the result into $ST(num)$ . Both operands are destroyed.

### Reversed Subtraction

The following instructions subtract the destination from the source and put the difference in the destination. Thus the number subtracted is replaced by the result.

<u>Syntax</u>	<u>Description</u>
<b>FSUBR</b>	Classical-stack form. Subtracts $ST(1)$ from $ST$ and pops the result into $ST$ . Both operands are destroyed.
<b>FSUBR</b> $ST(num),ST$	Register form with stack top as source. Subtracts $ST(num)$ from $ST$ and replaces $ST(num)$ with the result.
<b>FSUBR</b> $ST,ST(num)$	Register form with stack top as destination. Subtracts $ST$ from $ST(num)$ and replaces $ST$ with the result.
<b>FSUBR</b> <i>mem</i>	Real-memory form. Subtracts $ST$ from the real number in <i>mem</i> . The result replaces $ST$ .
<b>FISUBR</b> <i>mem</i>	Integer-memory form. Subtracts $ST$ from the integer in <i>mem</i> . The result replaces $ST$ .
<b>FSUBRP</b> $ST(num),ST$	Register-pop form. Subtracts $ST(num)$ from $ST$ and pops the result into $ST(num)$ . Both operands are destroyed.

## Multiplication

The following instructions multiply the source and destination and put the product in the destination.

Syntax	Description
FMUL	Classical-stack form. Multiplies <b>ST</b> by <b>ST(1)</b> and pops the result into <b>ST</b> . Both operands are destroyed.
FMUL <i>ST(num),ST</i>	Register form with stack top as source. Multiplies the two register values and replaces <b>ST(num)</b> with the result.
FMUL <i>ST,ST(num)</i>	Register form with stack top as destination. Multiplies the two register values and replaces <b>ST</b> with the result.
FMUL <i>mem</i>	Real-memory form. Multiplies a real number in <i>mem</i> by <b>ST</b> . The result replaces <b>ST</b> .
FIMUL <i>mem</i>	Integer-memory form. Multiplies an integer in <i>mem</i> by <b>ST</b> . The result replaces <b>ST</b> .
FMULP <i>ST(num),ST</i>	Register-pop form. Multiplies the two register values and pops the result into <b>ST(num)</b> . Both operands are destroyed.

## Normal Division

The following instructions divide the destination by the source and put the quotient in the destination. Thus the dividend is replaced by the quotient.

Syntax	Description
FDIV	Classical-stack form. Divides <b>ST(1)</b> by <b>ST</b> and pops the result into <b>ST</b> . Both operands are destroyed.
FDIV <i>ST(num),ST</i>	Register form with stack top as source. Divides <b>ST(num)</b> by <b>ST</b> and replaces <b>ST(num)</b> with the result.
FDIV <i>ST,ST(num)</i>	Register form with stack top as destination. Divides <b>ST</b> by <b>ST(num)</b> and replaces <b>ST</b> with the result.

<b>FDIV</b> <i>mem</i>	Real-memory form. Divides <b>ST</b> by the real number in <i>mem</i> . The result replaces <b>ST</b> .
<b>FIDIV</b> <i>mem</i>	Integer-memory form. Divides <b>ST</b> by the integer in <i>mem</i> . The result replaces <b>ST</b> .
<b>FDIVP</b> <b>ST(num),ST</b>	Register-pop form. Divides <b>ST(num)</b> by <b>ST</b> and pops the result into <b>ST(num)</b> . Both operands are destroyed.

### Reversed Division

The following instructions divide the source by the destination and put the quotient in the destination. Thus the divisor is replaced by the quotient.

<b>Syntax</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>FDIVR</b>	Classical-stack form. Divides <b>ST</b> by <b>ST(1)</b> and pops the result into <b>ST</b> . Both operands are destroyed.
<b>FDIVR</b> <b>ST(num),ST</b>	Register form with stack top as source. Divides <b>ST</b> by <b>ST(num)</b> and replaces <b>ST(num)</b> with the result.
<b>FDIVR</b> <b>ST,ST(num)</b>	Register form with stack top as destination. Divides <b>ST(num)</b> by <b>ST</b> and replaces <b>ST</b> with the result.
<b>FDIVR</b> <i>mem</i>	Real-memory form. Divides the real number in <i>mem</i> by <b>ST</b> . The result replaces <b>ST</b> .
<b>FIDIVR</b> <i>mem</i>	Integer-memory form. Divides the integer in <i>mem</i> by <b>ST</b> . The result replaces <b>ST</b> .
<b>FDIVRP</b> <b>ST(num),ST</b>	Register-pop form. Divides <b>ST</b> by <b>ST(num)</b> and pops the result into <b>ST(num)</b> . Both operands are destroyed.

### Other Operations

The following instructions all use the stack top (**ST**) as an implied destination operand. The result of the operation replaces the value in the stack top. No operand should be given.

<b>Syntax</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>FABS</b>	Sets the sign of <b>ST</b> to positive.
<b>FCHS</b>	Reverses the sign of <b>ST</b> .
<b>FRNDINT</b>	Rounds the <b>ST</b> to an integer.
<b>FSQRT</b>	Replaces the contents of <b>ST</b> with its square root.
<b>FSCALE</b>	Scales by powers of two by adding the value of <b>ST(1)</b> to the exponent of the value in <b>ST</b> . This effectively multiplies the stack-top value by two to the power contained in <b>ST(1)</b> . Since the exponent field is an integer, the value in <b>ST(1)</b> should normally be an integer.
<b>FPREM</b>	Calculates the partial remainder by performing modulo division on the top two stack registers. The value in <b>ST</b> is divided by the value in <b>ST(1)</b> . The remainder replaces the value in <b>ST</b> . The value in <b>ST(1)</b> is unchanged. Since this instruction works by repeated subtractions, it can take a lot of execution time if the operands are greatly different in magnitude. <b>FPREM</b> is sometimes used with trigonometric functions.
<b>FXTRACT</b>	Breaks a number down into its exponent and mantissa and pushes the mantissa onto the register stack. Following the operation, <b>ST</b> contains the value of the original mantissa and <b>ST(1)</b> contains the value of the unbiased exponent.

---

**80387 Only**

The 80387 has a new instruction called **FPREM1**. Its effect is similar to that of **FPREM**, but it conforms to the IEEE standard. The difference between the two instructions is explained in the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference*.

---

## ■ Example

```

.DATA
a      DD      3.0
b      DD      7.0
c      DD      2.0
posx   DD      0.0
negx   DD      0.0

.CODE
:
:
; Solve quadratic equation - no error checking

      fldl          ; Get constants 2 and 4
      fadd  st,st   ; 2 at bottom
      fld  st       ; Copy it
      fmul  a       ; = 2a

      fmul  st(1),st ; = 4a
      fxch          ; Exchange
      fmul  c       ; = 4ac

      fld  b        ; Load b
      fmul  st,st   ; = b^2
      fsubr         ; = b^2 - 4ac
                        ; Negative value here produces error
      fsqrt         ; = square root(b^2 - 4ac)
      fld  b        ; Load b
      fchs          ; Make it negative
      fxch          ; Exchange
      fld  st       ; Copy square root
      fadd  st,st(2) ; Plus version = -b + root((b^2 - 4ac)
      fxch          ; Exchange
      fsubp  st(2),st ; Minus version = -b - root((b^2 - 4ac)

      fdiv  st,st(2) ; Divide plus version
      fstp  posx     ; Store it
      fdivr         ; Divide minus version
      fstp  negx     ; Store it

```

This example solves quadratic equations. It does no error checking and fails for some values because it attempts to find the square root of a negative number. You could enhance the code by using the **FTST** instruction (see Section 19.7.1, “Comparing Operands to Control Program”) to check for a negative number or 0 just before the square root is calculated. If  $b^2 - 4ac$  is negative or 0, the code can jump to routines that handle special cases for no solution or one solution, respectively.

## 19.7 Controlling Program Flow

The math coprocessors have several instructions that set control flags in the status word. The 8087-family control flags can be used with conditional jumps to direct program flow in the same way that 8086-family flags are used.

Since the coprocessor does not have jump instructions, you must transfer the status word to memory so that the flags can be used by 8086-family instructions.

An easy way to use the status word with conditional jumps is to move its upper byte into the lower byte of the processor flags. For example, use the following statements:

```

fstsw  mem16      ; Store status word in memory
fwait                                     ; Make sure coprocessor is done
mov    ax,mem16   ; Move to AX
sahf                                       ; Store upper word in flags
    
```

As noted in Section 19.5.3, "Transferring Control Data," you can save several steps by loading the status word directly to **AX** on the 80287 and 80387.

Figure 19.3 shows how the coprocessor control flags line up with the processor flags. **C3** overwrites the zero flag, **C2** overwrites the parity flag, and **C0** overwrites the carry flag. **C1** overwrites an undefined bit, so it cannot be used directly with conditional jumps, although you can use the **TEST** instruction to check **C1** in memory or in a register. The sign and auxiliary-carry flags are also overwritten, so you cannot count on them being unchanged after the operation.

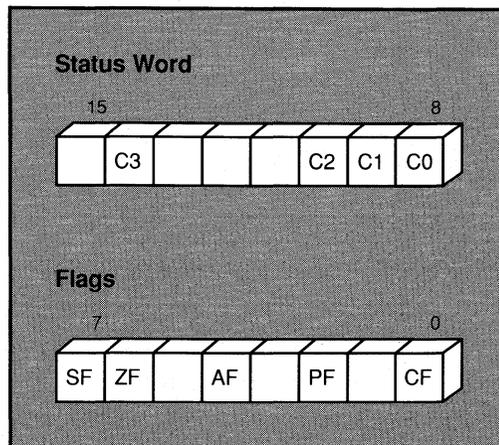


Figure 19.3 Coprocessor and Processor Control Flags

See Section 17.1.2 for more information on using conditional-jump instructions based on flag status.

## 19.7.1 Comparing Operands to Control Program Flow

The 8087-family coprocessors provide several instructions for comparing operands. All these instructions compare the stack top (**ST**) to a source operand, which may either be specified or implied as **ST(1)**.

The compare instructions affect the **C3**, **C2**, and **C0** control flags. The **C1** flag is not affected. Table 19.2 above shows the flags set for each possible result of a comparison or test.

**Table 19.2**  
**Control-Flag Settings**  
**after Compare or Test**

After FCOM	After FTEST	C3	C2	C0
<b>ST</b> > <i>source</i>	<b>ST</b> is positive	0	0	0
<b>ST</b> < <i>source</i>	<b>ST</b> is negative	0	0	1
<b>ST</b> = <i>source</i>	<b>ST</b> is 0	1	0	0
Not comparable	<b>ST</b> is NAN or projective infinity	1	1	1

Variations on the compare instructions allow you to pop the stack once or twice, and to compare integers and zero. For each instruction, the stack top is always the implied destination operand. If you do not give an operand, **ST(1)** is the implied source. Some compare instructions allow you to specify the source as a memory or register operand.

The compare instructions are listed below.

### Compare

These instructions compare the stack top to the source. The source and destination are unaffected by the comparison.

Syntax	Description
<b>FCOM</b>	Compares <b>ST</b> to <b>ST(1)</b> .
<b>FCOM</b> <i>ST(num)</i>	Compares <b>ST</b> to <b>ST(num)</b> .
<b>FCOM</b> <i>mem</i>	Compares <b>ST</b> to <i>mem</i> . The memory operand can be a four- or eight-byte real number.

<b>FICOM</b> <i>mem</i>	Compares <b>ST</b> to <i>mem</i> . The memory operand can be a two- or four-byte integer.
<b>FTST</b>	Compares the <b>ST</b> to 0. The control registers will be affected as if <b>ST</b> had been compared to 0 in <b>ST(1)</b> . Table 19.2 above shows the possible results.

## Compare and Pop

These instructions compare the stack top to the source, and then pop the stack. Thus the destination is destroyed by the comparison.

<b>Syntax</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>FCOMP</b>	Compares <b>ST</b> to <b>ST(1)</b> and pops <b>ST</b> off the register stack.
<b>FCOMP</b> <b>ST(num)</b>	Compares <b>ST</b> to <b>ST(num)</b> and pops <b>ST</b> off the register stack.
<b>FCOMP</b> <i>mem</i>	Compares <b>ST</b> to <i>mem</i> and pops <b>ST</b> off the register stack. The operand can be a four- or eight-byte real number.
<b>FICOMP</b> <i>mem</i>	Compares <b>ST</b> to <i>mem</i> and pops <b>ST</b> off the register stack. The operand can be a two- or four-byte integer.
<b>FCOMPP</b>	Compares <b>ST</b> to <b>ST(1)</b> , and then pops the stack twice. Both the source and destination are destroyed by the comparison.

---

### *80387 Only*

Unordered compare instructions are available with the 80387. The **FUCOM**, **FUCOMP**, and **FUCOMPP** instructions are like **FCOM**, **FCOMP**, and **FCOMPP** except that the unordered versions do not cause invalid operation exceptions if one of the operands is a quiet NAN (not a number). Exceptions and NANs are beyond the scope of this manual and are not explained here. See Intel coprocessor reference books for more information.

---

## ■ Example

```

                IFDEF   c287
                .287
                ENDIF
                .DATA
down            DD      10.35    ; Sides of a rectangle
across         DD      13.07
diameter       DD      12.93    ; Diameter of a circle
status         DW      ?
                .CODE
                .
                .
                .
; Get area of rectangle
                fld     across    ; Load one side
                fmul    down     ; Multiply by the other

; Get area of circle
                fldl    st,st     ; Load one and
                fadd    st,st     ; double it to get constant 2
                fdivr   diameter ; Divide diameter to get radius
                fmul    st,st     ; Square radius
                fldpi   st,st     ; Load pi
                fmul    st,st     ; Multiply it

; Compare area of circle and rectangle
                fcompp                ; Compare and throw both away
                IFNDEF c287
                fsts   status        ; Load from coprocessor to memory
                fwait                ; Wait for coprocessor
                mov    ax,status     ; Memory to register
                ELSE
                fstsw  ax             ; (for 287+, skip memory)
                ENDIF
                sahf                ; to flags
                jp     nocomp        ; If parity set, can't compare
                jz     same          ; If zero set, they're the same
                jc     rectangle    ; If carry set, rectangle is bigger
                jmp    circle        ; else circle is bigger

nocomp:        .                    ; Error handler
                .
same:          .                    ; Both equal
                .
rectangle:    .                    ; Rectangle bigger
                .
circle:       .                    ; Circle bigger

```

Notice how conditional blocks are used to enhance 80287 code. If you define the symbol `c287` from the command line by using the `/Dsymbol` option (see Section 2.4.4, “Defining Assembler Symbols”) the code is smaller and faster, but does not run on an 8087.

## 19.7.2 Testing Control Flags after Other Instructions

In addition to the compare instructions, the **FXAM** and **FPREM** instructions affect coprocessor control flags.

The **FXAM** instruction sets the value of the control flags based on the type of the number in the stack top (**ST**). This instruction is used to identify and handle special values such as infinity, zero, unnormal numbers, denormal numbers, and NaNs (not a number). Certain math operations are capable of producing these special-format numbers. A description of them is beyond the scope of this manual. The possible settings of the flags are shown in the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference*.

**FPREM** also sets control flags. Since this instruction must sometimes be repeated to get a correct remainder for large operands, it uses the **C2** flag to indicate whether the remainder returned is partial (**C2** is set) or complete (**C2** is clear). If the bit is set, the operation should be repeated.

**FPREM** also returns the least-significant three bits of the quotient in **C0**, **C3**, and **C1**. These bits are useful for reducing operands of periodic transcendental functions, such as sine and cosine, to an acceptable range. The technique is not explained here. The possible settings for each flag are shown in the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference*.

## 19.8 Using Transcendental Instructions

The 8087-family coprocessors provide a variety of instructions for doing transcendental calculations, including exponentiation, logarithmic calculations, and some trigonometric functions.

Use of these advanced instructions is beyond the scope of this manual. However, the instructions are listed below for reference. All transcendental instructions have implied operands—either **ST** as a single destination operand, or **ST** as the destination and **ST(1)** as the source.

Instruction	Description
<b>F2XM1</b>	Calculates $2^x - 1$ , where $x$ is the value of the stack top. The value $x$ must be between 0 and .5, inclusive. Returning $2^x - 1$ instead of $2^x$ allows the instruction to return the value with greater accuracy. The programmer can adjust the result to get $2^x$ .
<b>FYL2X</b>	Calculates $Y$ times $\log_2 X$ , where $X$ is in <b>ST</b> and $Y$ is in <b>ST(1)</b> . The stack is popped, so both $X$ and $Y$ are destroyed, leaving the result in <b>ST</b> . The value of $X$ must be positive.

- FYL2XP1** Calculates  $Y$  times  $\log_2(X+1)$ , where  $X$  is in **ST** and  $Y$  is in **ST(1)**. The stack is popped, so both  $X$  and  $Y$  are destroyed, leaving the result in **ST**. The absolute value of  $X$  must be between 0 and the square root of 2 divided by 2. This instruction is more accurate than **FYL2X** when computing the log of a number close to 1.
- FPTAN** Calculates the tangent of the value in **ST**. The result is a ratio  $Y/X$ , with  $Y$  replacing the value in **ST** and  $X$  pushed onto the stack so that after the instruction, **ST** contains  $Y$  and **ST(1)** contains  $X$ . The value being calculated must be a positive number less than  $\pi/4$ . The result of the **FPTAN** instruction can be used to calculate other trigonometric functions, including sine and cosine.
- FPATAN** Calculates the arctangent of the ratio  $Y/X$ , where  $X$  is in **ST** and  $Y$  is in **ST(1)**. The stack is popped, so both  $X$  and  $Y$  are destroyed, leaving the result in **ST**. Both  $X$  and  $Y$  must be positive numbers less than infinity, and  $Y$  must be less than  $X$ . The result of the **FPATAN** instruction can be used to calculate other inverse trigonometric functions, including arcsine and arccosine.

■ **80387 Only**

The following additional trigonometric functions are available on the 80387.

Instruction	Description
<b>FSIN</b>	Calculates the sine of the value in <b>ST</b> . The stack-top value is replaced by its sine.
<b>FCOS</b>	Calculates the cosine of the value in <b>ST</b> . The stack-top value is replaced by its cosine.
<b>FSINCOS</b>	Calculates the sine and cosine of the value in <b>ST</b> . When the instruction is complete, the value in <b>ST</b> is the cosine of the original stack-top value. The value in <b>ST(1)</b> is the sine of the original stack-top value. One of the values is pushed so that the former value in <b>ST(1)</b> is in <b>ST(2)</b> .

## 19.9 Controlling the Coprocessor

Additional instructions are available for controlling various aspects of the coprocessor. With the exception of **FINIT**, these instructions are generally used only by systems programmers. They are summarized below, but not fully explained or illustrated. Some instructions have a wait version and a no-wait version. The no-wait versions have **N** as the second letter.

Syntax	Description
<b>F[N]INIT</b>	Resets the coprocessor and restores all the default conditions in the control and status words. It is a good idea to use this instruction at the start and end of your program. Placing it at the start ensures that no register values from previous programs affect your program. Placing it at the end ensures that register values from your program will not affect later programs.
<b>F[N]CLEX</b>	Clears all exception flags and the busy flag of the status word. It also clears the error-status flag on the 80287 and 80387, or the interrupt-request flag on the 8087.
<b>FINCSTP</b>	Adds one to the stack pointer in the status word. Do not use to pop the register stack. No tags or registers are altered.
<b>FDECSTP</b>	Subtracts one from the stack pointer in the status word. No tags or registers are altered.
<b>FREE ST(<i>num</i>)</b>	Marks the specified register as empty.
<b>FNOP</b>	Copies the stack top to itself, thus padding the executable file and taking up processing time without having any effect on registers or memory.

### ■ 8087 Only

The 8087 has the instructions **FDISI**, **FNDISI**, **FENI**, and **FNENI**. These instructions can be used to enable or disable interrupts. The 80287 and 80387 coprocessors permit these instructions, but ignore them. Applications programmers will not normally need these instructions. Systems programmers should avoid using them so that their programs are portable to all coprocessors.

**■ 80287/387 Only**

Starting with the 80287, the **FSETPM** (Set Protected Mode) instruction is available. This instruction enables the coprocessor to run in protected mode. The primary difference is that the addresses stored in the instruction and operand pointers have a segment selector instead of an actual segment address. See Section 13.2, "Segmented Addresses," for information on segment selectors.

Either the **.286P** or **.386P** directive must be given before the **FSETPM** instruction can be used. Protected-mode operating systems normally set protected mode automatically. Therefore, you need this instruction only if you are writing control software.



# CHAPTER

# 20

## CONTROLLING THE PROCESSOR

20.1	Controlling Timing and Alignment.....	411
20.2	Controlling the Processor.....	411
20.3	Controlling Protected-Mode Processes.....	412
20.4	Controlling the 80386 .....	413



The 8086-family processors provide instructions for processor control. Some of these instructions are available on all processors; others are for controlling protected-mode operations on the 80286 and 80386.

System-control instructions have limited use in applications programming. They are primarily used by systems programmers who write operating systems and other control software. Since systems programming is beyond the scope of this manual, the systems-control instructions are summarized, but not explained in detail, in the sections below.

## 20.1 Controlling Timing and Alignment

The **NOP** instruction does nothing but take up time and space. It works by exchanging the **AX** with itself. The **NOP** instruction can be used for delays in timing loops, or to pad executable code for alignment.

Normally, applications programmers should avoid using the **NOP** instruction in timing loops, since such loops take different lengths of time on different machines. A better way to control timing is to use the DOS time function, since it is based on the computer's internal clock rather than on the speed of the processor.

**MASM** automatically inserts **NOP** instructions for padding when you use the **ALIGN** or **EVEN** directive (see Section 6.5, "Aligning Data") to align data or code on a given boundary. The assembler automatically inserts **NOP** instructions for alignment.

## 20.2 Controlling the Processor

The **WAIT**, **ESC**, **LOCK**, and **HLT** instructions control different aspects of the processor.

These instructions can be used to control processes handled by external coprocessors. The 8087-family coprocessors are the coprocessors most

commonly used with 8086-family processors, but 8086-based machines can work with other coprocessors if they have the proper hardware and control software.

These instructions are summarized below:

<u>Instruction</u>	<u>Description</u>
<b>LOCK</b>	Locks out other processors until a specified instruction is finished. This is a prefix that precedes the instruction. It can be used to make sure that a coprocessor does not change data being worked on by the processor.
<b>WAIT</b>	Instructs the processor to do nothing until it receives a signal that a coprocessor has finished with a task being performed at the same time. See Section 19.4, "Coordinating Memory Access," for information on using <b>WAIT</b> or its coprocessor equivalent, <b>FWAIT</b> , with the 8087-family coprocessors.
<b>ESC</b>	Provides an instruction and possibly a memory operand for use by a coprocessor. <b>MASM</b> automatically inserts <b>ESC</b> instructions when required for use with 8087-family coprocessors.
<b>HLT</b>	Stops the processor until an interrupt is received. It can be used in place of an endless loop if a program needs to wait for an interrupt.

## 20.3 Controlling Protected-Mode Processes

### ■ 80286/386 Only

Protected mode is available starting with the 80286 processors. This mode is generally initiated and controlled by an operating system. Current versions of DOS do not support protected mode.

The instructions that control protected mode are privileged and can only be used if the **.286P** or **.386P** directives have been given. These instructions are generally needed only for operating systems and other control software.

Note that, under protected-mode operating systems such as XENIX and OS/2, applications programmers do not need to use protected-mode instructions. Process control is managed through system calls.

Some privileged-mode instructions use internal registers of the 80286 or 80386 processors. Instructions are provided for loading values from these registers into memory where the values can be modified. Other instructions can then be used to store the values back to the special registers.

The privileged-mode instructions are listed below:

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>LAR</b>	Loads access rights
<b>LSL</b>	Loads segment limit
<b>LGDT</b>	Loads global descriptor table
<b>SGDT</b>	Stores global descriptor table
<b>LIDT</b>	Loads 8-byte-interrupt descriptor table
<b>SIDT</b>	Stores 8-byte-interrupt descriptor table
<b>LLDT</b>	Loads local descriptor table
<b>SLDT</b>	Stores local descriptor table
<b>LTR</b>	Loads task register
<b>STR</b>	Stores task register
<b>LMSW</b>	Loads machine-status word
<b>SMCW</b>	Stores machine-status word
<b>ARPL</b>	Adjusts requested privilege level
<b>CLTS</b>	Clears task-switched flag
<b>VERR</b>	Verifies read access
<b>VERW</b>	Verifies write access

## 20.4 Controlling the 80386

### ■ 80386 Only

The 80386 processor can use all the privileged-mode instructions of the 80286, but it also allows you to use **MOV** to transfer data between general-purpose registers and special registers.

The following special registers can be accessed with move instructions on the 80386:

<b>Type</b>	<b>Registers</b>
Control	<b>CR0, CR2, and CR3</b>
Debug	<b>DR0, DR1, DR2, DR3, DR6, and DR7</b>
Test	<b>TR6 and TR7</b>

These registers can be moved directly to 32-bit registers or from them.

■ **Examples**

```
mov    eax,cr0           ; Load CRO into EAX
mov    cr1,ecx           ; Store ECX in CR1
```



# APPENDIXES

A	New Features .....	417
B	Error Messages and Exit Codes .....	429



# APPENDIX A

## NEW FEATURES

---

A.1	MASM Enhancements.....	419
A.1.1	80386 Support .....	419
A.1.2	Segment Simplification .....	420
A.1.3	Performance Improvements.....	420
A.1.4	Enhanced Error Handling .....	421
A.1.5	New Options .....	421
A.1.6	Environment Variables .....	422
A.1.7	String Equates.....	422
A.1.8	RETF and RETN Instructions .....	422
A.1.9	Communal Variables .....	422
A.1.10	Including Library Files .....	422
A.1.11	Flexible Structure Definitions.....	423
A.2	Link Enhancements.....	423
A.3	The CodeView Debugger.....	423
A.4	SETENV.....	424
A.5	Compatibility with Assemblers and Compilers.....	424



Version 5.0 of the Microsoft Macro Assembler package has many significant new features. Some of the most important are the new Code-View debugger, the support for the 80386 processor, and an optional simplified system of defining segments. This appendix describes these features and tells you where they are documented.

## A.1 MASM Enhancements

MASM, the Macro Assembler program, now has several important enhancements over Version 4.0 and other previous versions. The sections below summarize new options, directives, instructions, and other features.

### A.1.1 80386 Support

MASM now supports the 80386 instruction set and addressing modes. The 80386 processor is a superset of other 8086-family processors. Most new features are simply 32-bit extensions of 16-bit features.

If you understand the features of the 16-bit 8086-family processors, then using the 32-bit extensions is not difficult. The new 32-bit registers are used in much the same way as the 16-bit registers. The 80386 registers are explained in Section 13.3.

However, some features of the 80386 processor are significantly different. Throughout the manual the heading “80386 Only” is used to flag sections in which 80386 enhancements are described. Areas of particular importance include the **.386** directive for initializing the 80386 (Section 4.4.1, “Defining Default Assembly Behavior”), the **USE32** and **USE16** segment types for setting the segment word size (Section 5.2.2.2), and indirect addressing modes (Section 14.3.3, “80386 Indirect Memory Operands”).

The 80386 processor and the 80387 coprocessor also have the new instructions listed in Table A.1 below.

**Table A.1**  
**80386 and 80387 Instructions**

Name	Mnemonic	Reference
Bit Scan Forward	<b>BSF</b>	Section 16.7
Bit Scan Reverse	<b>BSR</b>	Section 16.7
Bit Test	<b>BT</b>	Section 17.1.2.4
Bit Test and Complement	<b>BTC</b>	Section 17.1.2.4
Bit Test and Reset	<b>BTR</b>	Section 17.1.2.4
Bit Test and Set	<b>BTS</b>	Section 17.1.2.4
Move with Sign Extend	<b>MOVSX</b>	Section 15.2.3
Move with Zero Extend	<b>MOVZX</b>	Section 15.2.3
Set Byte on Condition	<b>SET</b> <i>condition</i>	Section 17.3
Double Precision Shift Left	<b>SHLD</b>	Section 16.8.5
Double Precision Shift Right	<b>SHRD</b>	Section 16.8.5
Move to/from Special Registers	<b>MOV</b>	Section 18.1
Sine	<b>FSIN</b>	Section 19.8
Cosine	<b>FCOS</b>	Section 19.8
Sine Cosine	<b>FSINCOS</b>	Section 19.8
IEEE Partial Remainder	<b>FPREM1</b>	Section 19.6
Unordered Compare Real	<b>FUCOM</b>	Section 19.7.1
Unordered Compare Real and Pop	<b>FUCOMP</b>	Section 19.7.1
Unordered Compare Real and Pop Twice	<b>FUCOMPP</b>	Section 19.7.1

### A.1.2 Segment Simplification

A new system of defining segments is available in **MASM** Version 5.0. The simplified segment directives use the Microsoft naming conventions. If you are willing to accept these conventions, segments can be defined more easily and consistently. However, this feature is optional. You can still use the old system if you need more direct control over segments or if you need to be consistent with existing code. See Section 5.1, "Simplified Segment Definitions."

A new **DOSSEG** directive enables you to specify DOS segment order in the source file. This directive is equivalent to the **/DOSSEG** option of the linker. See Section 5.1.2, "Specifying DOS Segment Order."

### A.1.3 Performance Improvements

The performance of **MASM** has been enhanced in two ways: faster assembly and larger symbol space.

Version 5.0 of the assembler is significantly faster for most source files. The improvement varies depending on the relative amounts of code and data in the source file, and on the complexity of expressions used.

Symbol space is now limited only by the amount of system memory available to your machine.

## A.1.4 Enhanced Error Handling

Error handling has been enhanced in the following ways:

- Messages have been reworded, enhanced, or reorganized.
- Messages are divided into three levels: severe errors, serious warnings, and advisory warnings. The level of warning can be changed with the `/W` option. Type-checking errors are now serious warnings rather than severe errors. See Section 2.4.13, “Setting the Warning Level.”
- During assembly, messages are output to the standard output device (by default, the screen). They can be redirected to a file or device. In Version 4.0 they were sent to the standard error device. See Section 2.3, “Controlling Message Output.”

## A.1.5 New Options

The following command-line options have been added:

Option	Description
<code>/W[0 1 2]</code>	Sets the warning level to determine what type of messages will be displayed. The three kinds are severe errors, serious warnings, and advisory warnings. See Section 2.4.13, “Setting the Warning Level.”
<code>/ZI</code> and <code>/ZD</code>	Sends debugging information for symbolic debuggers to the object file. The <code>/ZD</code> option outputs line-number information, whereas the <code>/ZI</code> option outputs both line-number and type information. See Section 2.4.16, “Writing Symbolic Information to the Object File.”
<code>/H</code>	Displays the <b>MASM</b> command line and options. See Section 2.4.5, “Creating Code for a Floating-Point Emulator.”
<code>/Dsym[=val]</code>	Allows definition of a symbol from the command line. This is an enhancement of a current option. See Section 2.4.4, “Defining Assembler Symbols” in Part 1.

In addition, the new directives **.ALPHA** and **.SEQ** have been added; these directives have the same effect as the **/A** and **/S** options. See Section 5.2.1, "Setting the Segment-Order Method."

## A.1.6 Environment Variables

**MASM** now supports two environment variables: **MASM** for specifying default options, and **INCLUDE** for specifying the search path for include files. See Section 2.2, "Using Environment Variables."

## A.1.7 String Equates

String equates have been enhanced for easier use. By enclosing the argument to the **EQU** directive in angle brackets, you can ensure that the argument is evaluated as a string equate rather than as an expression. See Section 11.1.3, "Using String Equates."

The expression operator (**%**) can now be used with macro arguments that are text macros as well as arguments that are expressions. See Section 11.4.4, "Using the Expression Operator."

## A.1.8 RETF and RETN Instructions

The **RETF** (Return Far) and **RETN** (Return Near) instructions are now available. These instructions enable you to define procedures without the **PROC** and **ENDP** directives. See Section 17.4.2, "Defining Procedures."

## A.1.9 Communal Variables

**MASM** now allows you to declare communal variables. These uninitialized global data items can be used in include files. They are compatible with variables declared in C include files. See Section 8.3, "Using Multiple Modules."

## A.1.10 Including Library Files

The **INCLUDELIB** directive enables you to specify in the assembly source file any libraries that you want to be linked with your program modules. See Section 8.5, "Specifying Library Routines."

### A.1.11 Flexible Structure Definitions

Structure definitions can now include conditional-assembly statements, thus enabling more flexible structures. See Section 7.1.1, “Declaring Structure Types.”

## A.2 Link Enhancements

**LINK** has several new features. These enhancements are discussed in Chapter 12, “Linking Object Files with **LINK**,” of the Microsoft CodeView and Utilities manual. They are summarized below:

- The **LINK** environment specifies default linker options.
- The **TMP** environment variable specifies a directory in which **link** can create temporary files if it runs out of memory.
- The **/CODEVIEW** option puts debugging information in executable files for the CodeView debugger.
- The **/INFORMATION** option displays each step of the linking process including parsing the command line, Pass 1, and so on. The path and name of each module are displayed as the modules are linked.
- The **/BATCH** option disables the linker’s prompting interface so that make or batch files are not be stopped by **link** errors.
- The **/QUICKLIB** option creates a user’s library for a Microsoft Quick language (such as QuickBASIC).
- The **/FARCALLTRANSLATION** and **/PACKCODE** options enable two optimizations that may make code faster in certain situations.

## A.3 The CodeView Debugger

In Version 5.0 of the Macro Assembler package, the CodeView debugger replaces **SYMDEB**. This source-level symbolic debugger is capable of working with programs developed with **MASM** or with Microsoft high-level-language compilers.

The CodeView debugger features a window-oriented environment with multiple windows displaying different types of information. Commands can be executed with a mouse, function keys, or command lines. Variables can be watched in a separate window as the program executes.

MASM and LINK have been enhanced to support the features of the CodeView debugger.

## A.4 SETENV

Since MASM and LINK now support more environment variables, users may wish to define environment strings that exceed the default size of the DOS environment. The SETENV program in the CodeView and Utilities manual is provided as a means of modifying the environment size for DOS Versions 2.0 to 3.1.

## A.5 Compatibility with Assemblers and Compilers

If you are upgrading from a previous version of the Microsoft or IBM Macro Assembler, you may need to make some adjustments before assembling source code developed with previous versions. The potential compatibility problems are listed below:

- All previous versions of the Macro Assembler assembled initialized real-number variables in the Microsoft Binary format by default. Version 5.0 assembles initialized real-number variables in the IEEE format. If you have source modules that depend on the default format being Microsoft Binary, you must modify them by placing the **.MSFLOAT** directive at the start of the module before the first variable is initialized.

In previous versions of the Macro Assembler, the default conditions were 8086 instructions enabled, coprocessor instructions disabled, and real numbers assembled in Microsoft Binary format. The **/R** option, the **.8087** directive, or the **.287** directive was required to enable coprocessor instructions and IEEE format for real numbers. In Version 5.0, the default conditions are 8086 and 8087 instructions enabled and real numbers assembled in IEEE format. Although the **/R** option is no longer used, it is recognized and ignored so that existing make and batch files work without modification.

- Some previous versions of the IBM Macro Assembler wrote segments to object files in alphabetical order. The current version writes segments to object files in the order encountered in the source file. You can use the **/A** option or the **.ALPHA** directive to order segments alphabetically if this segment order is required for

your existing source code. See Section 5.2.1, “Setting the Segment-Order Method,” for more information.

- Some early versions of the Macro Assembler did not have strict type checking. Later versions had strict type checking that produced errors on source code that would have run under the earlier versions. **MASM** Version 5.0 solves this incompatibility by making type errors into warning messages. You can set the warning level so that type warnings will not be displayed, or you can modify the code so that the type is given specifically. Section 9.5, “Strong Typing for Memory Operands,” describes strict type checking and how to modify source code developed without this feature.

The programs in the Microsoft Macro Assembler package are compatible with Microsoft (and most IBM) high-level languages. An exception occurs when the current version of **LINK** is used with IBM COBOL 1.0, IBM FORTRAN 2.0, or IBM Pascal 2.0. If source code developed with these compilers has overlays, you must use the linker provided with the compiler. Do not use the new version of **LINK** provided with the assembler.

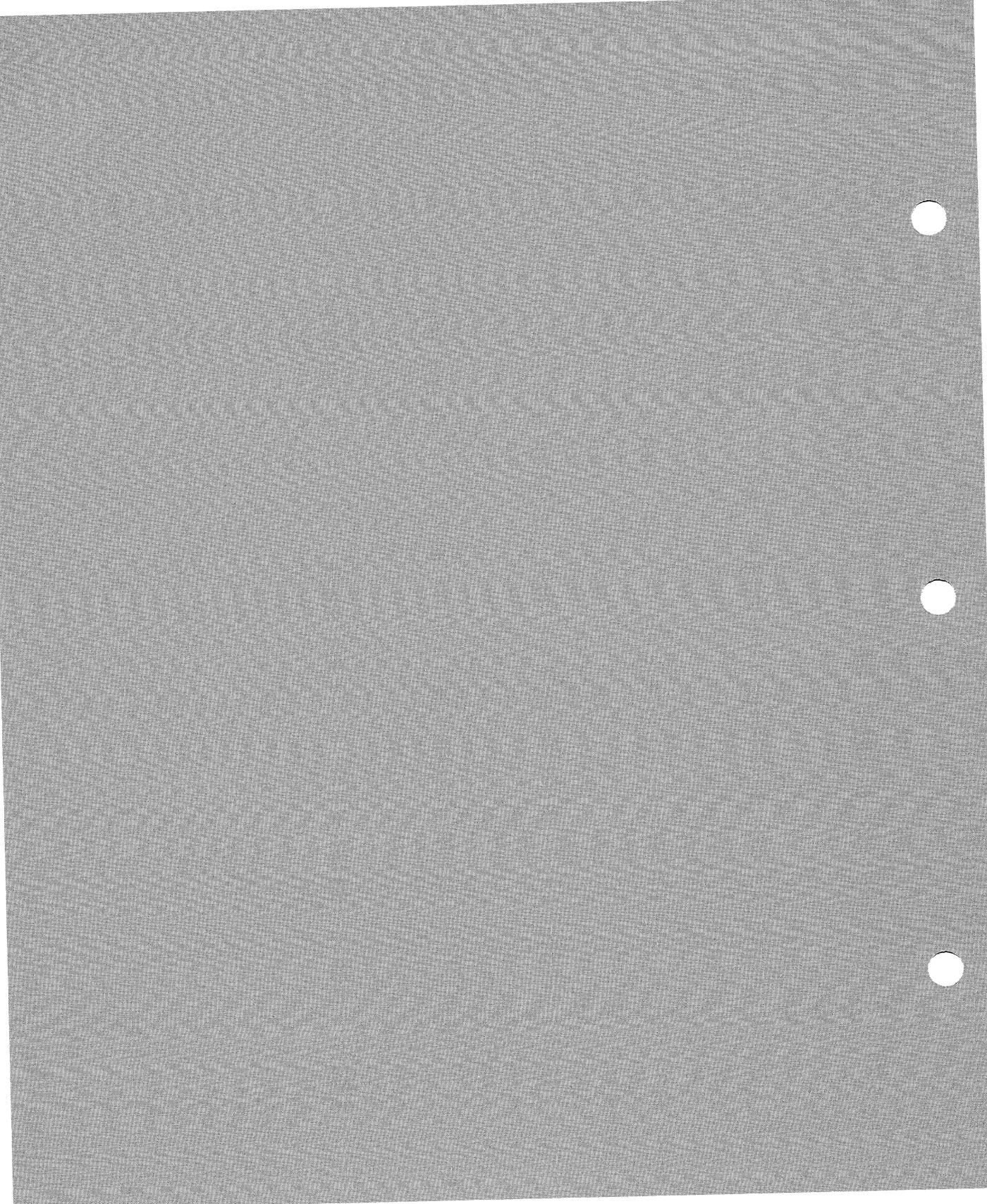


# APPENDIX B

## ERROR MESSAGES AND EXIT CODES

---

B.1	MASM Messages and Exit Codes.....	429
B.1.1	Assembler Status Messages .....	429
B.1.2	Numbered Assembler Messages.....	430
B.1.3	Unnumbered Error Messages .....	446
B.1.4	MASM Exit Codes.....	448
B.2	CREF Error Messages and Exit Codes .....	449



This appendix lists and explains the messages and exit codes that can be generated by **MASM** and **CREF**.

Messages are sent to the standard output device. By default, this device is the screen, but you can redirect the messages to a file or to a device such as a printer.

## B.1 MASM Messages and Exit Codes

The assembler can display several kinds of messages as well as output an exit code; the kind of exit code output depends on the error, if any, encountered during the assembly.

### B.1.1 Assembler Status Messages

After every assembly, **MASM** reports on the symbol space, errors, and warnings. A sample display is shown below:

```
Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.00  
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1987. All rights reserved.
```

```
47904 + 353887 Bytes symbol space free  
    0 Warning Errors  
    0 Severe Errors
```

The first line indicates how much near and far symbol space was unused during the assembly. This data may help you determine whether increasing the size of your program will exhaust available memory.

The first number indicates near symbol space. There is 64K total. The second number indicates far symbol space. This is equal to the size of **MASM**, the size of **MASM** buffers, and the amount of available memory less near data space. Most symbols go into far space. When far space is exhausted, additional symbols go into near space. Using both far and near space causes a decrease in speed of assembly.

You can use the **/V** option to direct **MASM** to display the addition statistics. The number of source lines, the total number of source- and include-file lines, and the number of symbols are shown. This information appears only if no severe errors are encountered. An example is shown below:

```
742 Source Lines  
799 Total Lines  
44 Symbols
```

The **/T** option can be used to suppress all output to the screen after assembly.

## B.1.2 Numbered Assembler Messages

The assembler displays messages on the screen whenever it encounters an error while processing a source file. It also displays a warning message whenever it encounters questionable syntax. Messages that can be associated with a particular line of code are numbered. General errors related to the entire assembly rather than to a particular line are unnumbered (see Section B.1.3).

Numbered error messages are displayed in the following format:

*sourcefile(line) : code: message*

The *sourcefile* is the name of the source file where the error occurred. If the error occurred in a macro in an include file, the *sourcefile* is the file where the macro was called and expanded—not the file where it was defined.

The *line* indicates the point in the source file where **MASM** was no longer able to assemble.

The *code* is an identifying code in the format used by all Microsoft language programs. It starts with the word “error” or “warning” followed by a five-character code. The first character is a letter indicating the program or language. Assembler messages start with **A**. The first digit indicates the warning level. The number is 2 for severe errors, 4 for serious warnings, and 5 for advisory warnings. The next three digits are the error number. For example, severe error 38 is shown as **A2038**.

The *message* is a descriptive line describing the error.

**MASM** messages are listed in numerical order in this section with a short explanation for each.

---

### Note

Some numbers in sequence are not assigned messages because errors that could be generated in previous versions of **MASM** have been removed or reorganized in this version.

---

Code	Message
0	<p>Block nesting error</p> <p>Nested procedures, segments, structures, macros, or repeat blocks were not properly terminated. This error may indicate that you closed an outer level of nesting with inner levels still open.</p>
1	<p>Extra characters on line</p> <p>Sufficient information to define a statement has been received on a line, but additional characters were also provided. This may indicate that you provided too many arguments.</p>
2	<p>Internal error - Register already defined <i>symbol</i></p> <p>Note the conditions when the error occurs and contact Microsoft Corporation by using the Product Assistance Request form at the end of this manual.</p>
3	<p>Unknown type specifier</p> <p>An invalid type specifier was used to give the size of a label or external declaration. For instance, <b>BYTE</b> or <b>NEAR</b> might have been misspelled.</p>
4	<p>Redefinition of symbol</p> <p>A symbol was defined in two places with different types. This error occurs during Pass 1 on the second declaration of the symbol.</p>
5	<p>Symbol is multidefined:</p> <p>A symbol is defined in two places. This error occurs during Pass 2 on each declaration of the symbol.</p>
6	<p>Phase error between passes</p> <p>An ambiguous instruction or directive caused the relative address of a label to be changed between Pass 1 and Pass 2. You can use the <b>/D</b> option to produce a Pass 1 listing to aid in resolving phase errors between passes. The format of Pass 1 listings is discussed in Section 2.5.7.</p>
7	<p>Already had ELSE clause</p> <p>More than one <b>ELSE</b> clause was used within a conditional assembly block. Each nested <b>ELSE</b> must have its own <b>IF</b> directive and <b>ENDIF</b>.</p>

- 8            Must be in conditional block  
              An **ENDIF** or **ELSE** was specified without a corresponding **IF** directive.
- 9            Symbol not defined:  
              A symbol was used without being defined. This error is produced for forward references on the first pass and is ignored if the references are resolved on the second pass.
- 10           Syntax error  
              A statement did not match any recognizable assembler syntax. **MASM** tries to be specific, so this error only occurs if the statement bears no resemblance to any legal statement.
- 11           Type illegal in context  
              The type specifier was given with an unacceptable size. For example, a procedure was defined as having **BYTE** type, instead of **NEAR** or **FAR** type.
- 12           Group name must be unique  
              A name assigned as a group name was already defined as another type of symbol.
- 13           Must be declared during Pass 1: *symbol*  
              An item was referenced before it was defined in Pass 1. For example, **IF DEBUG** is illegal if the symbol **DEBUG** was not previously defined.
- 14           Illegal public declaration  
              A symbol was declared public illegally. For instance, a text equate cannot be declared public. Section 8.1, "Declaring Symbols Public," explains public declarations.
- 15           Symbol already different kind: *symbol*  
              A symbol was redefined to a different kind of symbol. For example, a segment name was reused as a variable name, or a structure name was reused as an equate name.
- 16           Reserved word used as symbol: *name*  
              An assembler keyword was used as a symbol. This is a warning, not an error, and can be ignored if you wish. However, the keyword is no longer available for its original purpose. For example, if you name a macro **add**, it replaces the **ADD** instruction.

- 17 Forward reference illegal  
A symbol was referenced before it was defined on Pass 1. For example, the following lines produce an error:
- ```

count      DB      count DUP (?)
count      EQU     10

```
- The statements would be legal if the lines were reversed.
- 18 Operand must be register: *operand*  
A register was expected as an operand, but a symbol or constant was supplied.
- 20 Operand must be segment or group  
A segment or group name was expected, but some other kind of operand was given. For instance, the **ASSUME** directive requires that the symbol assigned to a segment register be a segment name, a group name, a **SEG** expression, or a text equate representing a segment or group name. Thus the following statement is accepted:
- ```

ASSUME ds:SEG variable ; Legal

```
- However, if the same statement is assigned to an equate, it is not accepted, as shown below:
- ```

segvar      EQU     SEG variable
            ASSUME ds:segvar      ; Illegal

```
- 22 Operand must be type specifier  
An operand was expected to be a type specifier, such as **NEAR** or **FAR**, but some other kind of operand was received.
- 23 Symbol already defined locally  
A symbol that had already been defined within the current module was declared **EXTRN**.
- 24 Segment parameters are changed  
A segment declaration with the same name as a previous segment declaration was given with arguments that did not match the previous declaration. See Section 5.2 for information on defining segments.
- 25 Improper align/combine type  
**SEGMENT** parameters are incorrect. Check the align and combine types to make sure you have entered valid types

from among those discussed in Section 5.2, "Full Segment Definitions."

- 26 Reference to multidefined symbol  
An instruction referenced a symbol defined in more than one place.
- 27 Operand expected  
An operand was expected, but an operator was received.
- 28 Operator expected  
An operator was expected, but an operand was received.
- 29 Division by 0 or overflow  
An expression resulted in division by 0 or in a number too large to be represented.
- 30 Negative shift count  
An expression using the **SHR** or **SHL** operator evaluated to a negative shift count.

- 31 Operand types must match  
An instruction received operands of different sizes. For example, this warning is generated by the following code:

```
string      DB      "This is a test"
            .
            .
            .
            mov     ax,string[4]
```

Since this is a warning rather than an error, **MASM** attempts to generate code based on its best guess of the intended result. If one of the operands is a register, the register size overrides the size of the other operand. In the example, the word size of **AX** overrides the byte size of `string[4]`. You can avoid this warning and make your code less ambiguous by specifying the operand size with the **PTR** operator. For example:

```
move       ax,WORD PTR string[4]
```

- 32 Illegal use of external  
An external variable was used incorrectly. See Section 8.2 for information about correct declaration and use of external symbols.

- 34           Operand must be record or field name  
An operand was expected to be a record name or record-field name, but another kind of operand was received.
- 35           Operand must have size  
An operand was expected to have a specified size, but no size was supplied. For example, the following statement is illegal:
- ```
          inc       [bx]
```
- Often this error can be remedied by using the **PTR** operator to specify a size type, as shown below:
- ```
          inc       BYTE PTR [bx]
```
- 38           Left operand must have segment  
The left operand of a segment-override expression must be a segment register, group, or segment name. For example, if `mem1` and `mem2` are variables, the following statement is illegal:
- ```
          mov       dx, mem1:mem2
```
- 39           One operand must be constant  
The addition operator was used incorrectly. For instance, two memory operands cannot be added in an expression. Valid uses of the addition operator are explained in Section 9.2.1.1, "Arithmetic Operators."
- 40           Operands must be in same segment, or one must be constant  
The subtraction operator was used incorrectly. For instance, a memory operand in the code segment cannot be subtracted from a memory operand in the data segment. Valid uses of the subtraction operator are explained in Section 9.2.1.1.
- 42           Constant expected  
A constant operand was expected, but an operand or expression that does not evaluate to a constant was supplied.
- 43           Operand must have segment  
The **SEG** operator was used incorrectly. For instance, a constant operand cannot have a segment. See Section 9.2.4.5 for a description of valid uses of the **SEG** operator.

- 44            Must be associated with data  
              A code-related item was used where a data-related item was expected.
- 45            Must be associated with code  
              A data-related item was used where a code-related item was expected.
- 46            Multiple base registers  
              More than one base register was used in an operand. For example, the following line is illegal:
- ```
              mov     ax, [bx+bp]
```
- 47            Multiple index registers  
              More than one index register was used in an operand. For example, the following line is illegal:
- ```
              mov     ax, [si+di]
```
- 48            Must be index or base register  
              An indirect memory operand requires a base or index register, but some other register was specified. For example, the following line is illegal:
- ```
              mov     ax, [bx+ax]
```
- Only **BP**, **BX**, **DI**, and **SI** may be used in indirect operands (except with 32-bit registers on the 80386).
- 49            Illegal use of register  
              A register was used in an illegal context. For example, the following statement is illegal:
- ```
              mov     ax, cs:[si]
```
- 50            Value out of range  
              A value was too large for its context. For example,
- ```
              mov     al, 5000
```
- is illegal; you must use a byte value for a byte register.
- 51            Operand not in current CS ASSUME segment  
              An operand was used to represent a code address outside the code segment assigned with the **ASSUME** statement. This usually indicates a call or jump to a label outside the

current code segment.

52

Improper operand type: *symbol*

An illegal operand was given for a particular context. For example

```
mov mem1, mem2
```

is illegal if both operands are memory operands.

53

Jump out of range by *number* bytes

A conditional jump was not within the required range. For all except the 80386 processor, the range is 128 bytes backward or 127 bytes forward from the start of the instruction following the jump instruction. For the 80386, the default range is from -32,768 to 32,767. You can usually correct the problem by reversing the condition of the conditional jump and using an unconditional jump (**JMP**) to the out-of-range label, as described in Section 9.4.1, "Forward References to Labels."

55

Illegal register value

A register was specified with an illegal syntax. For example, you cannot access a stack variable with the following:

```
mov ax, bp+4
```

The correct syntax (as explained in Section 17.4.3, "Passing Arguments on the Stack") is shown below:

```
mov ax, [bp+4]
```

56

Immediate mode illegal

An immediate operand was supplied to an instruction that cannot use immediate data. For example, the following statement is illegal:

```
mov ds, DGROUP
```

You must move the segment address into a general register and then move it from that register to **DS**.

57

Illegal size for operand

The size of an operand is illegal with the specified instruction. For instance, you cannot use a shift or rotate instruction with a doubleword (except on the 80386). Since this is a warning rather than an error, **MASM** does assemble code for the instruction, making a reasonable guess at your intention. For example, if the statement

```
inc mem32
```

is given where `mem32` is a doubleword memory operand, **MASM** actually only increments the low-order word of the operand, since a word is the largest operand that can be incremented (except on the 80386). This error may occur if you try to assemble source code written for assemblers that have less strict type checking than the Microsoft Macro Assembler (such as early versions of the IBM Macro Assembler). Usually you can solve the problem by specifying the size of the item with the **PTR** operator, as explained in Section 9.5, "Strong Typing for Memory Operands."

58 Byte register illegal

A byte register was used in a context where a word register (or 32-bit register on the 80386) is required. For example, `push al` is illegal; use `push ax` instead.

59 Illegal use of CS register

The **CS** register was used in an illegal context, such as those listed below:

```
pop cs
mov cs,ax
```

60 Must be accumulator register

A register other than **AL**, **AX**, or **EAX** was supplied in a context where only the accumulator register is acceptable. For instance, the **IN** instruction requires the accumulator register as its left (destination) operand.

61 Improper use of segment register

A segment register was used in a context where it is illegal. For example, `inc cs` is illegal.

62 Missing or unreachable code segment

A jump was attempted to a label in a segment that **MASM** does not recognize as a code segment. This usually indicates that there is no **ASSUME** statement associating the **CS** register with a segment.

63 Operand combination illegal

Two operands were used with an instruction that does not allow the specified combination of operands. For example, the following operand combination is illegal:

```
xchg mem1,mem2
```

- 64           Near JMP/CALL to different code segment  
A near jump or call instruction attempted to access an address in a code segment other than the one used in the currently active **ASSUME**. To correct the error, use a far call or jump, or use an **ASSUME** statement to change the code segment currently referenced by **CS**. See Section 5.4, "Associating Segments with Registers," for information on the **ASSUME** directive.
- 65           Label cannot have segment override  
A segment override was used incorrectly. See Section 9.2.3 for examples of valid uses of the segment override operator.
- 66           Must have instruction after prefix  
A repeat prefix such as **REP**, **REPE**, or **REPNE** was given without specifying the instruction to repeat.
- 67           Cannot override ES for destination  
A segment override was used on the destination of a string instruction. Although the default **DS:SI** register pair for the source can have a segment override, the destination must always be in the **ES:DI** register pair. The **ES** segment cannot be overridden. For example, the following statement is illegal:  

```
rep       stos ds:destin     ; Can't override ES
```
- 68           Cannot address with segment register  
A statement tried to access a memory operand, but no **ASSUME** directive had been used to specify a segment for the operand. See Section 5.4, "Associating Segments with Registers," for information on the **ASSUME** directive.
- 69           Must be in segment block  
A directive (such as **EVEN**) that is expected to be in a segment is used outside a segment.
- 70           Cannot use EVEN or ALIGN with byte alignment  
The **EVEN** or **ALIGN** directive was used in a segment that is byte aligned. Section 6.5, "Aligning Data," explains the **EVEN** and **ALIGN** directives.

- 71 Forward reference needs override or FAR  
 A call or jump attempts to access a far label that was not declared far earlier in the source code. You can use the **PTR** operator to specify far calls and jumps, as shown below:

```
call    FAR PTR task
jmp     FAR PTR location
```

- 72 Illegal value for DUP count  
 The count value specified for a **DUP** operator did not evaluate to a constant integer greater than 0.
- 73 Symbol is already external  
 A symbol that had already been declared external was later defined locally. Section 8.2 describes external declarations.
- 74 DUP nesting too deep  
**DUP** operators were nested to more than 17 levels.
- 75 Illegal use of undefined operand (?)  
 The undefined operand (?) was used incorrectly. For example, the following statements are illegal:

```
stuff    DB    5 DUP (?+5) ; Can't use in expression
          mov  ax,?        ; Can't use in code
```

Valid uses of the undefined operand are explained in Section 6.3.2, "Defining Arrays and Buffers."

- 76 Too many values for structure or record initialization  
 Too many initial values were given when declaring a record or structure variable. The number of values in the declaration must match the number in the definition. For example, a structure `test` defined with four fields could be declared as shown below:

```
stest    test    <4,,'c',0>
```

The declaration must have four or fewer fields.

- 77 Angle brackets required around initialized list  
 A structure variable was defined without angle brackets around the initial values in the list. For example, the following definition is illegal:

```
stest      test    4,,'c'O
```

The following definitions are correct:

```
stest      test    <4,,'c',O> ; Three initial values, one blank
ttest      test    <>         ; No initial values
```

78

Directive illegal in structure

A statement within a structure definition was not one of the following: a data definition using define directives such as **DB** or **DW**, a comment preceded by a semicolon, or a conditional-assembly directive.

79

Override with DUP illegal

The **DUP** operator was used in a structure initialization list. For example, the following example is illegal because of the **DUP** operator:

```
stest      test    <3,4 DUP (3),5>
```

80

Field cannot be overridden

An item in a structure-initialization list attempted to override a structure field that could not be overridden. For instance, if a field is initialized in the structure definition with the **DUP** operator, it cannot be overridden in a declaration. See the note in Section 7.1.2, "Defining Structure Variables."

83

Circular chain of EQU aliases

An alias declared with the **EQU** directive points to itself. For example, the following lines are illegal:

```
a          EQU      b
b          EQU      a
```

84

Cannot emulate coprocessor opcode

Either a coprocessor instruction or operands used with such an instruction produced an opcode that the coprocessor emulator does not support. Since the emulator library is not supplied with the Microsoft Macro Assembler, this error can only occur if you are linking assembler routines with code from a high-level-language compiler that uses the emulator.

85

End of file, no END directive

The source code was not terminated by an **END** statement. This error can also occur as the result of segment-nesting errors.

- 86           Data emitted with no segment  
A statement that generates code or data was used outside all segment blocks. Instructions and data declarations must be in segments, but directives that specify assembler behavior without generating code or data can be outside segments.
- 87           Forced error - pass1  
An error was forced with the **.ERR1** directive.
- 88           Forced error - pass2  
An error was forced with the **.ERR2** directive.
- 89           Forced error  
An error was forced with the **.ERR** directive.
- 90           Forced error - expression true (0)  
An error was forced with the **.ERRE** directive.
- 91           Forced error - expression false (not 0)  
An error was forced with the **.ERRNZ** directive.
- 92           Forced error - symbol not defined  
An error was forced with the **.ERRNDEF** directive.
- 93           Forced error - symbol defined  
An error was forced with the **.ERRDEF** directive.
- 94           Forced error - string blank  
An error was forced with the **.ERRB** directive.
- 95           Forced error - string not blank  
An error was forced with the **.ERRNB** directive.
- 96           Forced error - strings identical  
An error was forced with the **.ERRIDN** directive.
- 97           Forced error - strings different  
An error was forced with the **.ERRDIF** directive.
- 98           Wrong length for override value  
The override value for a structure field is too large to fit in the field. An example is shown below:

```

x          STRUC
x1         DB      "A"
x          ENDS

y          x      <"AB">

```

The override value is a string consisting of two bytes; the structure declaration provided only room for one byte.

99 Line too long expanding symbol: *symbol*  
 An equate defined with the **EQU** directive was so long that expanding it caused the assembler's internal buffers to overflow. This message may indicate a recursive text macro.

100 Impure memory reference  
 Data was stored into the code segment when the **/P** option and privileged instructions (enabled with **.286P** or **.386P**) were in effect. An example of storing data in the code segment is shown below:

```

                .CODE
c_word         DW      ?
                .
                .
                mov    cs:c_word,data

```

The **/P** option checks for such statements, which are acceptable in real mode, but can cause problems in privileged mode.

101 Missing data; zero assumed  
 An operand is missing from a statement, as shown below:

```

mov    ax,

```

Since some programmers use this syntax purposely, the message is a warning. **MASM** assumes that 0 was intended and assembles the following code:

```

mov    ax,0

```

102 Segment near (or at) 64K limit

A bug in the 80286 processor causes jump errors when a code segment approaches within a few bytes of the 64K limit in privileged mode. This error warns about code that may fail because of the bug. The error can only be generated when the **.286** directive is given.

103           Align must be power of 2  
 A number that is not a power of two was used with the **ALIGN** directive. The directive is explained in Section 6.5, "Aligning Data."

104           Jump within short distance  
 A **JMP** instruction was used to jump to a short label (128 or fewer bytes before the end of the **JMP** instruction, or 127 or fewer bytes beyond the instruction). By default the assembler assumes that jumps are near (greater than short, but still in one segment). If a short jump is encountered, **MASM** uses a short form of the **JMP** instruction (2 bytes) rather than the long form (3 bytes with 16-bit segments or 5 bytes with 32-bit segments). You can make your code slightly more efficient by using the **SHORT** operator to specify that a jump is short rather than near. For example, using the **SHORT** operator in the following example saves 1 byte of code:

```

                jmp     SHORT there
                .
there:          .           ; Less than 127 bytes

```

Using the **SHORT** operator with forward references to code labels is explained in Section 9.2.4.2. With the 80386 processor, this message also applies to conditional jumps, which can be either short (2 bytes) or near (4 bytes).

105           Expected *element*  
 An element such as a punctuation mark or operator was omitted. For instance, if you omit the comma between source and destination operands, the message Expected comma is generated.

106           Line too long  
 A source line was longer than 128 characters, the maximum allowed by **MASM**.

107           Illegal digit in number  
 A constant number contained a digit that is not allowed in the current radix.

108           Empty string not allowed  
 A statement used an empty string. For example, the following definition is illegal:

```

null          DB     ""

```

In many languages an empty string represents ASCII character 0. In assembly language, you must give the value 0, as shown below:

```
null      DB      0
```

- 109 Missing operand  
The instruction or directive requires more operands than were provided.
- 110 Open parenthesis or bracket  
Only one parenthesis or bracket was given in a statement that requires opening and closing parentheses or brackets.
- 111 Directive must be in macro  
A directive that is expected only in macro definitions was used outside a macro.
- 112 Unexpected end of line  
A line ended before a complete statement was formed. **MASM** expects more information, but cannot identify what information is missing.
- 113 Cannot change processor in segment  
A processor directive was encountered within a segment. Processor directives must be given before the first segment directive or between segments. If you want to change the processor in the middle of the segment, you must close the current segment, give the processor directive, and then start another segment.
- 114 Operand size does not match segment word size  
A 32-bit operand was used in a 16-bit segment, or vice versa. This warning can only occur with the 80386. For example, the following statement is a questionable practice in a 32-bit segment:
- ```
mov ax,OFFSET nearlabel ; Load near (32-bit) label
```
- The following statement is a questionable practice in a 16-bit segment:
- ```
mov eax,OFFSET farlabel ; Load far (48-bit) label
```
- This is a warning that you can ignore if you are certain you know what you are doing.

115           Address size does not match segment word size

A 32-bit address was used in a 16-bit segment, or vice versa. This warning can only occur with the 80386. For example, the following statement is a questionable practice in a 32-bit segment:

```
mov  eax,[si] ; Load value pointed to by 16-bit pointer
```

The following statement is a questionable practice in a 16-bit segment:

```
mov  ax,[esi] ; Load value pointed to by 32-bit pointer
```

This is a warning that you can ignore if you are certain you know what you are doing.

### B.1.3 Unnumbered Error Messages

Unnumbered messages appear when an error occurs that cannot be associated with a particular line of code. Generally these errors indicate problems with the command line, memory allocation, or file access. **MASM** may generate the unnumbered error messages below.

#### ■ File-Access Errors

Any of the following errors may occur when **MASM** tries to access a file for processing. They usually indicate insufficient disk space, a corrupted file, or some other file error.

End of file encountered on input file

Include file *filename* not found

Read error on standard input

Unable to access input file: *filename*

Unable to open cref file: *filename*

Unable to open input file: *filename*

Unable to open listing file: *filename*

Unable to open object file: *filename*

Write error on cross-reference file

Write error on listing file

Write error on object file

### ■ **Command-Line Errors**

Any of the following errors may occur if you give an invalid command line when starting **MASM**.

Buffer size expected after B option

Error defining symbol "*name*" from command line

Extra file name ignored

Line invalid, start again

Path expected after I option

Unknown case option: *option*

Unknown option: *option*

### ■ **Miscellaneous Errors**

The following errors indicate a problem with memory allocation or some other assembler problem that is not related to a specific source line.

Internal error

Note the conditions when the error occurs and contact Microsoft Corporation by using the Product Assistance Request form at the end of this manual.

Internal error - Problem with expression analyzer

This problem may indicate an expression that **MASM** does not understand. Note the conditions when the error occurs and contact Microsoft Corporation by using the Product Assistance Request form at the end of this manual.

Internal unknown error

This error may indicate that the internal error table has been corrupted and **MASM** cannot figure out what the error is. Note the conditions when the error occurs and contact Microsoft Corporation by using the Product Assistance Request form at the end of this manual.

The following errors indicate a problem with memory allocation or some other assembler problem not related to a specific source line.

Number of open conditionals: <number>

Conditional-assembly directives (starting with **IF**) were given without corresponding **ENDIF** directives.

Open procedures

A **PROC** directive was given without a corresponding **ENDP** directive.

Open segments

A segment was defined, but never terminated with an **ENDS** directive. This error does not occur with simplified segment directives.

Out of memory

All available memory has been used, either because the source file is too long, or because there are too many symbols defined in the symbol table.

You can solve this problem in several ways. First, try assembling with no listing or cross-reference file. If this works, you can reassemble by specifying a null object file to get a listing or cross-reference file. You can also rewrite the source file to require less symbol space. Techniques for reducing symbol space include minimizing use of macros, equates, and structures; using short symbol names; using tab characters in macros rather than series of spaces; using macro comments (;;) rather than normal comments (;); and purging macro definitions after last use.

### B.1.4 MASM Exit Codes

The assembler returns one of the following codes after an assembly. The codes can be tested by a make file or batch file.

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Meaning</b>                      |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0           | No error                            |
| 1           | Argument error                      |
| 2           | Unable to open input file           |
| 3           | Unable to open listing file         |
| 4           | Unable to open object file          |
| 5           | Unable to open cross-reference file |

|    |                                              |
|----|----------------------------------------------|
| 6  | Unable to open include file                  |
| 7  | Assembly error                               |
| 8  | Memory-allocation error                      |
| 10 | Error defining symbol from command line (/D) |
| 11 | User interrupted                             |

Note that if the exit code is 7, **MASM** automatically deletes the invalid object file.

## B.2 CREF Error Messages and Exit Codes

The Microsoft Cross-Reference Utility, **CREF**, terminates operation and displays one of the following messages when it encounters an error:

Can't open cross-reference file for reading

The cross-reference file was not found. Make sure the file is on the specified disk and that the name is spelled correctly in the DOS command line.

Can't open listing file for writing

The disk is full or write protected, a file with the specified name already exists, or the specified device is not available.

CREF has no options

An option was specified in the command line with the slash (/) or dash (-) character, but **CREF** has no options.

Extra file name ignored

More than two files were specified on the command line. **CREF** uses only the first two files given.

Line invalid, start again

No cross-reference file was provided in the command line or at the prompt. **CREF** displays this message followed by a prompt asking for the file.

Out of heap space

**CREF** did not find enough memory to process the files. Try again with no resident programs or DOS shells, or add more memory.

Premature EOF

The file specified was not a valid cross-reference file, or the file was damaged.

Read error on standard input

A CONTROL-Z was received from the keyboard or from a redirected file.

**CREF** only returns two exit codes: 0 if the program is successful, or 1 if an error occurs.

- & (ampersand), operator, 226
  - <> (angle brackets), operator, 202, 216, 228
  - \* (asterisk), operator, 175, 283
  - @ ("at sign"), 68
  - { } (braces), xxvi
  - [ ] (brackets), xxvi
  - | (bar), xxvi
  - : (colon), operator
    - definition, 181
    - See also* : (segment-override operator)
  - \$ (dollar sign)
    - location counter symbol, 137
    - symbol names, used in, 68
  - ... (dots), xxvi
  - = (equal sign), directive, 32, 162, 213
  - ! (exclamation point), operator, 229
  - / (forward slash), operator, 175
  - (minus sign), operator, 175
  - % (percent sign)
    - expression operator, 230
    - symbol names, used in, 68
  - . (period), 68
  - + (plus sign), operator, 175
  - ? (question mark), 68
  - : (segment-override operator)
    - definition, 181
    - memory operands, with, 276, 279
    - OFFSET operator, with, 185
    - String instructions, with, 366
    - XLAT instructions, with, 290
  - ;; (semicolons), operator, 231
  - \_ (underscore), 68
- 
- 10-byte temporary-real format, 134
  - 16-bit
    - addressing modes, 282
    - segments, 88, 98
  - .186 directive, 76
  - .286P directive, 76, 412
  - .287 directive, 73, 77, 132, 388
  - 32-bit
    - addressing modes, 269, 282
    - segments, 88, 98, 260, 300
    - .386P directive, 76, 88, 98, 412
    - .387 directive, 73, 77, 132, 388
    - 80186 processor described, 258
    - 80286 processor described, 258
  - 80287 processor described, 258
  - 80386 processor
    - 32-bit
      - addressing modes, 269, 282
      - pointers, 129
      - registers, 269
      - segments, 88, 98, 260, 300
    - .386 directive, 76, 98, 412
    - bit-scan instructions, 324
    - bit-test instructions, 323, 341
    - BSF instruction, 324
    - BSR instruction, 324
    - BT instruction, 341
    - BTC instruction, 341
    - BTR instruction, 341
    - BTS instruction, 341
    - bytes, setting conditionally, 345
    - CDQ instruction, 293
    - CWDE instruction, 293
    - data conversion, 293, 294
    - described, 258
    - DOS, using under, 269
    - double shifts, 330
    - enhanced instructions, 269
    - IMUL instruction, 314
    - LFS instruction, 297
    - LGS instruction, 297
    - loading pointers, 297
    - LSS instruction, 297
    - MOVSB instruction, 294
    - MOVZX instruction, 294
    - new instructions, 269
    - PUSHAD and POPAD instructions, 303
    - PUSHD and POPD instructions, 302
    - registers, 261, 414
    - scaling, 296
    - SETcondition instruction, 345
    - SHLD instruction, 330
    - SHRD instruction, 330
    - simplified segment directives, with, 88
    - special registers, 414
  - 80387 processor, described, 258
  - .8086 directive, 75
  - .8087 directive, 73, 77, 132, 388
  - 8087 processor described, 258
  - 8087/80287/80387 instruction set, 30
  - 8087-family registers, 268
  - 8088/8086 processors described, 257

- /A option, 30, 96
- AAA instruction, 317
- AAD instruction, 318
- AAM instruction, 317
- AAS instruction, 317
- ABS type, 161
- Absolute segments, 101
- Accumulator registers, 264
- ADC instruction, 307, 309
- ADD instruction, 307, 309
- Adding, 307
- Addition operator (+), 175
- Addresses
  - assembly listing, 43
  - effective, 276, 279
- Addressing modes
  - 16-bit, 282
  - 32-bit, 269
- Adjusting masks, 329
- Advisory warnings, 39
- Aliases, 216
- ALIGN directive, 138, 257
- Align type, 98, 102
- Alignment, of segments, 98, 138
- .ALPHA directive, 96
- Ampersand (&), operator, 226
- AND instruction, 320, 321, 340
- AND operator, 179
- Angle brackets (<>), operator, 202, 216, 228
- Arguments
  - macros, 218, 219, 234
  - passing on stack, 349
  - repeat blocks, 223
- Arithmetic operators, 175
- Arrays
  - boundary checking, 361
  - defining of, 135
- ASCII
  - format for text files, 14
  - name for unpacked BCD numbers, 316
- Assembler. *See* MASM
- Assembly listing
  - false conditionals, 246
  - macros, 247
  - page breaks, 243
  - page length, 243
  - page width, 243
  - Pass 1, 32
  - reading, 42
  - subtitle, 243
  - suppressing, 245
  - title, 242
- ASSUME directive, 15, 107, 109, 181
- Asterisk (\*), operator, 175, 283
- AT combine type, 101
- "At" sign (@), 68
- AUTOEXEC.BAT file, 10, 27, 28
- Auxiliary-carry flag, 267
- AX register, 264
- /B option, 31
- Backup copies, 7
- Bar (|), xxvi
- Base registers, 278, 282
- Based operands, 278
- Based-indexed operands, 278
- BASIC compiler, 131
- BASIC interpreter, 11, 131
- BASIC language, mentioned, 334-354
- BCD (binary coded decimal) numbers
  - calculations with, 316, 394
  - constants, 72
  - coprocessor, with, 388
  - defining of, 127
  - variables initialized, 70
- Binary coded decimals. *See* BCD
- Binary files, 11
- Binary radix, 71
- Binary to decimal conversion, 318
- BIOS (basic input/output system), xxvi
- BIOS interrupts, 356
- Bit fields, 143, 148
- Bit mask, 319, 340
- Bit-scan instructions, 324
- Bit-test instructions, 341
- Bits, rotating, 325
- Bits, shifting, 325
- Bitwise operators, 179
- Bold type, xxv
- Books, on assembly language, xxiii
- Boolean bit operations, 320
- BOUND instruction, 361
- Boundary-checking array, 361
- BP registers, 265
- Braces ({ }), xxvi
- Brackets ([ ]), xxvi
- BSF instruction, 324
- BSR instruction, 324
- BT instruction, 341
- BTC instruction, 341
- BTR instruction, 341
- BTS instruction, 341
- Buffers
  - defining, 135
  - file, setting size, 31
- Bugs, reporting, xxviii
- BYTE align type, 98
- BYTE type specifier, 119

- C compiler, 131
- C language, 84
- C language, mentioned, 334–354
- /C option, 35
- Calculation operators, 174
- CALL instruction, 122, 298, 347
- Call tables, 347
- Capital letter
  - notation, xxv
  - small, xxvii
  - See also* Case
- Carry flag, 267, 308, 309, 311
- Case
  - case sensitivity, 42
  - Case-sensitive compilers, 37
  - Case-sensitivity options
    - for LINK, 37
    - for MASM, 37
  - emulating Pascal statement, 334
- CBW instruction, 292
- CDQ instruction, 293
- Character constant, 74
- Character set, 68
- Class type, 104
- Classical-stack operands, coprocessor, 383
- CLC instruction, 309, 311
- CLD instruction, 365
- CLI instruction, 358
- CMP instruction, 335, 336, 345
- CMPS instruction, 371
- Code, assembly listing, 42
- CODE class name, 86, 104
- .CODE directive, 15, 89
- @ code equate, 91
- Code equate, 91
- Code segments
  - defining, 89
  - developing programs, in, 15, 16
  - initializing, 111
  - register, 263
  - See also* Segments
- @ codesize equate, 91
- Codesize equate, 91
- CodeView debugger
  - code segments, 104
  - development cycle, 13
  - local variables, 351, 353
  - segmented addresses, 260
  - summary, 20
  - symbolic information, 41
- .COM format
  - choosing, 11
  - converting to, 19
  - debugging, 42
  - example, 16
- .COM format (*continued*)
  - initializing, 111
  - segment types, effect of, 98
  - tiny memory model, 84
- Combine type, 100, 102
- COMMENT object record, 86, 169
- COMM directive, 159, 166
- Command lines
  - with CREF, 53
  - with MASM, 23
- Command-line help, 34
- COMMENT directive, 67
- Comments, writing, 67
- COMMON combine type, 100
- Communal symbols, 159, 165
- Compact memory model, 84, 87
- Compare instructions, 401
- Comparing register to zero, 322
- Comparing strings, 371
- Compatibility
  - IBM languages, xxiii
  - language compilers, 425
  - other assemblers, 424
  - upward, 257
- Compilers, using with MASM, xix
  - See also* BASIC compiler, C compiler, etc
- Conditional directives
  - assembly directives, 40, 199, 220
  - assembly passes, 201, 205
  - error directives, 199, 220
  - macro arguments, 202, 203, 207, 208
  - nesting, 200
  - operators, 226
  - symbol definition, 201, 207
  - value of true and false, 200, 206
- Conditional-error directives, 204
- Conditional-jump instructions, 335, 400
- Configuration strategy, 7
- .CONST directive, 89
- Constants, 69, 273, 327
- Control data, coprocessor, 392
- CONTROL-BREAK, 23
- CONTROL-C, 23
- Conventions for manual, xxiv
- Conversion, binary to decimal, 318
- Converting data sizes, 292
- Coprocessor
  - 8086 family, 258
  - architecture, 379
  - control data, 392
  - directives, 75
  - emulator, 33
  - loading data, 389
  - loading pi, 392

Coprocessor (*continued*)

- no-wait instructions, 406
- operands, 382
- /R options, 30
- registers, 268
- See also* 8087, 80386, etc.

Copying data, 289

CREF

- command line, 53
- cross-reference listing file, 53
- described, 53
- development cycle, in, 13
- directive (.CREF), 249
- error messages, 449
- exit codes, 450
- invoking, 54
- prompts, 54
- summary, 17

Cross-reference files

- comparing with listing, 43
- output, 24
- specifying, 35
- See also* CREF

CS: override, 37

CS Register, 263

@ curseg equate, 90

Curseg equate, 90

Customer support, xxviii

CWD instruction, 292

CWDE instruction, 293

CX Register, 265

/D option, 32, 431

DAA instruction, 319

DAS instruction, 319

Data bus, 257

Data conversion, 292

.DATA directive, 15, 89

.DATA? directive, 89

@ data equate, 91

Data equate, 91

Data segments

- defining, 89
- developing programs, 15, 16
- initializing, 15, 112
- registers, 264
- See also* Segments

Data-definition directives, 123

@ datasize equate, 87, 91

Datasize equate, 87, 91

DB directive, 123, 124, 127

DD directive, 123

Debugging. *See* CodeView Debugger

DEC instruction, 309, 310

Decimal, packed BCD numbers, 316

Decimal radix, 71

Decrementing, 309

Defaults

- radix, 71
- segment names, 88, 93
- segment registers, 109
- simplified segment, 92
- types, 195

Defining symbols from command line, 32

Destination string, 366

Development cycle, 11

Device drivers, 11, 270

Devices, 24

DF directive, 123, 126

DGROUP group name

- COMM directive, with, 167
- DOSSEG, with, 113
- simplified segments, with, 86, 89, 92

Direction flag, 268, 365

Directives

- .186, 76
- .286, 76, 412
- .286P, 76
- .287, 73, 77, 132, 388
- .386, 76, 88, 98, 412
- .386P, 76
- .387, 73, 77, 132, 388
- .8086, 75
- .8087, 73, 77, 132, 388
- ALIGN, 138, 257
- .ALPHA, 96
- ASSUME, 15, 107, 109, 181
- .CODE, 15, 89
- COMM, 159, 166
- COMMENT, 67
- conditional. *See* Conditional directives
- .CONST, 89
- .CREF, 249
- .DATA, 15, 89
- .DATA?, 89
- data definition, 123
- DB, 123, 124, 127
- DD, 123
- defined, 66
- DF, 123, 126
- DOSSEG, 15, 85, 96
- DQ, 124, 126, 130
- DT, 124, 126, 130
- DW, 123, 124, 128
- ELSE, 200
- END, 15, 79, 88, 111
- ENDIF, 200
- ENDM, 218, 223, 224, 225
- ENDP, 121, 347, 359

Directives (*continued*)

ENDS, 95, 97, 143  
 EQU, 43, 162, 215, 216  
 equal sign (=), 32, 162, 213  
 .ERR, 205  
 .ERR1, 205  
 .ERR2, 205  
 .ERRB, 207  
 .ERRDEF, 207  
 .ERRDIF, 208  
 .ERRE, 206  
 .ERRIDN, 208  
 .ERRNB, 207  
 .ERRNDEF, 207  
 .ERRNZ, 206  
 EVEN, 138, 257  
 EXITM, 222, 223  
 EXTRN, 121, 159, 161  
 .FARDATA, 89  
 .FARDATA?, 89  
 full segment, 83  
 global, 159, 164  
 GROUP, 15, 83, 106, 181  
 IF, 40, 200  
 IF1, 201, 241  
 IF2, 201, 241  
 IFB, 202  
 IFDEF, 201  
 IFDIF, 203  
 IFE, 200  
 IFIDN, 203  
 IFNB, 202  
 IFNDEF, 201  
 INCLUDE, 217, 235, 237  
 INCLUDELIB, 169  
 instruction set, 75  
 IRP, 224  
 IRPC, 225  
 LABEL, 122, 136  
 .LALL, 220, 247  
 .LFCOND, 40, 246  
 .LIST, 245  
 LOCAL, 220, 223  
 MACRO, 218  
 .MODEL, 15, 75, 87, 162  
 .MSFLOAT, 75, 132  
 NAME, 165  
 ORG, 16, 111, 137  
 %OUT, 241  
 PAGE, 243  
 PROC, 92, 121, 346, 359  
 PUBLIC, 121, 122, 159, 160  
 PURGE, 237  
 .RADIX, 71  
 RECORD, 148  
 REPT, 223

Directives (*continued*)

.SALL, 220, 247  
 SEGMENT, 95, 97, 181  
 .SEQ, 96  
 .SFCOND, 40, 246  
 simplified segment, 15, 83  
 .STACK, 15, 88  
 STRUC, 143  
 SUBTTL, 243  
 .TFCOND, 40, 246  
 TITLE, 165, 242  
 .XALL, 220, 247  
 .XCREF, 249  
 .XLIST, 245  
 Disk setup, 9  
 Displacement, 278  
 DIV instruction, 314  
 Divide overflow interrupt, 355  
 Dividing, 314  
 Dividing by constants, 327  
 Division operator (/), 175  
 Do  
   emulating C statement, 343  
   emulating FORTRAN statement,  
     343  
 Documentation feedback card, xxviii  
 Dollar sign (\$)
   location counter symbol, 137  
   symbol names, used in, 68  
 DOS
   80386 under, 269  
   devices, 24  
   functions, 15, 356  
   interrupts, 356  
   Program Segment Prefix (PSP), 16  
   segment-order convention, 85  
   SET command, 27, 28  
 DOSSEG directive, 15, 85, 96  
 /DOSSEG linker option, 86  
 Dots (...), xxvi  
 Double shifts, with 80386 processor,  
   330  
 DQ directive, 124, 126, 130  
 DS registers, 264  
 /Dsymbol option, 32  
 DT directive, 124, 126, 130  
 DT Register, 265  
 Dummy parameters
   macros, 218, 219, 234  
   repeat blocks, 223  
 Dummy segment definitions, 105  
 DUP operator, 135, 144, 145, 150  
 DW directive, 123, 124, 128  
 DWORD align type, 98  
 DWORD type specifier, 119  
 DX Registers, 265

## Index

- /E option, 33, 132
- Effective address, 276, 279
- Ellipsis dots (...), xxvi
- ELSE directive, 200
- Emulator, coprocessor, 33
- Encoded real numbers, 73, 132
- Encoding of instructions, 273
- END directive, 15, 79, 88, 111
- ENDIF directive, 200
- ENDM directive, 218, 223, 224, 225
- ENDP directive, 121, 347, 359
- ENDS directive, 95, 97, 143
- ENTER instruction, 354
- Environment variables
  - INCLUDE, 8, 26, 236
  - INIT, 8
  - LIB, 8
  - LINK, 8
  - MASM, 8, 27
  - PATH, 8
  - TMP, 8
- EQ operator, 180
- EQU directive, 43, 162, 215, 216
- Equal sign (=), directive, 32, 162, 213
- Equates
  - defined, 213
    - nonredefinable, 214
    - predefined, 90
    - redefinable, 213
    - string, 216
  - .ERR directive, 205
  - .ERR1 directive, 205
  - .ERR2 directive, 205
  - .ERRB directive, 207
  - .ERRDEF directive, 207
  - .ERRDIF directive, 208
  - .ERRE directive, 206
  - .ERRIDN directive, 208
  - .ERRNB directive, 207
  - .ERRNDEF directive, 207
  - .ERRNZ directive, 206
- Error lines, displaying, 41
- Error messages
  - assembly listing, 43
  - CREF, 451
  - MASM, 432
- ES registers, 264
- ESC instruction, 412
- EVEN directive, 138, 257
- Exclamation point (!), operator, 229
- .EXE format, 10, 14, 42
- EXE2BIN
  - development cycle, in, 13
  - summary, 19
- Exit codes
  - CREF, 450
- Exit codes (*continued*)
  - MASM, 448
- EXITM directive, 222, 223
- Exponent, part of real-number
  - constant, 73
- Exponentiation, with 8087-family coprocessors, 404
- Expression operator (%), 230
- Expressions, defined, 173
- External names, 36
- External symbols, 161
- Extra segment, 264
- EXTRN directive, 121, 159, 161
  
- F2XM1 instruction, 404
- FABS instruction, 398
- FADD instruction, 394
- FADDP instruction, 394
- False conditionals, listing, 40, 246
- Far pointers, 128, 296
- FAR type specifier, 120
- .FARDATA directive, 89
- .FARDATA? directive, 89
- @ fardata equate, 91
- @ fardata? equate, 91
- Fardata equate, 91
- Fardata? equate, 91
- Fatal errors, 205
- FBLD instruction, 390
- FBSTP instruction, 390
- FCHS instruction, 398
- FCOM instruction, 401
- FCOMP instruction, 402
- FCOMPP instruction, 402
- FCOS instruction, 405
- FDIV instruction, 396
- FDIVP instruction, 397
- FDIVR instruction, 397
- FDIVRP instruction, 397
- FIADD instruction, 394
- FICOM instruction, 402
- FICOMP instruction, 402
- FIDIV instruction, 397
- FIDIVR instruction, 397
- Fields
  - assembler statements, 65
  - bit, 143, 148
  - records, 148, 151
  - structures, 144, 146
- FILD instruction, 390
- @ filename equate, 91
- Filename equate, 91
- Files
  - AUTOEXEC.BAT, 10, 27, 28
  - binary, 11

- Files (*continued*)
  - buffer, 31
  - cross-reference, 24, 35
  - include, 26, 35, 168, 235
  - library, 13, 18
  - listing, 24, 35, 242
  - object, 13, 18
  - PACKING.LST, 7, 9
  - SETUP.BAT, 9
  - source. *See* Source files
  - specifications, 235
- Filling strings, 373
- FIMUL instruction, 396
- FINIT instruction, 406
- First-in-first-out (FIFO), 298
- FIST instruction, 390
- FISTP instruction, 390
- FISUB instruction, 395
- FISUBR instruction, 395
- Flags
  - loading and storing, 292
  - register, 266
- FLD instruction, 389
- FLD1 instruction, 392
- FLDCW instruction, 393
- FLDL2E instruction, 392
- FLDL2T instruction, 392
- FLDLG2 instruction, 392
- FLDLN2 instruction, 392
- FLDPI instruction, 392
- FLDZ instruction, 392
- Floating-point format
  - compatibility, 424
- Floating-point numbers, 30, 33
  - See also* Real numbers
- FMUL instruction, 396
- FMULP instruction, 396
- For, emulating high-level-language
  - statement, 343
- FORTRAN compiler, 131
- FORTRAN language, mentioned,
  - 343-354
- Forward references
  - defined, 191
  - during a pass, 49
  - labels, 192
  - variables, 194
- Forward slash (/), operator, 175
- FPATAN instruction, 405
- FPREM instruction, 398, 404
- FPTAN instruction, 405
- Fraction, 73
- FRNDINT instruction, 398
- FS registers, 264
- FSCALE instruction, 398
- FSIN instruction, 405
- FSINCOS instruction, 405
- FSQRT instruction, 398
- FST instruction, 389
- FSTCW instruction, 393
- FSTP instruction, 389
- FSTSW instruction, 393
- FSUB instruction, 394
- FSUBP instruction, 395
- FSUBR instruction, 395
- FSUBRP instruction, 395
- FTST instruction, 402
- Full segment directives, 83
- Functions
  - C, 346
  - Pascal, 346
- FWAIT instruction, 388
- FWORD type specifier, 119
- FXAM instruction, 404
- FXCH instruction, 389
- FXTRACT instruction, 398
- FYL2X instruction, 404
- FYL2XP1 instruction, 405
  
- GE operator, 180
- General-purpose registers, 264
- Getting strings from ports, 375
- Global directives
  - defined, 159
  - illustrated, 164
- Global scope, 159
- Global symbols, 160, 161
- GROUP directive, 15, 83, 106, 181
- Group-relative segments, 107
- Groups
  - assembly listing, 46
  - defined, 106
  - illustrated, 107
  - size restriction, 107
  - See also* DGROUP group name
- GS Registers, 264
- GT operator, 180
  
- /H option, 34
- Hard disk setup, 8
- Hardware interrupts, 358
- Help, 34
- Hexadecimal radix, 71
- HIGH operator, 184
- High-level languages, memory model,
  - 84, 87
- High-level-language compilers, xix
- HLT instruction, 412
- Huge memory model, 85, 87

## Index

/I option, 35, 236  
IBM languages, compatibility, xxiii  
IDIV instruction, 314  
IEEE format, 73, 131, 132, 388  
IF directives, 40, 200  
IF1 directive, 201, 241  
IF2 directive, 201, 241  
IFB directive, 202  
IFDEF directive, 201  
IFDIF directive, 203  
IFE directive, 200  
IFIDN directive, 203  
IFNB directive, 202  
IFNDEF directive, 201  
Immediate operands, 273  
Implied operands, 383  
Impure code, checking for, 37  
IMUL instruction, 312, 313, 314  
IN instruction, 303  
INC instruction, 307  
INCLUDE directive, 217, 235, 237  
INCLUDE environment variable, 8, 26, 236  
Include files, 235  
    assembly listings, 43  
    communal variables, 168  
    setting search paths, 26, 35  
    using, 235  
INCLUDELIB directive, 169  
Incrementing, 307  
Indeterminate operand, 136  
Index checking, 361  
Index operator, 177  
Index registers, 278, 282  
Indexed operands, 278  
INIT environment variable, 8  
Initializing  
    data segments, 15  
    segment registers, 111  
    variables, 124  
INS instruction, 375  
Instruction-pointer register (IP), 266, 333  
Instructions  
    AAA, 317  
    AAD, 318  
    AAM, 317  
    AAS, 317  
    ADC, 307, 309  
    ADD, 307, 309  
    AND, 320, 321, 340  
    bit scan, 324  
    bit test, 323, 341  
    BOUND, 361  
    BSF, 324  
    BSR, 324

Instructions (*continued*)  
    BT, 341  
    BTC, 341  
    BTR, 341  
    BTS, 341  
    CALL, 122, 298, 347  
    CBW, 292  
    CDQ, 293  
    CLC, 309, 311  
    CLD, 365  
    CLI, 358  
    CMP, 335, 336, 345  
    CMPS, 371  
    compare, 401  
    conditional jump, 333, 400  
    CWD, 292  
    CWDE, 293  
    DAA, 319  
    DAS, 319  
    DEC, 309, 310  
    defined, 66  
    DIV, 314  
    ENTER, 354  
    ESC, 412  
    F2XMI, 404  
    FABS, 398  
    FADD, 394  
    FADDP, 394  
    FBLD, 390  
    FBSTP, 390  
    FCHS, 398  
    FCOM, 401  
    FCOMP, 402  
    FCOMPP, 402  
    FCOS, 405  
    FDIV, 396  
    FDIVP, 397  
    FDIVR, 397  
    FDIVRP, 397  
    FIADD, 394  
    FICOM, 402  
    FICOMP, 402  
    FIDIV, 397  
    FIDIVR, 397  
    FILED, 390  
    FIMUL, 396  
    FINIT, 406  
    FIST, 390  
    FISTP, 390  
    FISUB, 395  
    FISUBR, 395  
    FLD, 389  
    FLD1, 392  
    FLDCW, 393  
    FLDL2E, 392  
    FLDL2T, 392

Instructions (*continued*)

FLDLG2, 392  
 FLDLN2, 392  
 FLDPI, 392  
 FLDZ, 392  
 FMUL, 396  
 FMULP, 396  
 FPATAN, 405  
 FPREM, 398, 404  
 FPTAN, 405  
 FRNDINT, 398  
 FSCALE, 398  
 FSIN, 405  
 FSINCOS, 405  
 FSQRT, 398  
 FST, 389  
 FSTCW, 393  
 FSTP, 389  
 FSTSW, 393  
 FSUB, 394  
 FSUBP, 395  
 FSUBR, 395  
 FSUBRP, 395  
 FTST, 402  
 FWAIT, 388  
 FXAM, 404  
 FXCH, 389  
 FXTRACT, 398  
 FYL2X, 404  
 FYL2XP1, 405  
 HLT, 412  
 IDIV, 314  
 IMUL, 312, 313, 314  
 IN, 303  
 INC, 307  
 INS, 375  
 INT, 274, 298, 356, 359  
 INTO, 356, 358  
 IRET, 298, 357, 359  
 IRETD, 359  
 JC, 308, 311  
 Jcondition, 336, 338, 340, 357  
 JCXZ, 335, 344, 371, 372  
 JEXCZ, 343  
 JMP, 16, 109, 192, 333  
 LAHF, 292  
 LDS, 296  
 LEA, 295  
 LEAVE, 354  
 LES, 296, 371  
 LFS, 297  
 LGS, 297  
 LOCK, 412  
 LODS, 374  
 logical, 320  
 LOOP, 343

Instructions (*continued*)

LOOPE, 343  
 LOOPNE, 343  
 LOOPNZ, 343  
 LOOPZ, 343  
 LSS, 297  
 MOV, 109, 289, 413  
 MOVS, 368  
 MOVXS, 294  
 MOVZX, 294  
 MUL, 312  
 NEG, 309, 310  
 NOP, 192, 411  
 NOT, 323  
 OR, 320, 322  
 OUT, 303  
 OUTS, 375  
 POP, 109, 298  
 POPA, 302  
 POPAD, 303  
 POPD, 302  
 POPF, 301  
 POPFD, 302  
 program-flow, 333  
 protected mode, 413  
 PUSH, 109, 298  
 PUSHA, 302  
 PUSHAD, 303  
 PUSHD, 302  
 PUSHF, 301  
 PUSHFD, 302  
 RCL, 326  
 RCR, 326  
 REP, 367, 373, 376  
 REPE, 367, 371, 372  
 REPNE, 367, 371, 372  
 REPNZ, 367, 371, 372  
 REPZ, 367, 371, 372  
 RET, 121, 274, 298, 350  
 RETF, 348  
 RETN, 348  
 ROL, 326  
 ROR, 326  
 SAHF, 292  
 SAL, 326  
 SAR, 326  
 SBB, 309, 311  
 SCAS, 370  
 SETcondition, 345  
 SHL, 326  
 SHLD, 330  
 SHR, 326  
 SHRD, 330  
 STD, 365  
 STI, 358  
 STOS, 373

## Index

### Instructions (*continued*)

SUB, 309, 310, 311, 337  
TEST, 335, 340, 345  
  timing of, 273  
WAIT, 387, 412  
XCHG, 290  
XLAT, 290  
XOR, 320, 322  
Instruction-set directives, 75  
INT instruction, 274, 298, 356, 359  
Integers, 70, 393  
Integers, with coprocessor, 388  
Interrupt-enable flag, 268, 357  
Interrupts, 355  
INTO instruction, 356, 358  
I/O protection level flag, 268  
IP Registers, 266  
IRET instruction, 298, 357, 359  
IRETD instruction, 359  
IRP directive, 224  
IRPC directive, 225  
Italics, xxvi  
  
JC instruction, 308, 311, 339  
Jcondition instruction, 336, 338, 340, 357  
JCXZ instruction, 335, 344, 371, 372  
JEXCZ instruction, 343  
JMP instruction, 16, 109, 192, 333  
JO, 308, 339, 358  
Jump tables, 334  
Jumping conditionally, 335  
  
Keystroke macros, 28  
  
/L option, 35  
LABEL directive, 122, 136  
Labels  
  defined, 120  
  macros, in, 221  
  near code, 120  
  procedures, 121  
LAHF instruction, 292  
.LALL directive, 220, 247  
Language compiler compatibility, 425  
Large memory model, 85, 87  
LDS instruction, 296  
LE operator, 180  
LEA instruction, 295  
Learning assembly language, xxiii  
LEAVE instruction, 354  
LENGTH operator, 188  
LES instruction, 296, 371

.LFCOND directive, 40, 246  
LFS instruction, 297  
LGS Instruction, 297  
LIB  
  development cycle, in, 13  
  environment variable, 8  
  summary, 18  
Library files, 13, 18  
License, 7  
Line number data, 42  
Line numbers in MASM listings, 42  
LINK  
  development cycle, in, 13  
  environment variable, 8  
  summary, 18  
.LIST directive, 245  
Listing  
  false conditionals, 246  
  files, 24, 35, 242  
  format  
    addresses, 43  
    code, 42  
    cross reference, 55  
    described, 42  
    EQU directive, 43  
    errors, 43  
    groups, 46  
    include files, 43  
    LOCK directive, 63  
    macro expansions, 43  
    macros, 45  
    Pass 1, reading, 49  
    records, 45  
    REP directive, 43  
    segment override, 43  
    segments, 46  
    structures, 45  
    symbols, 47  
  macros, 247  
  Pass 1, creating, 32  
  subtitles in, 243  
  suppressing output, 245  
  suppressing tables, 37  
  tables, suppressing, 37  
Literal-character operator (!), 229  
Literal-text operator (<>), 202, 216, 228  
Loading constants to coprocessor, 391  
Loading coprocessor data, 389  
Loading pointers, 297  
Loading values from strings, 374  
LOCAL directive, 220, 223  
Local scope, 159  
Local symbols in macros, 220  
Local variables, in procedures, 351  
Location counter, 119, 137, 139, 190

- Location counter symbol, 137
- LOCK directive, assembly listing, 43
- LOCK instruction, 412
- LODS instruction, 374
- Logarithms, 404
- Logical bit operations, 320
- Logical instructions, 320
- Logical operators, 320
- LOOP instruction, 343
- Loop
  - while equal, 343
  - while not equal, 343
- LOOPE instruction, 343
- LOOPNE instruction, 343
- LOOPNZ instruction, 343
- LOOPZ instruction, 343
- LOW operator, 184
- LSS instruction, 297
- LT operator, 180
  
- Macro Assembler. *See* MASM
- Macro comment operator (::), 231
- MACRO directive, 218
- Macro expansions, assembly listings, 43
- Macros
  - argument testing, 203, 208
  - arguments, 218, 219, 234
  - assembly listing, 45
  - calling, 219
  - communal variables, 168
  - compared to procedures, 218
  - defined, 213, 217
  - efficiency penalty, 213
  - exiting early, 222
  - expansions in listing, 247
  - keystroke, 28
  - local symbols, 320
  - nested, 227, 232
  - operators, 226
  - parameters, 218, 219, 234
  - recursive, 203, 231
  - redefining, 234, 237
  - removing from memory, 237
  - text, 216
- MAKE, development cycle, in, 13
- MASK operator, 153
- Masking bits, 320, 340
- MASM
  - command line, 23
  - cross-reference file, 53
  - described, 23
  - development cycle, in, 13
  - environment variable, 8, 26, 27
  - error messages, 430
  - exit codes, 448
  - MASM (*continued*)
    - invoking, 23
    - options. *See* Options
    - prompts, 25
    - summary, 17
  - Math coprocessors, 30, 258, 379
  - Medium memory model, 84, 87
  - Memory access, coordinating, 387
  - MEMORY combine type, 100
  - Memory models, 84
  - Memory operands, 276
  - Memory operands, coprocessor, 384
  - Memory requirements, xx
  - Messages
    - error. *See* Error messages
    - output, 28
    - status, 429
    - suppressing, 38
  - Messages to screen, 241
  - Microsoft Binary format, 131, 132
  - Microsoft Binary Real format, 73, 388
  - Minus operator (-), 175
  - Mixed-languages programs, 83, 96
  - /ML option, 36, 159
  - /ML option, MASM, 104
  - Mnemonics
    - defined, 66
    - reserved names, as, 69
  - MOD operator, 175
  - .MODEL directive, 15, 75, 87, 162
  - Modes, addressing. *See* Addressing
    - modes
  - Modular programming, 159
  - Modulo division, 398
  - Modulo division operator, 175
  - MOV instruction, 109, 289, 413
  - Moving strings, 368
  - MOVS instruction, 368
  - MOVSB instruction, 294
  - MOVZX instruction, 294
  - MS-DOS, version requirements, xx
  - .MSFLOAT directive, 75, 132
  - /MU option, 36
  - MUL instruction, 312
  - Multiple modules, 164
  - Multiplication operator (\*), 283
  - Multiplication operators, 175
  - Multiplying, 312
  - Multiplying by constants, 327
  - Multiword values, shifting, 329
  - /MX option, 36, 159
  - /MX option, MASM, 104
  
  - /N option, 37
  - NAME directive, 242

## Index

### Names

- Assigning, 68
  - external, 36
  - public, 36
  - reserved, 68, 235, 237
- NE operator, 180
- Near pointers, 128, 295
- NEAR type specifier, 120
- NEG instruction, 309, 310
- Negating, 310
- Nested-task flag, 268
- Nesting
  - conditionals, 200
  - DUP operators, 135
  - include files, 236
  - macros, 227, 232
  - procedures for Pascal, 354
  - segments
    - 115
- New features, 419
- Nonredefinable equates, 214
- NOP instruction, 192, 411
- NOT instruction, 323
- NOT operator, 179
- Notational conventions, xxiv
- NOTHING, ASSUME, 109
- No-wait coprocessor instructions, 406
- Null class type, 105
- Null string, 220
- Numbers. *See* Real numbers, signed numbers, etc.

- Object files, 13, 18
- Object records, 85, 169
- Octal radix, 71
- OFFSET operator, 92, 185
- OFFSET operator, with group-relative segments, 107
- ON GOSUB, emulating BASIC statement, 334
- Opcode. *See* Instructions
- Operands
  - based, 278
  - based indexed, 278
  - based indexed with displacement, 278
  - classical stack, 383
  - coprocessor, 382, 383
  - defined, 66, 173, 273
  - immediate, 273
  - implied, 383
  - indeterminate, 136
  - indexed, 278
  - indirect memory, 273, 276, 278
  - location counter, 190

### Operands (*continued*)

- memory, 273, 276, 278
- record field, 154
- records, 151
- register, 261, 273, 274
- register indirect, 278
- relocatable, 276
- strong typing, 194
- structures, 146
- undefined, 136

### Operators

- addition, 175
- AND, 179
- arithmetic, 175
- bitwise, 179
- calculation, 174
- defined, 173
- division (/), 175
- DUP, 135, 144, 145, 150
- EQ, 180
- expression (%), 230
- GE, 180
- GT, 180
- HIGH, 184
- index, 177
- LE, 180
- LENGTH, 188
- literal character (!), 229
- literal text (<>), 228
- logical, 320
- LOW, 184
- LT, 180
- macro comment (;), 231
- MASK, 153
- minus (-), 175
- MOD, 175
- multiplication (\*), 175
- NE, 180
- NOT, 179
- OFFSET, 92, 185
- OR, 179
- plus (+), 175
- precedence, 189
- PTR, 182, 193
- relational, 180
- SEG, 106, 167, 184
- segment override (:). *See* : (segment-override operator)
- shift, 178
- SHL, 178
- SHORT, 183, 192
- SHR, 178
- SIZE, 188
- structure-field name, 176
- substitute (&), 226
- subtraction, 175

Operators (*continued*)

THIS, 183  
 .TYPE, 186  
 TYPE, 187  
 WIDTH, 153  
 XOR, 179  
 Options  
   /A, 30, 96  
   /B, 31, 96  
   /C, 35  
   /D, 32, 431  
   /DOSSEG linker, 86  
   /Dsymbol, 32  
   /E, 33, 132  
   /H, 34  
   /I, 35, 236  
   /L, 35  
   /ML, 36, 159  
   /ML, MASM, 104  
   /MU, 36  
   /MX, 36, 159  
   /MX, MASM, 104  
   /N, 37  
   /P, 37  
   precedence, 27  
   /R, 30, 132  
   /S, 30, 96  
   summary, 29  
   /T, 38, 430  
   using, 23  
   /V, 38, 429  
   /W, 39, 195  
   /X, 40, 246  
   /Z, 41  
   /ZI, 41  
 OR instruction, 320, 322  
 OR operator, 179  
 ORG directive, 16, 111, 137  
 %OUT directive, 241  
 OUT instruction, 303  
 Output messages to screen, 241  
 OUTS instruction, 375  
 Overflow flag, 268, 308  
 Overflow interrupt, 355  
 Override, CS:, 37  
  
 /P option, 37  
 Packed BCD numbers, 127, 316, 319  
   *See also* BCD (binary coded decimal)  
   numbers  
 Packed decimal integers, 70  
 Packed decimal numbers, 72  
 PACKING.LST file, 7, 9  
 PAGE align type, 98  
 Page breaks in assembly listings, 243

PAGE directive, 243  
 Page format of listing files, 242  
 PARA align type, 98  
 Parameters  
   defining in procedures, 349  
   macros, 218, 219, 234  
   repeat blocks, 223  
 Parity flag, 267  
 Partial remainder, 398  
 Pascal compiler, 131  
 Pascal language, mentioned, 334–354  
 Pass 1 listing, 32, 49  
 PATH environment variable, 8  
 PC-DOS. *See* DOS and MS-DOS  
 Percent sign (%)  
   expression operator, 230  
   symbol names, used in, 68  
 Period (.), 68  
 Phase errors, 32, 49  
 Pi, loading to coprocessor, 392  
 Placeholders, xxvi  
 Plus sign (+), operator, 175  
 Pointers  
   defining, 128  
   loading, 295  
 POP instruction, 109, 298  
 POPA instruction, 302  
 POPAD instruction, 303  
 POPD instruction, 302  
 POPF instruction, 301  
 POPFD instruction, 302  
 Ports  
   defined, 303  
   getting strings from, 375  
   sending strings to, 375  
 Precedence of operators, 189  
 Precedence, options, 27  
 Preserving case sensitivity, 36  
 PRIVATE combine type, 101  
 PROC directive, 92, 121, 347, 359  
 PROC type specifier, 120, 162  
 Procedures  
   compared to macros, 218  
   defining labels, 121  
   Pascal, 346  
   using, 346  
 Processor directives, 75  
 Processors. *See* Coprocessors  
 Product Assistance Request form,  
   xxviii  
 Program Segment Prefix (PSP), 16  
 Program-development cycle, 11  
 Program-flow instructions, 333  
 Prompts, with CREF, 54  
 Protected mode, 258, 259, 407  
 Protected-mode instructions, 413

Pseudo-op. *See* Directives  
 PTR operator, 182, 193  
 PUBLIC combine type, 100  
 PUBLIC directive, 121, 159, 160  
 Public names, 36  
 Public symbols, 160  
 PURGE directive, 237  
 PUSH instruction, 109, 298  
 PUSHA instruction, 302  
 PUSHAD instruction, 303  
 PUSHD instruction, 302  
 PUSHF instruction, 301  
 PUSHFD instruction, 302

Question mark (?), 68  
 QuickBASIC compiler, 131  
 Quotation marks (" "), xxvii  
 QWORD type specifier, 119

/R option, 30, 132

.RADIX directive, 71

#### Radixes

binary, 71  
 default, 71  
 specifiers, 71

RCL instruction, 326

RCR instruction, 326

Real mode, 257, 259, 411

#### Real numbers

arithmetic calculations, 393  
 coprocessor, 388  
 designator (R), 130  
 encoding, 73, 132  
 format, 30, 33, 73  
 format, compatibility, 424

RECORD directive, 148

Record type, 148

#### Records

assembly listing, 45  
 declarations, 148  
 defining, 143, 150  
 field operands, 154  
 fields, 151  
 initializing, 148, 150, 151  
 MASK operator, 153  
 object, 85  
 operands, 151  
 variables, 150  
 WIDTH operator, 153

Recursive macros, 203, 231

Redefinable equates, 213

Redefining interrupts, 358

Redefining macros, 234

#### Registers

#### Registers (*continued*)

80386, 261  
 80386, special, 414  
 8087 family, 268  
 accumulator, 264  
 AX, 264  
 base, 278, 282  
 BP, 265  
 BX, 265  
 coprocessor, 268, 380, 381  
 CS, 263  
 CX, 265  
 DI, 265  
 DS, 264  
 DX, 265  
 ES, 264  
 flags, 266  
 FS, 264  
 general purpose, 264  
 GS, 264  
 index, 278, 282  
 IP, 266, 333  
 mixing 16-bit and 32-bit, 283  
 operands, 261, 273, 274  
 operands, coprocessor, 385  
 register-pop operands, coprocessor,  
 386  
 reserved names, as, 69  
 segment, 111, 263  
 SI, 265  
 SP, 266  
 special, 414  
 SS, 264  
 Relational operators, 180  
 Relocatable operands. *See* Memory  
 operands  
 REP directive, assembly listing, 43  
 REP instruction, 367, 373, 376  
 REPE instruction, 367, 371, 372  
 Repeat blocks  
 arguments, 223  
 defined, 213, 223  
 parameters, 223  
 repeat for each argument, 224  
 repeat for each character of string,  
 225  
 repeat for specified count, 223  
 Repeat, emulating Pascal statement,  
 343  
 Repeat, using 8086-family string  
 functions, 365  
 REPNE instruction, 367, 371, 372  
 REPNZ instruction, 367, 371, 372  
 Reporting problems, xxviii  
 REPT directive, 223  
 REPZ instruction, 367, 371, 372

- Reserved names, 68, 235, 237
- Resident programs, 270
- Resume flag, 268
- RET instruction, 121, 274, 298, 346
- RETF instruction, 348
- RETN instruction, 348
- ROL instruction, 326
- ROMable code, 11
- ROR instruction, 326
- Rotating bits, 325
- Routines, FORTRAN, 346
  
- /S option, 30, 96
- SAHF instruction, 292
- SAL instruction, 326
- .SALL directive, 220, 247
- SAR instruction, 326
- SBB instruction, 309, 311
- Scaling, 296
- Scaling by powers of two, 398
- Scaling factor, 283
- SCAS instruction, 370
- Search paths
  - include files, 236
  - setting, 26, 35
- Searching strings, 370
- Sections in assembly listings, 243, 244
- SEG operator, 106, 167, 184
- SEGMENT directive, 95, 97, 181
- Segment-order method, 96
- Segments
  - 16-bit, 88, 98
  - 32-bit, 88, 98, 260, 300
  - absolute, 101
  - alignment, 98, 138
  - assembly listing, 46
  - combine types, 100
  - defined, 83
  - definition, 95
  - developing programs, 15, 16
  - extra, 264
  - group-relative offset, 107
  - groups, 106
  - initializing, 15
  - MEMORY, 100
  - nesting, 115
  - ordering, 30, 104
  - ordering, compatibility, 426
  - override, assembly listings, 43
  - override operator (:). *See*
    - : (segment-override operator)
  - registers, 263
  - selectors, 260
  - size, 98
  - types, 98
- Selectors, segment, 260
- Semicolons (;), operator, 231
- Sending strings to ports, 375
- .SEQ directive, 96
- Serious warnings, 39
- SET command (DOS), 27, 28
- SET condition instruction, 345
- Setting file buffer size, 31
- Setting register to zero, 323
- Setup, disk, 8, 9
- SETUP.BAT file, 9
- Severe errors, 39, 205
- .SFCOND directive, 40, 246
- Shift operators, 178
- Shifting bits, 325
- Shifting multiword values, 329
- SHL instruction, 326
- SHL operator, 178
- SHLD instruction, 330
- SHORT operator, 183, 192
- SHR instruction, 326
- SHR operator, 178
- SHRD instruction, 330
- SI registers, 265
- Sign flag, 267, 311
- Signed numbers, 124, 292, 308, 310
- Sign-extending, 294
- Simplified segment defaults, 92
- Simplified segment directives, 15, 83
- SIZE operator, 188
- Small capitals, xxvii
- Small memory model, 84, 87
- Source files
  - defined, 14
  - format, 65
  - illustrated, 14, 16
  - include, 235
- Source modules, 13, 159
- Source string, 366
- SP registers, 266
- Special registers, 414
- Square root, 398
- SS registers, 264
- STACK combine type, 100
- Stack
  - defined, 298
  - .STACK directive, 15, 88
- Stack
  - frame, 354
  - operands, coprocessor, 383
  - registers, 382
  - segment, 15, 88, 100, 264
  - segment, initializing, 114
  - use of, 301
- Standard output device, 28, 241, 431
- Statement fields, 65

## Index

- Statements, defined, 65
- Statistics, 38, 429
- Status messages, 429
- STD instruction, 365
- STI instruction, 358
- Storing coprocessor data, 389
- STOS instruction, 373
- Strict type checking, 425
- Strings
  - comparing, 371
  - constants, 74, 273
  - defined, 365
  - destination strings, 366
  - equates, 216
  - filling, 373
  - getting from ports, 375
  - loading values from, 374
  - moving 368
  - null, 220
  - ports, transfer from and to, 375
  - searching, 370
  - source, 366
  - structures, in, 144
  - variables, 127
- Strong typing, xix, 194
- STRUC directive, 143
- Structure type, 143
- Structure-field-name operator, 176
- Structures
  - assembly listing, 45
  - declarations, 143
  - definitions, 143, 145
  - fields, 146
  - initializing, 143, 145, 146
  - operands, 146
  - overview, 143, 147
  - variables, 145
- SUB instruction, 309, 337
- Subprograms, BASIC, 346
- Subroutines, BASIC, 346
- Substitute operator (&), 226
- Subtitles in listings, 243
- Subtracting values, 309
- Subtraction operator, 175
- SUBTTL Directive, 243
- Summary
  - CodeView, 20
  - CREF, 17
  - CV, 20
  - EXE2BIN, 19
  - LIB, 18
  - LINK, 18
  - MASM, 17
  - options, 29
- Switch, emulating C statement, 334
- Symbol space, 429
- Symbolic information, 41
- Symbols
  - assembly listing, 47
  - communal, 159, 165
  - defined, 67
  - defining from command line, 32
  - external, 161
  - global, 160, 161
  - location counter, 137
  - public, 160
  - relocatable operands, 276
- SYMDEB, 41, 160
- Syntax conventions, xxiv
- System requirements, xx
- 
- /T option, 38, 430
- TBYTE type specifier, 119
- Temporary real format, 134
- Terminate-and-stay-resident programs, 270
- TEST instruction, 335, 340, 345
- Testing bits, 341
- Text editor, 13, 14, 28
- Text equates. *See* String equates
- Text Macros, 216
- .TFCOND directive, 40, 246
- THIS operator, 183
- Timing of instructions, 273
- Tiny memory model, 84
- TITLE directive, 242
- TMP environment variable, 8
- Transcendental calculations, 404
- Trap flag, 268, 357
- Trigonometric functions, 404
- Tutorial books, assembly language, xxiii
- Two's complement, 124
- Type
  - ABS, 161
  - align, 98, 102
  - checking, strict, 425
  - class, 104
  - combine, 100, 101
  - data, 42
  - null class, 105
  - operand matching, 194
  - .TYPE operator, 186
  - TYPE operator, 187
- Type
  - operators, 182
  - PROC, 162
  - record, 148
- Type specifiers, 119
- Type
  - specifiers, 162

- Type (*continued*)
    - structure, 143
    - use, 98
    - USE, 282
  - Unary minus, 175
  - Unary plus, 175
  - Undefined operand, 136
  - Underscore (`_`), 68
  - Unpacked BCD numbers, 127, 316
    - See also* BCD numbers
  - Unsigned numbers, 124, 292, 308, 310
  - Updates, xxviii
  - Uppercase. *See* Case
  - Upward compatibility, 257
  - Use type, 98
  - USE type, 282
- 
- `/V` option, 38, 429
  - Variables
    - communal, 165
    - defined, 123
    - external, 161
    - floating point, 130
    - initializing, 124
    - integer, 124
    - local, 351
    - pointer, 128
    - public, 160
    - real number, 130
    - record, 150
    - string, 127
    - structure, 145
  - Vertical bar (`|`), xxvi
  - Virtual 8086 Mode flag, 268
- 
- `/W` option, 39, 195
  - WAIT instruction, 387, 412
  - Warning levels, 39, 195
  - Weak typing in other assemblers, 195
  - While, emulating high-level-language
    - statement, 343
  - WIDTH operator, 153
  - Width, structures, 148
  - WORD align type, 98
  - WORD type specifier, 119
- 
- `/X` option, 40, 246
  - XALL directive, 220, 247
  - XCHG instruction, 290
  - XCREF directive, 249
  - XENIX, 259
  - XENIX compatibility
    - `/L` and `/C`, 36
    - `/MU`, 36
    - `/P`, 38
    - pathnames, with `/` (forward slash), 236
    - `/SI`, 30
  - XLAT instruction, 290
  - XLIST directive, 245
  - XOR instruction, 320, 322
  - XOR operator, 179
- 
- `/Z` option, 41
  - Zero flag, 267
  - Zero-extending, 294
  - `/ZI` option, 41